

MODIFIED NUCLEOSIDES FOR THE TREATMENT OF VIRAL INFECTIONS AND ABNORMAL CELLULAR PROLIFERATION

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

5 The present invention includes compounds and methods for the treatment of
Flaviviridae, *Orthomyxoviridae*, *Paramyxoviridae* infections and abnormal cellular
proliferation.

This application claims priority to U.S. provisional application no. 60/241,488,
filed October 18, 2000 and U.S. provisional application no. 60/282,156, filed on April 6,
2001.

10 BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Flavirididae

15 The *Flaviviridae* is a group of positive single-stranded RNA viruses with a genome
size from 9-15 kb. They are enveloped viruses of approximately 40-50 nm. An overview
of the *Flaviviridae* taxonomy is available from the International Committee for Taxonomy
of Viruses. The *Flaviviridae* consists of three genera.

- 20 1. Flaviviruses. This genus includes the Dengue virus group (Dengue virus,
Dengue virus type 1, Dengue virus type 2, Dengue virus type 3, Dengue virus
type 4), the Japanese encephalitis virus group (Alfuy Virus, Japanese
encephalitis virus, Kookaburra virus, Koutango virus, Kunjin virus, Murray
Valley encephalitis virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Stratford virus, Usutu
virus, West Nile Virus), the Modoc virus group, the Rio Bravo virus group
(Apoi virus, Rio Brovo virus, Saboya virus), the Ntaya virus group, the Tick-
Borne encephalitis group (tick born encephalitis virus), the Tyuleny virus
group, Uganda S virus group and the Yellow Fever virus group. Apart from
25 these major groups, there are some additional Flaviviruses that are unclassified.
2. Hepaciviruses. This genus contains only one species, the Hepatitis C virus
(HCV), which is composed of many clades, types and subtypes.

3. Pestiviruses. This genus includes Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus-2 (BVDV-2), Pestivirus type 1 (including BVDV), Pestivirus type 2 (including Hog Cholera Virus) and Pestivirus type 3 (including Border Disease Virus).

One of the most important *Flaviviridae* infections in humans is caused by the hepatitis C virus (HCV). This is the second major cause of viral hepatitis, with an estimated 170 million carriers world-wide (World Health Organization; *Hepatitis C: global prevalence*, Weekly Epidemiological Record, 1997, 72, 341), 3.9 million of whom reside in the United States (Centers for Disease Control; unpublished data, <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/hepatitis/heptab3.htm>).

The genomic organization of the *Flaviviridae* share many common features. The hepatitis C virus (HCV) genome is often used as a model. HCV is a small, enveloped virus with a positive single-stranded RNA genome of ~9.6 kb within the nucleocapsid. The genome contains a single open reading frame (ORF) encoding a polyprotein of just over 3,000 amino acids, which is cleaved to generate the mature structural and nonstructural viral proteins. The ORF is flanked by 5' and 3' non-translated regions (NTRs) of a few hundred nucleotides in length, which are important for RNA translation and replication. The translated polyprotein contains the structural core (C) and envelope proteins (E1, E2, p7) at the N-terminus, followed by the nonstructural proteins (NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, NS5B). The mature structural proteins are generated via cleavage by the host signal peptidase (*see*: Hijikata, M. *et al.* Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., USA, 1991, 88, 5547; Hussy, P. *et al.* Virology, 1996, 224, 93; Lin, C. *et al.* J. Virol., 1994, 68, 5063; Mizushima, H. *et al.* J. Virol., 1994, 68, 2731; Mizushima, H. *et al.* J. Virol., 1994, 68, 6215; Santolini, E. *et al.* J. Virol., 1994, 68, 3631; Selby, M. J. *et al.* Virology, 1994, 204, 114; and Grakoui, A. *et al.* Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., USA, 1993, 90, 10538). The junction between NS2 and NS3 is autocatalytically cleaved by the NS2/NS3 protease (*see*: Hijikata, M. *et al.* J. Virol., 1993, 67, 4665 and Bartenschlager, R. *et al.* J. Virol., 1994, 68, 5045), while the remaining four junctions are cleaved by the N-terminal serine protease domain of NS3 complexed with NS4A. (*see*: Failla, C. *et al.* J. Virol., 1994, 68, 3753; Lin, C. *et al.* J. Virol., 1994, 68, 8147; Tanji, Y. *et al.* J. Virol., 1995, 69, 1575 and Tai, C. L. *et al.* J. Virol., 1996, 70, 8477) The NS3 protein also contains the NTP-dependent helicase activity which unwinds duplex RNA during replication. The NS5B protein possesses RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (RDRP) activity (*see*: Behrens, S. E. *et al.* EMBO J., 1996,

15, 12; Lohmann, V. *et al.* J. Virol., **1997**, 71, 8416-8428 and Lohmann, V. *et al.* Virology, **1998**, 249, 108), which is essential for viral replication. (Ferrari, E. *et al.* J. Virol., **1999**, 73, 1649) It is emphasized here that, unlike HBV or HIV, no DNA is involved in the replication of HCV. Recently *in vitro* experiments using NS5B, substrate specificity for HCV-RDRP was studied using guanosine 5'-monophosphate (GMP), 5'-diphosphate (GDP), 5'-triphosphate (GTP) and the 5'-triphosphate of 2'-deoxy and 2',3'-dideoxy guanosine (dGTP and ddGTP, respectively). The authors claimed that HCV-RDRP has a strict specificity for ribonucleoside 5'-triphosphates and requires the 2'- and 3'-OH groups. (Lohmann; Virology, 108) Their experiments suggest that the presence of 2'- and 3'-substituents would be the prerequisite for nucleoside 5'-triphosphates to interact with HCV-RDRP and to act as substrates or inhibitors.

Examples of antiviral agents that have been identified as active against the hepatitis C flavivirus include:

1. Interferon and ribavirin (Battaglia, A. M. *et al.* Ann. Pharmacother. **2000**, 34, 487; Berenguer, M. *et al.* Antivir. Ther. **1998**, 3 (Suppl. 3), 125);
2. Substrate-based NS3 protease inhibitors (Attwood *et al.* PCT WO 98/22496, **1998**; Attwood *et al.* Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy **1999**, 10, 259, ; Attwood *et al.* German Patent Publication DE 19914474; Tung *et al.* PCT WO 98/17679), including alphaketoamides and hydrazinoureas, and inhibitors that terminate in an electrophile such as a boronic acid or phosphonate (Llinas-Brunet *et al.* PCT WO 99/07734);
3. Non-substrate-based inhibitors such as 2,4,6-trihydroxy-3-nitro-benzamide derivatives (Sudo K. *et al.*, Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications, **1997**, 238, 643 and Sudo K. *et al.* Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy **1998**, 9, 186), including RD3-4082 and RD3-4078, the former substituted on the amide with a 14 carbon chain and the latter processing a *para*-phenoxyphenyl group;
4. Thiazolidine derivatives which show relevant inhibition in a reverse-phase HPLC assay with an NS3/4A fusion protein and NS5A/5B substrate (Sudo K. *et al.* Antiviral Research **1996**, 32, 9), especially compound RD-1-6250,

possessing a fused cinnamoyl moiety substituted with a long alkyl chain, RD4 6205 and RD4 6193;

5. Thiazolidines and benzanilides identified in Kakiuchi N. *et al.* J. EBS Letters 421, 217 and Takeshita N. *et al.* Analytical Biochemistry 1997, 247, 242;
- 5 6. A phenanthrenequinone possessing activity against HCV protease in a SDS-PAGE and autoradiography assay isolated from the fermentation culture broth of *Streptomyces* sp., Sch 68631 (Chu M. *et al.* Tetrahedron Letters 1996, 37, 7229), and Sch 351633, isolated from the fungus *Penicillium griscofulum*, which demonstrates activity in a scintillation proximity assay (Chu M. *et al.*,
10 Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters 9, 1949);
7. Selective NS3 inhibitors based on the macromolecule elgin c, isolated from leech (Qasim M.A. *et al.* Biochemistry 1997, 36,1598);
8. HCV helicase inhibitors (Diana G. D. *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,633,358 and Diana G. D. *et al.* PCT WO 97/36554);
- 15 9. HCV polymerase inhibitors such as nucleotide analogues, gliotoxin (Ferrari R. *et al.* Journal of Virology 1999, 73, 1649), and the natural product cerulenin (Lohmann V. *et al.* Virology 1998, 249, 108);
- 20 10. Antisense phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides (S-ODN) complementary to at least a portion of a sequence of the HCV (Anderson et al. U.S. Patent No. 6,174,868), and in particular the sequence stretches in the 5' non-coding region (NCR) (Alt M. *et al.* Hepatology 1995, 22, 707), or nucleotides 326-348 comprising the 3' end of the NCR and nucleotides 371-388 located in the core coding region of the HCV RNA (Alt M. *et al.* Archives of Virology 1997, 142, 589 and Galderisi U. *et al.*, Journal of Cellular Physiology 1999, 81:2151);
- 25 11. Inhibitors of IRES-dependent translation (Ikeda N *et al.* Japanese Patent Pub. JP-08268890; Kai Y. *et al.* Japanese Patent Publication JP-10101591);
12. Nuclease-resistant ribozymes (Maccjak D.J. *et al.*, Hepatology 1999, 30, abstract 995);
- 30 13. Amantadine, such as rimantadine (Smith, Abstract from Annual Meeting of the American Gastroenterological Association and AASLD, 1996);

14. Quinolones, such as ofloxacin, ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin (AASLD Abstracts, Hepatology, Oct. 1994, Program Issue, 20 (4), pt.2, abstract no. 293);
15. Nucleoside analogs (Ismaili *et al.* WO 01/60315; Storer WO 01/32153), including 2'-deoxy-L-nucleosides (Watanabe *et al.* WO 01/34618), and 1-(β -L-ribofuranosyl)-1,2,4-triazole-3-carboxamide (levovirinTM) (Tam WO 01/46212); and
16. Other miscellaneous compounds including 1-amino-alkylcyclohexanes (Gold *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 6,034,134), alkyl lipids (Chojkier *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,922,757), vitamin E and other antioxidants (Chojkier *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,922,757), squalene, bile acids (Ozeki *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,846,964), N-(phosphonoacetyl)-L-aspartic acid, (Diana *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,830,905), benzenedicarboxamides (Diana *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,633,388), polyadenylic acid derivatives (Wang *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,496,546), 2',3'-dideoxyinosine (Yarchoan *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,026,687), benzimidazoles (Colacino *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,891,874), glucamines (Mueller *et al.* WO 01/08672), substituted-1,5-imino-D-glucitol compounds (Mueller *et al.* WO 00/47198).

Orthomyxoviridae

The *Orthomyxoviridae* is a group of segmented negative single-stranded RNA viruses with a genome size from 10-13.6 kb. They are enveloped viruses of approximately 80-120 nm. An overview of the *Orthomyxoviridae* taxonomy is available from the International Committee for Taxonomy of Viruses. The *Orthomyxoviridae* consists of three genera, which can be distinguished on the basis of antigenic differences between their nucleocapsid (NP) and matrix proteins (M).

1. Influenzavirus A, B. This genus contains influenza A and B viruses each of which contain eight distinct RNA segments. Influenza B viruses show little variability in their surface glycoproteins and only infect humans. On the other hand, influenza A viruses have great variability in their surface glycoproteins of influenza A viruses, and they can be divided into subtypes based on the antigenic nature of their hemagglutinin (HA) and neuroamidase (NA)

glycoproteins and infect humans as well as swine, horses, seals, fowl, ducks and many other species of birds.

2. Influenzavirus C. This genus contains only one species, influenza C, which contains only seven distinct RNA segments. Influenza C only has a single multifunctional glycoprotein and infects mainly humans, but has also been isolated from swine in China.
3. Influenzavirus D. This genus contains influenza D, which is solely tick-borne viruses that are structurally and genetically similar to influenza A, B and C.

One of the most important *Orthomyxoviridae* infections in humans is caused by the influenza A virus. These viruses are highly contagious and cause acute respiratory illness that has plagued society in epidemic proportions since ancient times. One of the earliest recordings of an influenza A epidemic can be traced to Hippocrates in 412 BC. These epidemics are rather frequent and are often fatal to the elderly, however these epidemics are quite unpredictable. These viruses are unique respiratory tract viruses, in that they undergo significant antigenic variation. Both hemagglutinin (HA) and neuroamidase (NA) glycoproteins are capable of antigenic drifts and shifts. There are fourteen known hemagglutinin (H1-H14) glycoproteins and nine known neuroamidase (N1-N9) glycoproteins. For example, since the first human influenza virus was isolated in 1933, major antigenic shifts have occurred. In 1957, the H2N2 subtype (Asian influenza) replaced the H1N1 subtype (Spanish influenza). Currently, the primary subtypes of influenza are H1N1, which reappeared in 1977 and H3N2, which reappeared in 1968.

The vast majority of research on influenza virus gene expression and RNA replication has been carried out with the influenza A virus. The most striking feature of the influenza A virion is a layer of about 500 spikes radiating outward (10 to 14 nm) from the lipid envelope. These spikes are of two types: rod-shaped spikes of HA and mushroom-shaped spikes of NA. The ratio of HA and NA varies, but is usually 4-5 to 1. Each gene segment encodes its own proteins, with the exception of the seventh and eighth, which encodes M₁ and M₂, and NS₁ and NS₂ respectively. The first 12 nucleotides at the 3'-end and the first 13 nucleotides at the 5'-end of each vRNA segment are conserved in all eight RNA segments. The first gene to have its nucleotide sequence determined was

HA. Since then, all 14 known HA antigenic subtypes and many variants within the subtypes have been determined.

In infected cells, the vRNAs are both transcribed into mRNAs and replicated. The synthesis of mRNA is distinct, in that the RNA is primed by 5' capped fragments derived from newly synthesized host-cell RNA polymerase II transcripts. The mRNA chain elongates until a stretch of uridine residues is reached 15-22 nucleotides before the 5'-ends of the vRNAs where transcription ends and polyadenylate is added to the mRNAs. For replication to occur, an alternative type of transcription is required that results in the production of full-length copies of the vRNAs. The full-length transcripts are initiated without a primer and are not terminated at the poly(A) site used during mRNA synthesis. The second step in replication is the copying of the template RNAs into vRNAs. This synthesis also occurs without a primer, since the vRNAs contain 5'-triphosphorylated ends. All three types of virus-specific RNAs – mRNA, template RNA and vRNA – are synthesized in the nucleus.

Examples of antiviral agents that have been identified as active against the influenza A virus include:

1. Actinomycin D (Barry, R. D. et al. "Participation of deoxyribonucleic acid in the multiplication of influenza virus" Nature, **1962**, *194*, 1139-1140);
2. Amantadine (Van Voris, L. P. et al. "Antivirals for the chemoprophylaxis and treatment of influenza" Semin Respir Infect, **1992**, *7*, 61-70);
3. 4-Amino- or 4-guanidino-2-deoxy-2,3-didehydro-D-N-acetylneuroaminic acid – 4-amino- or 4-guanidino-Neu 5 Ac2en (von Itzstein, M. et al. "Rational design of potent sialidase-based inhibitors of influenza virus replication" Nature, **1993**, *363*, 418-423);
4. Ribavirin (Van Voris, L. P. et al. "Antivirals for the chemoprophylaxis and treatment of influenza" Semin Respir Infect, **1992**, *7*, 61-70);
5. Interferon (Came, P. E. et al. "Antiviral activity of an interferon-inducing synthetic polymer" Proc Soc Exp Biol Med, **1969**, *131*, 443-446; Gerone, P. J. et al. "Inhibition of respiratory virus infections of mice with aerosols of

synthetic double-stranded ribonucleic acid" Infect Immun, 1971, 3, 323-327; Takano, K. et al. "Passive interferon protection in mouse influenza" J Infect Dis, 1991, 164, 969-972);

6. Inactivated influenza A and B virus vaccines ("Clinical studies on influenza vaccine – 1978" Rev Infect Dis, 1983, 5, 721-764; Galasso, G. T. et al. "Clinical studies on influenza vaccine – 1976" J Infect Dis, 1977, 136 (suppl), S341-S746; Jennings, R. et al. "Responses of volunteers to inactivated influenza virus vaccines" J Hyg, 1981, 86, 1-16; Kilbourne, E. D. "Inactivated influenza vaccine" In: Plotkin SA, Mortimer EA, eds. Vaccines Philadelphia: Saunders, 1988, 420-434; Meyer, H. M., Jr. et al. "Review of existing vaccines for influenza" Am J Clin Pathol, 1978, 70, 146-152; "Mortality and Morbidity Weekly Report. Prevention and control of Influenza: Part I, Vaccines. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP)" MMWR, 1993, 42 (RR-6), 1-14; Palache, A. M. et al. "Antibody response after influenza immunization with various vaccine doses: A double-blind, placebo-controlled, multi-centre, dose-response study in elderly nursing-home residents and young volunteers" Vaccine, 1993, 11, 3-9; Potter, C. W. "Inactivated influenza virus vaccine" In: Beare AS, ed. Basic and applied influenza research, Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1982, 119-158).

Paramyxoviridae

The *Paramyxoviridae* is a group of negative single-stranded RNA viruses with a genome size from 16-20 kb. They are enveloped viruses of approximately 150-300 nm. An overview of the *Paramyxoviridae* taxonomy is available from the International Committee for Taxonomy of Viruses. The *Paramyxoviridae* consists of two subfamilies.

1. Paramyxovirinae. This subfamily contains three genera:
 - a) Paramyxovirus. This genus is represented by Sendai virus and including human parainfluenza viruses 1 and 3;
 - b) Rubulavirus. This genus is represented by the mumps virus, simian virus 5, Newcastle disease virus and the human parainfluenza viruses 2 and 4;

c) Morbillivirus. This genus is represented by the measles virus; and

2. Pneumovirinae. This subfamily encode a larger number of mRNAs than the other sub-family (ten, compared with six or seven) and contains only one genera:

5 a) Pneumovirus. This genus is best represented by the respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), but also includes bovine (BRSV), ovine RSV (ORSC), caprine RSV (CRSV), pneumonia virus of mice (PVM) and turkey rhinotracheitis virus (TRTV).

10 One of the most important *Pneumovirinae* infections in humans is caused by the respiratory syncytial virus (RSV). RSV is the most important cause of viral lower respiratory tract disease in infants and children worldwide. In most areas, RSV outranks all other microbial pathogens as a cause of pneumonia and bronchiolitis in infants under one year of age. It has also been found that RSV infection is an important agent of disease in immunosuppressed adults and in the elderly. Additionally, BRSV has been shown to be
15 an economically important disease in cattle.

The 3'-end of genomic RSV RNA consists of a 44-nucleotide extragenic leader region that is presumed to contain the major viral promoter. The leader region is followed by the ten viral genes, which is followed by a 155-nucleotide extragenic trailer region. Eighty eight percent of the genomic RNA is accounted for by the ORFs for the ten major
20 proteins. Each gene begins with a conserved nine-nucleotide gene-start signal. For each gene, transcription begins at the first nucleotide of the signal. Each gene terminates with a semi-conserved 12 to 13 nucleotide gene-end signal that directs transcriptional termination and polyadenylation. The first nine genes are non-overlapping and are separated by intergenic regions that range in size from 1 to 52 nucleotides. The intergenic regions do
25 not contain any conserved sequence motifs or any obvious features of secondary structure. The last two RSV genes overlap by 68 nucleotides. Thus, one of the gene-start signals is located inside of, rather than after the other gene.

Examples of antiviral agents that have been identified as active against RSV include:

1. Ribavirin (Hruska, J. F. et al. "In vivo inhibition of respiratory syncytial virus by ribavirin" Antimicrob Agents Chemother, 1982, 21, 125-130); and
2. Purified human intravenous IgG – IVIG (Prince, G. A. et al. "Effectiveness of topically administered neutralizing antibodies in experimental immunotherapy of respiratory syncytial virus infection in cotton rats" J Virol, 1987, 61, 1851-1954; Prince, G. A. et al. "Immunoprophylaxis and immunotherapy of respiratory syncytial virus infection in cotton rats" Infect Immun, 1982, 42, 81-87).

Abnormal Cellular Proliferation

Cellular differentiation, growth, function and death are regulated by a complex network of mechanisms at the molecular level in a multicellular organism. In the healthy animal or human, these mechanisms allow the cell to carry out its designed function and then die at a programmed rate.

Abnormal cellular proliferation, notably hyperproliferation, can occur as a result of a wide variety of factors, including genetic mutation, infection, exposure to toxins, autoimmune disorders, and benign or malignant tumor induction.

There are a number of skin disorders associated with cellular hyperproliferation. Psoriasis, for example, is a benign disease of human skin generally characterized by plaques covered by thickened scales. The disease is caused by increased proliferation of epidermal cells of unknown cause. In normal skin the time required for a cell to move from the basal layer to the upper granular layer is about five weeks. In psoriasis, this time is only 6 to 9 days, partially due to an increase in the number of proliferating cells and an increase in the proportion of cells which are dividing (G. Grove, *Int. J. Dermatol.* 18:111, 1979). Approximately 2% of the population in the United States have psoriasis, occurring in about 3% of Caucasian Americans, in about 1% of African Americans, and rarely in native Americans. Chronic eczema is also associated with significant hyperproliferation of the epidermis. Other diseases caused by hyperproliferation of skin cells include atopic dermatitis, lichen planus, warts, pemphigus vulgaris, actinic keratosis, basal cell carcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma.

Other hyperproliferative cell disorders include blood vessel proliferation disorders, fibrotic disorders, autoimmune disorders, graft-versus-host rejection, tumors and cancers.

Blood vessel proliferative disorders include angiogenic and vasculogenic disorders. Proliferation of smooth muscle cells in the course of development of plaques in vascular tissue cause, for example, restenosis, retinopathies and atherosclerosis. The advanced lesions of atherosclerosis result from an excessive inflammatory-proliferative response to an insult to the endothelium and smooth muscle of the artery wall (Ross, R. Nature, 1993, 362:801-809). Both cell migration and cell proliferation play a role in the formation of atherosclerotic lesions.

Fibrotic disorders are often due to the abnormal formation of an extracellular matrix. Examples of fibrotic disorders include hepatic cirrhosis and mesangial proliferative cell disorders. Hepatic cirrhosis is characterized by the increase in extracellular matrix constituents resulting in the formation of a hepatic scar. Hepatic cirrhosis can cause diseases such as cirrhosis of the liver. An increased extracellular matrix resulting in a hepatic scar can also be caused by viral infection such as hepatitis. Lipocytes appear to play a major role in hepatic cirrhosis.

Mesangial disorders are brought about by abnormal proliferation of mesangial cells. Mesangial hyperproliferative cell disorders include various human renal diseases, such as glomerulonephritis, diabetic nephropathy, malignant nephrosclerosis, thrombotic micro-angiopathy syndromes, transplant rejection, and glomerulopathies.

Another disease with a proliferative component is rheumatoid arthritis. Rheumatoid arthritis is generally considered an autoimmune disease that is thought to be associated with activity of autoreactive T cells (See, e.g., Harris, E. D., Jr., The New England Journal of Medicine, 1990, 322: 1277-1289), and to be caused by autoantibodies produced against collagen and IgE.

Other disorders that can include an abnormal cellular proliferative component include Behcet's syndrome, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), ischemic heart disease, post-dialysis syndrome, leukemia, acquired immune deficiency syndrome, vasculitis, lipid histiocytosis, septic shock and inflammation in general.

A tumor, also called a neoplasm, is a new growth of tissue in which the multiplication of cells is uncontrolled and progressive. A benign tumor is one that lacks

the properties of invasion and metastasis and is usually surrounded by a fibrous capsule. A malignant tumor (i.e., cancer) is one that is capable of both invasion and metastasis. Malignant tumors also show a greater degree of anaplasia (i.e., loss of differentiation of cells and of their orientation to one another and to their axial framework) than benign tumors.

Approximately 1.2 million Americans are diagnosed with cancer each year, 8,000 of which are children. In addition, 500,000 Americans die from cancer each year in the United States alone. Prostate and lung cancers are the leading causes of death in men while breast and lung cancer are the leading causes of death in women. It is estimated that cancer-related costs account for about 10 percent of the total amount spent on disease treatment in the United States (CNN.Cancer.Factshttp://www.cnn.com/HEALTH/9511/conquer_cancer/facts/index.html, page 2 of 2, July 18, 1999).

Proliferative disorders are currently treated by a variety of classes of compounds including alkylating agents, antimetabolites, natural products, enzymes, biological response modifiers, miscellaneous agents, radiopharmaceuticals (for example, Y-90 tagged to hormones or antibodies), hormones and antagonists, such as those listed below.

Alkylating Agents

Nitrogen Mustards: Mechlorethamine (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas), Cyclophosphamide, Ifosfamide (acute and chronic lymphocytic leukemias, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, multiple myeloma, neuroblastoma, breast, ovary, lung, Wilms' tumor, cervix, testis, soft-tissue sarcomas), Melphalan (L-sarcolysin) (multiple myeloma, breast, ovary), Chlorambucil (chronic lymphocytic leukemia, primary macroglobulinemia, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas).

Ethylenimines and Methylmelamines: Hexamethylmelamine (ovary), Thiotepa (bladder, breast, ovary).

Alkyl Sulfonates: Busulfan (chronic granulocytic leukemia).

Nitrosoureas: Carmustine (BCNU) (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, primary brain tumors, multiple myeloma, malignant melanoma), Lomustine (CCNU) (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, primary brain tumors, small-cell lung), Semustine (methyl-CCNU) (primary brain tumors, stomach, colon), Streptozocin (STR) (malignant pancreatic insulinoma, malignant carcinoid).

Triazenes: Dacarbazine (DTIC; dimethyltriazenoimidazole-carboxamide)
(malignant melanoma, Hodgkin's disease, soft-tissue sarcomas).

Antimetabolites

5 Folic Acid Analogs: Methotrexate (amethopterin) (acute lymphocytic leukemia, choriocarcinoma, mycosis fungoides, breast, head and neck, lung, osteogenic sarcoma).

Pyrimidine Analogs: Fluorouracil (5-fluorouracil; 5-FU) Floxuridine (fluorodeoxyuridine; FUdR) (breast, colon, stomach, pancreas, ovary, head and neck, urinary bladder, premalignant skin lesions) (topical), Cytarabine (cytosine arabinoside) (acute granulocytic and acute lymphocytic leukemias).

10 Purine Analogs and Related Inhibitors: Mercaptopurine (6-mercaptopurine; 6-MP) (acute lymphocytic, acute granulocytic and chronic granulocytic leukemia), Thioguanine (6-thioguanine: TG) (acute granulocytic, acute lymphocytic and chronic granulocytic leukemia), Pentostatin (2'-deoxycyofomycin) (hairy cell leukemia, mycosis fungoides, chronic lymphocytic leukemia).

15 Vinca Alkaloids: Vinblastine (VLB) (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, breast, testis), Vincristine (acute lymphocytic leukemia, neuroblastoma, Wilms' tumor, rhabdomyosarcoma, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, small-cell lung).

20 Epipodophylotoxins: Etoposide (testis, small-cell lung and other lung, breast, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, acute granulocytic leukemia, Kaposi's sarcoma), Teniposide (testis, small-cell lung and other lung, breast, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, acute granulocytic leukemia, Kaposi's sarcoma).

Natural Products

25 Antibiotics: Dactinomycin (actinomycin D) (choriocarcinoma, Wilms' tumor rhabdomyosarcoma, testis, Kaposi's sarcoma), Daunorubicin (daunomycin; rubidomycin) (acute granulocytic and acute lymphocytic leukemias), Doxorubicin (soft tissue, osteogenic, and other sarcomas; Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, acute leukemias, breast, genitourinary thyroid, lung, stomach, neuroblastoma), Bleomycin (testis, head and neck, skin and esophagus lung, and genitourinary tract, Hodgkin's
30 disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas), Plicamycin (mithramycin) (testis, malignant

hypercalcemia), Mitomycin (mitomycin C) (stomach, cervix, colon, breast, pancreas, bladder, head and neck).

Enzymes: L-Asparaginase (acute lymphocytic leukemia).

5 Biological Response Modifiers: Interferon-alfa (hairy cell leukemia, Kaposi's sarcoma, melanoma, carcinoid, renal cell, ovary, bladder, non Hodgkin's lymphomas, mycosis fungoides, multiple myeloma, chronic granulocytic leukemia).

Miscellaneous Agents

10 Platinum Coordination Complexes: Cisplatin (cis-DDP) Carboplatin (testis, ovary, bladder, head and neck, lung, thyroid, cervix, endometrium, neuroblastoma, osteogenic sarcoma).

Anthracenedione: Mixtozantrone (acute granulocytic leukemia, breast).

Substituted Urea: Hydroxyurea (chronic granulocytic leukemia, polycythemia vera, essential thrombocytosis, malignant melanoma).

15 Methylhydrazine Derivative: Procarbazine (N-methylhydrazine, MIH) (Hodgkin's disease).

Adrenocortical Suppressant: Mitotane (o,p'-DDD) (adrenal cortex), Amino-glutethimide (breast).

Adrenocorticosteroids: Prednisone (acute and chronic lymphocytic leukemias, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, Hodgkin's disease, breast).

20 Progestins: Hydroxprogesterone caproate, Medroxyprogesterone acetate, Megestrol acetate (endometrium, breast).

Anti-angiogenesis Agents

Angiostatin, Endostatin.

Hormones and Antagonists

25 Estrogens: Diethylstilbestrol Ethinyl estradiol (breast, prostate)

Antiestrogen: Tamoxifen (breast).

Androgens: Testosterone propionate Fluoxymesterone (breast).

Antiandrogen: Flutamide (prostate).

Gonadotropin-Releasing Hormone Analog: Leuprolide (prostate).

5 Toxicity associated with therapy for abnormally proliferating cells, including cancer, is due in part to a lack of selectivity of the drug for diseased versus normal cells. To overcome this limitation, therapeutic strategies that increase the specificity and thus reduce the toxicity of drugs for the treatment of proliferative disorders are being explored. One such strategy that is being aggressively pursued is drug targeting.

10 In view of the severity of these diseases and their pervasiveness in animals, including humans, it is an object of the present invention to provide a compound, method and composition for the treatment of a host, including animals and especially humans, infected with any of the viruses described above, including flavivirus or pestivirus, influenza virus or Respiratory Syncytial Virus ("RSV").

15 It is another object of the present invention to provide a method and composition for the treatment of a host, including animals and especially humans, with abnormal cellular proliferation.

It is a further object to provide a method and composition for the treatment of a host, including animals and especially humans, infected with hepatitis C or BVDV.

20 It is a further object to provide a method and composition for the treatment of a host, including animals and especially humans, infected with influenza.

It is a further object to provide a method and composition for the treatment of a host, including animals and especially humans, infected with RSV.

It is a further object to provide a method and composition for the treatment of a host, including animals and especially humans, with a tumor, including a malignant tumor.

25 It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a more effective process to quantify viral load, and in particular of BVDV or HCV load, in a host, including animals, especially humans.

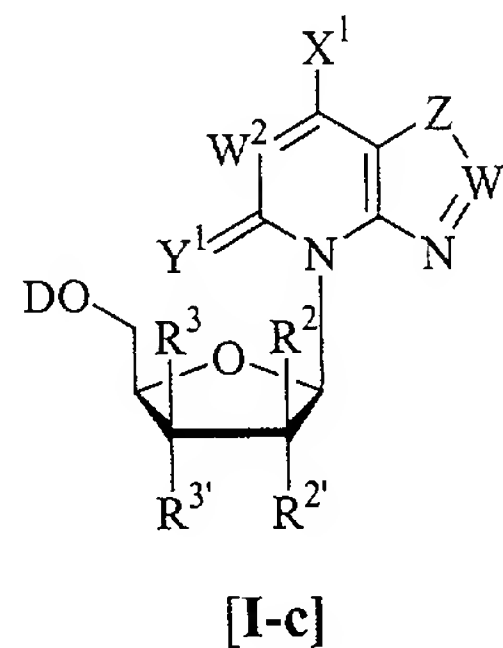
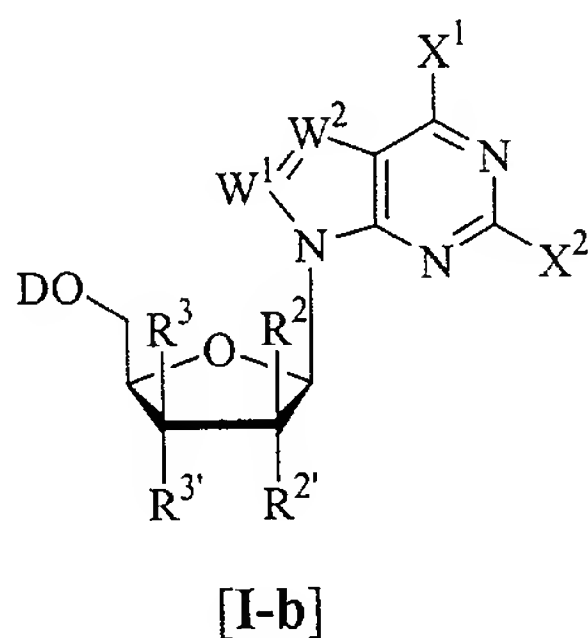
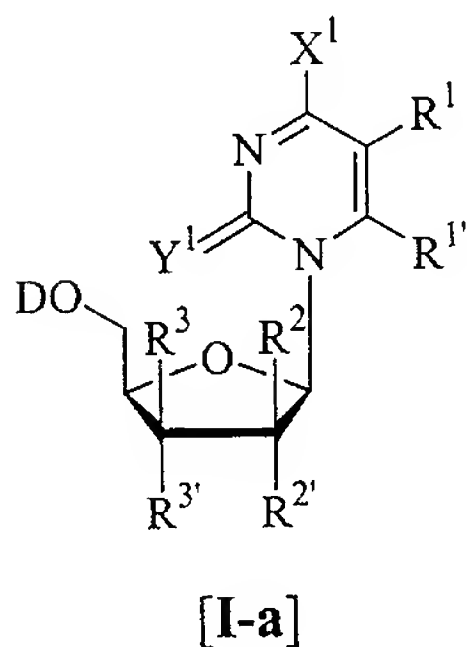
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

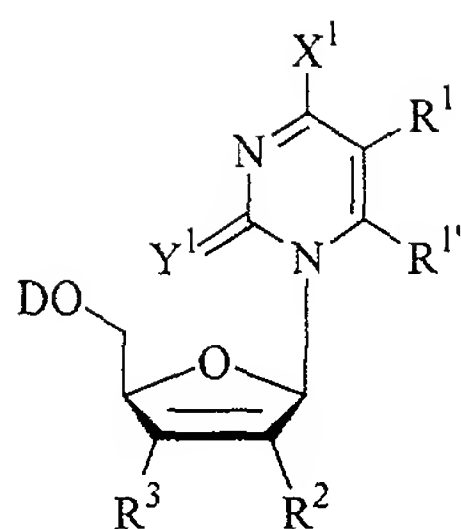
The present invention provides a β -D or β -L nucleoside of formula (I) – (XXIII) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug for the treatment of a host infected with a virus belonging to the *Flaviviridae*, *Orthomyxoviridae* and *Paramyxoviridae* family. Alternatively, the β -D or β -L nucleoside (I) – (XXIII) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug can be used for the treatment of abnormal cellular proliferation.

Specifically, the invention also includes methods for treating or preventing the following:

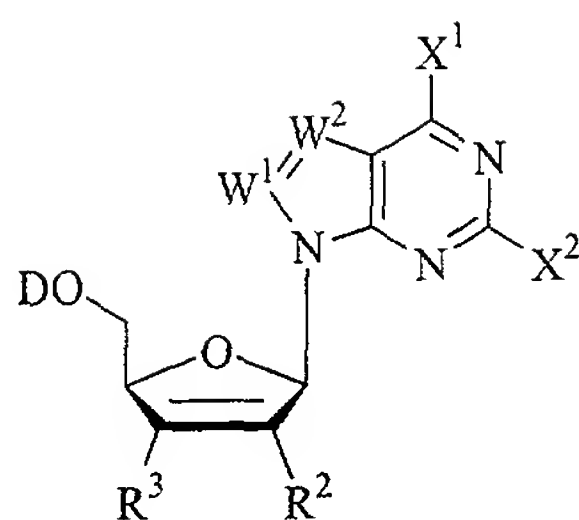
- (a) a *Flaviviridae* infection, including all members of the Hepacivirus genus (HCV), Pestivirus genus (BVDV, CSFV, BDV), or Flavivirus genus (Dengue virus, Japanese encephalitis virus group (including West Nile Virus), and Yellow Fever virus);
- (b) an *Orthomyxoviridae* infection, including all members of the Influenza A, B genus, in particular influenza A and all relevant subtypes – including H1N1 and H3N2 – and Influenza B;
- (c) a *Paramyxoviridae* infection including Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) infection; and
- (d) abnormal cellular proliferation, including malignant tumors.

In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -D nucleoside of the general formula (I) or (II):

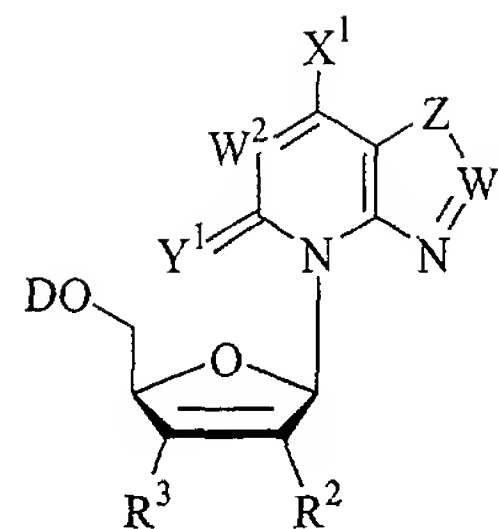




[II-a]



[II-b]



[II-c]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D is hydrogen, alkyl, acyl, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate,
monophosphate ester, diphosphate ester, triphosphate ester, phospholipid or amino
acid;

each W¹ and W² is independently CH or N;

each X¹ and X² is independently hydrogen, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), NH₂, NHR⁴,
NR⁴R^{4'}, NHOR⁴, NR⁴NR^{4'}R^{4''}, OH, OR⁴, SH or SR⁴;

each Y¹ is O, S or Se;

each Z is CH₂ or NH;

each R¹ and R^{1'} is independently hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl,
aryl, alkylaryl, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), NH₂, NHR⁵, NR⁵R^{5'}, NHOR⁵, NR⁵NHR^{5'},
NR⁵NR^{5'}R^{5''}, OH, OR⁵, SH, SR⁵, NO₂, NO, CH₂OH, CH₂OR⁵, CO₂H, CO₂R⁵,
CONH₂, CONHR⁵, CONR⁵R^{5'} or CN;

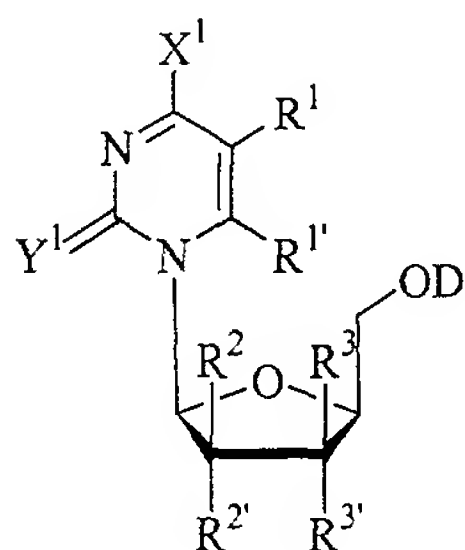
each R² and R^{2'} independently is hydrogen or halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), OH, SH, OCH₃,
SCH₃, NH₂, NHCH₃, CH=CH₂, CN, CH₂NH₂, CH₂OH, CO₂H.

each R³ and R^{3'} independently is hydrogen or halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), OH, SH, OCH₃,
SCH₃, NH₂, NHCH₃, CH₃, C₂H₅, CH=CH₂, CN, CH₂NH₂, CH₂OH, CO₂H.

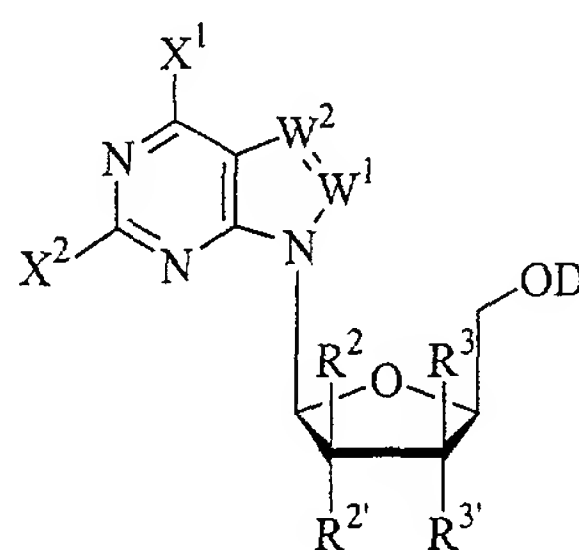
each R⁴, R^{4'}, R^{4''}, R⁵, R^{5'} and R^{5''} independently is hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower
alkenyl, aryl, or arylalkyl such as unsubstituted or substituted phenyl or benzyl;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (I) or (II), at least one of R² and
R^{2'} is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R^{3'} is hydrogen.

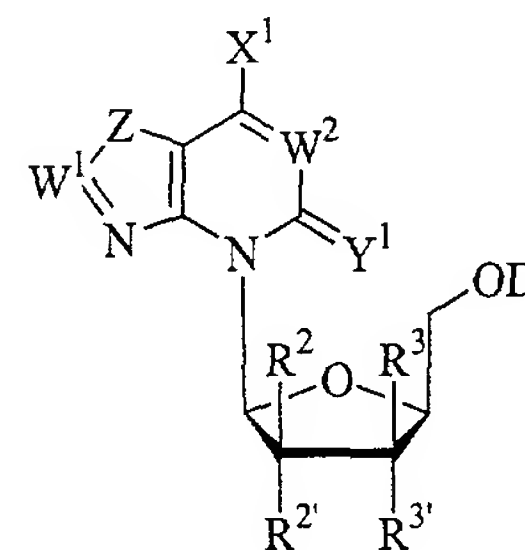
In another embodiment of the invention, anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -L nucleoside of the general formula (III) or (IV):



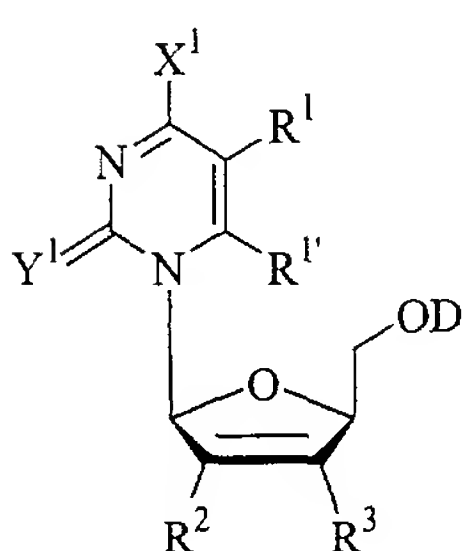
[III-a]



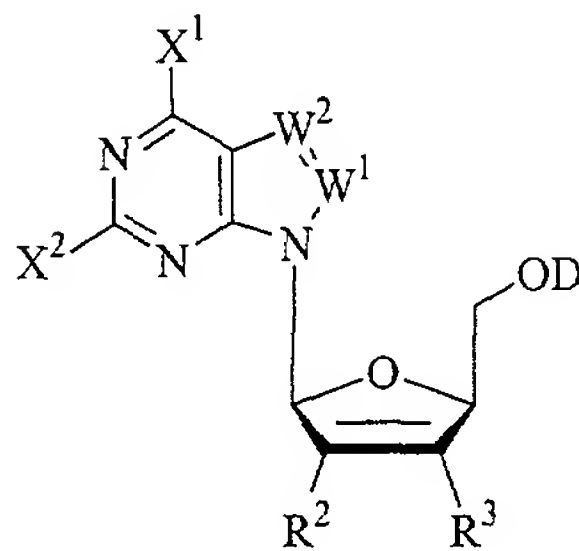
[III-b]



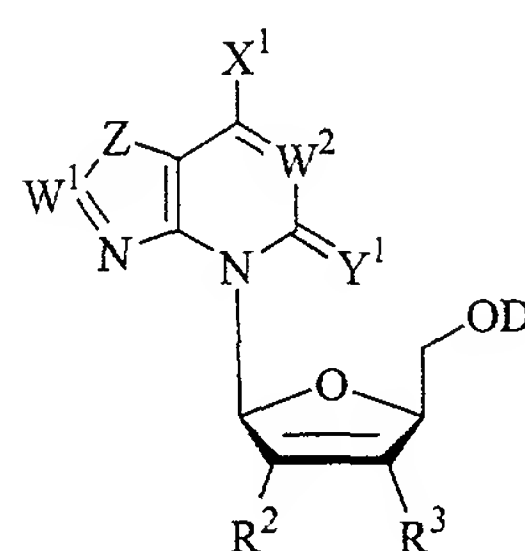
[III-c]



[IV-a]



[IV-b]



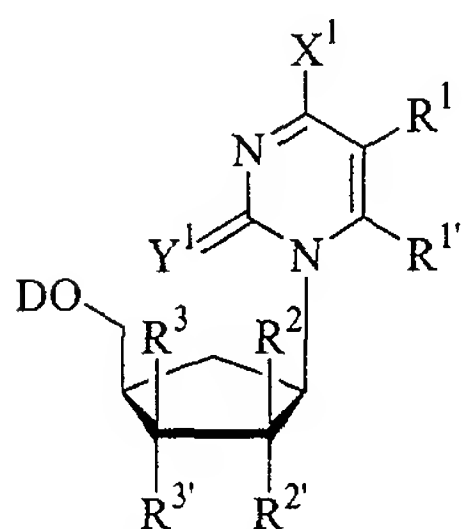
[IV-c]

5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

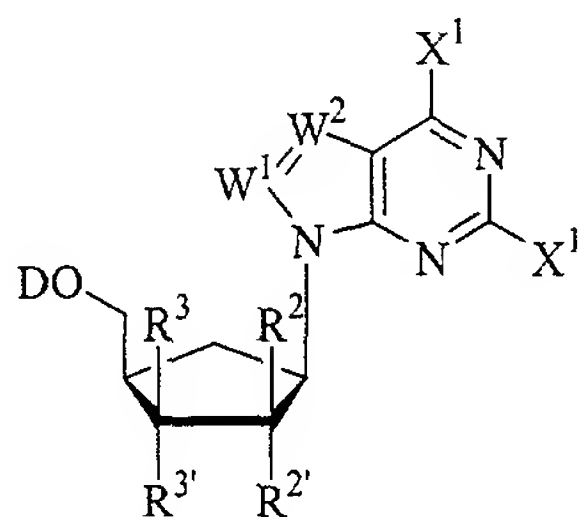
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R¹', R², R²', R³ and R³' is the same as defined previously;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (III) or (IV), at least one of R² and R²' is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R³' is hydrogen.

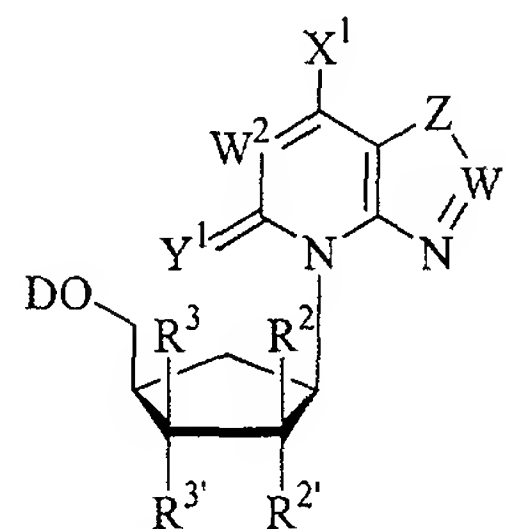
In one embodiment of the invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -D-carba-sugar nucleoside of the general formula (V) to (VII):



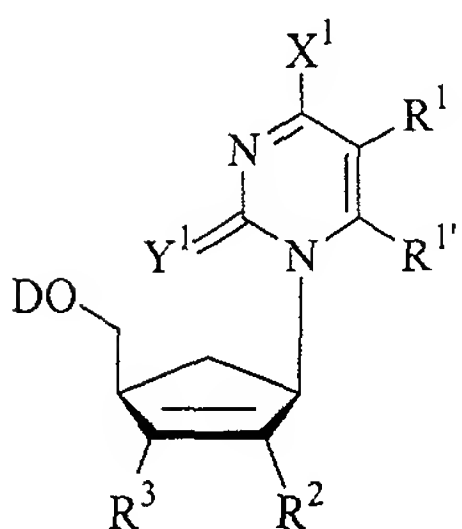
[V-a]



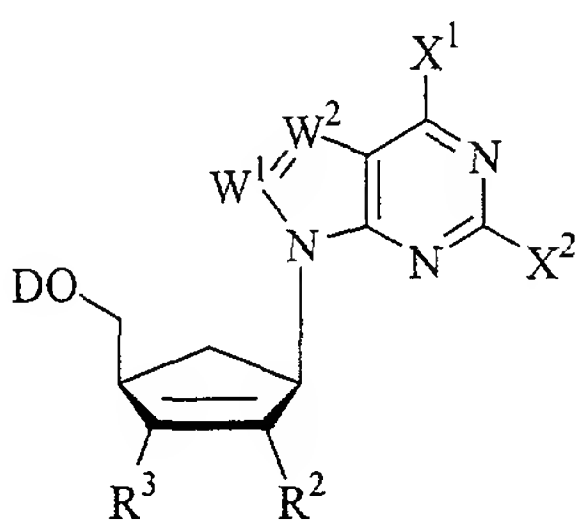
[V-b]



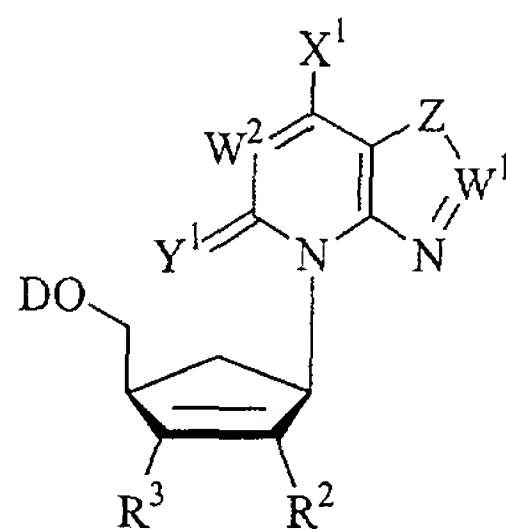
[V-c]



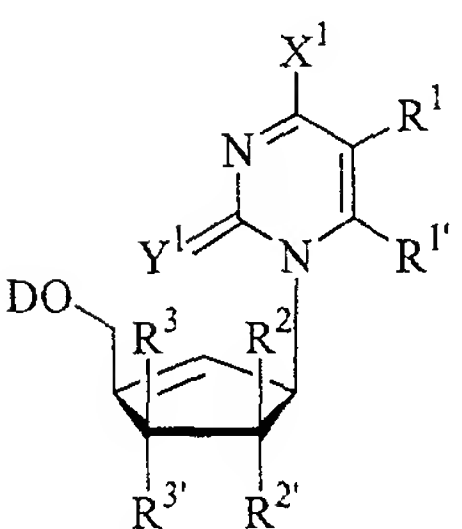
[VI-a]



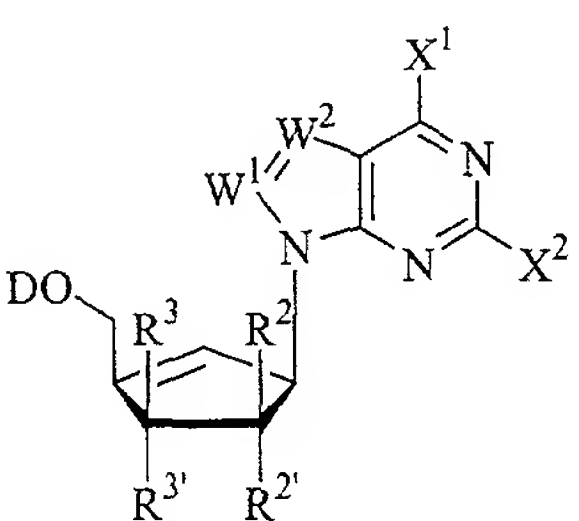
[VI-b]



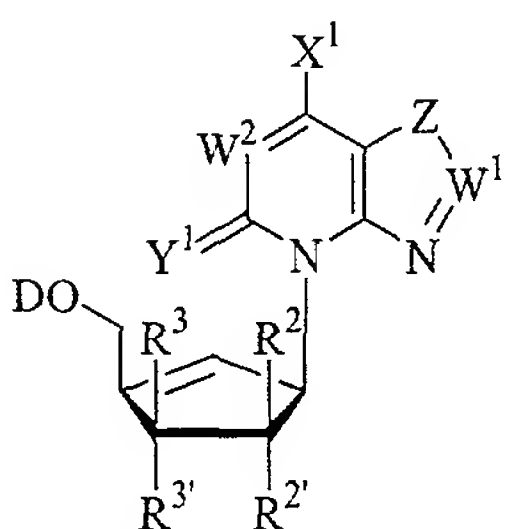
[VI-c]



[VII-a]



[VII-b]



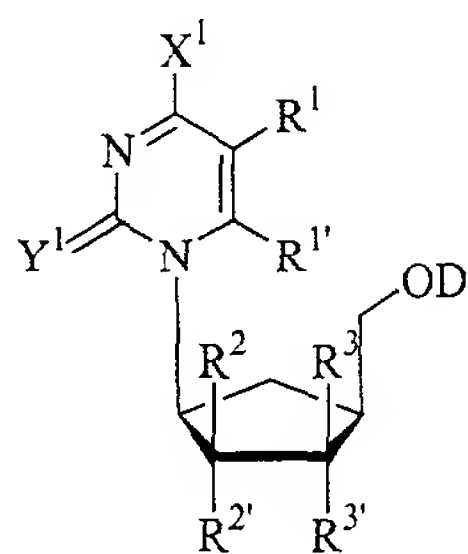
[VII-c]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

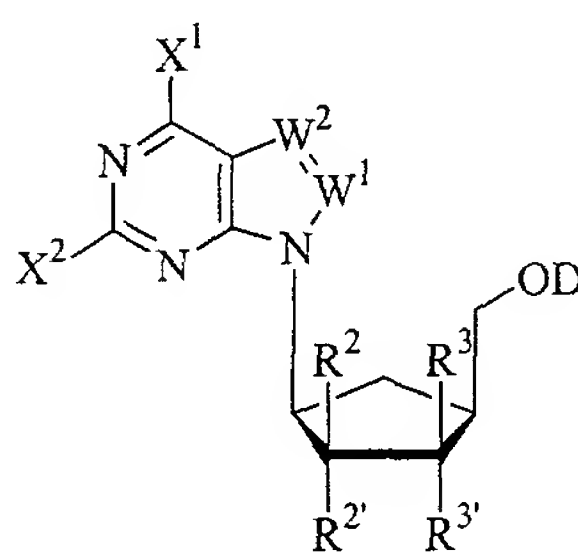
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (V) or (VI), at least one of R² and R^{2'} is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R^{3'} is hydrogen.

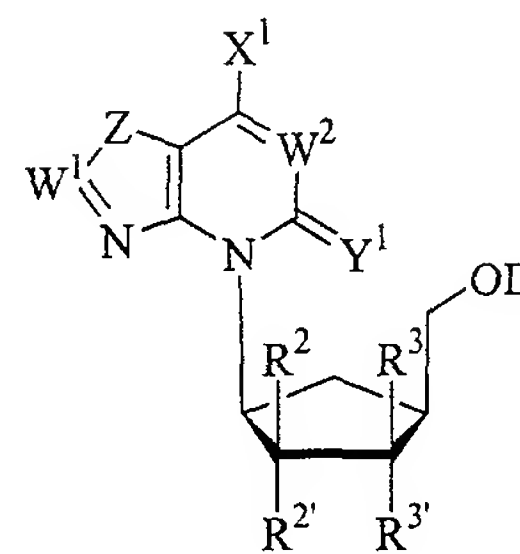
In one embodiment, anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -L-carba-sugar nucleoside of the general formula (VIII) to (X):



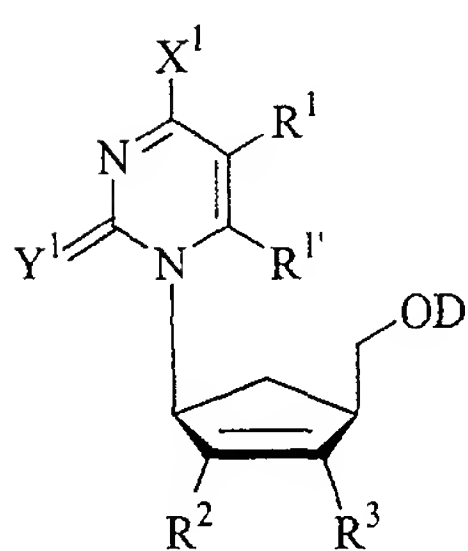
[VIII-a]



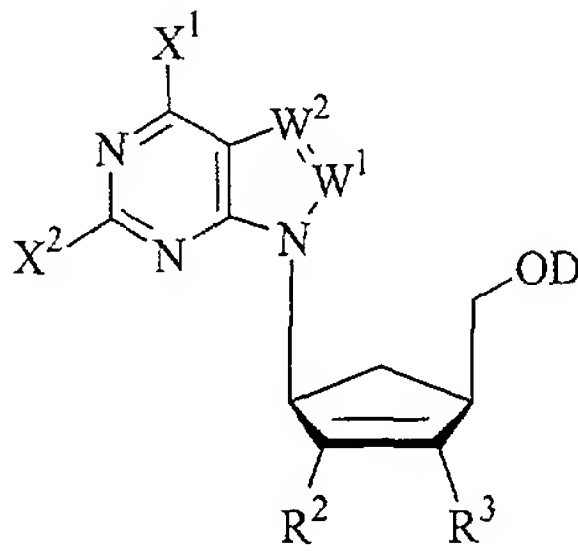
[VIII-b]



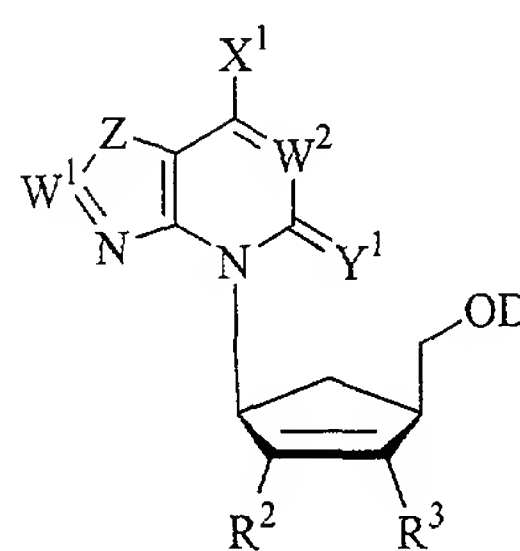
[VIII-c]



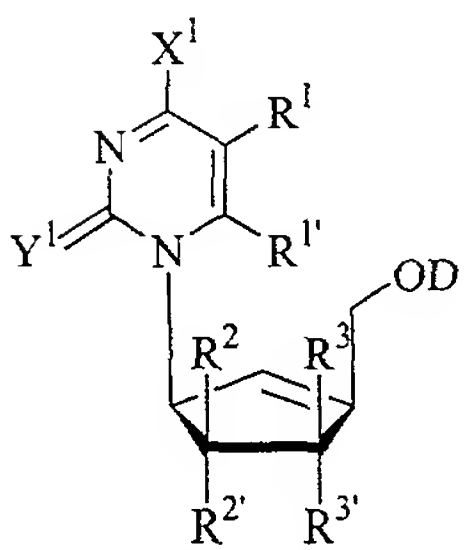
[IX-a]



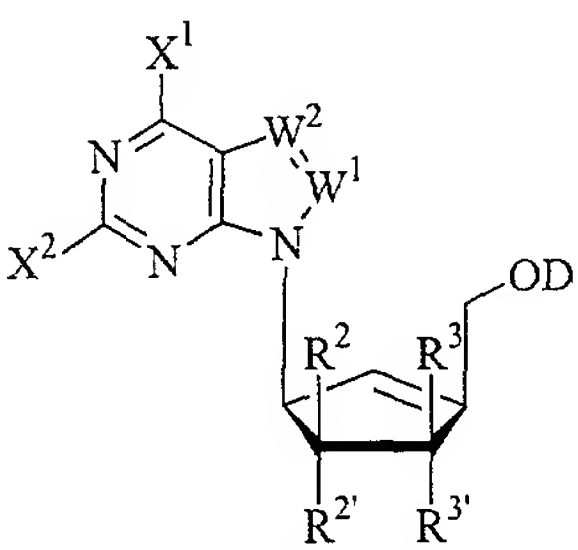
[IX-b]



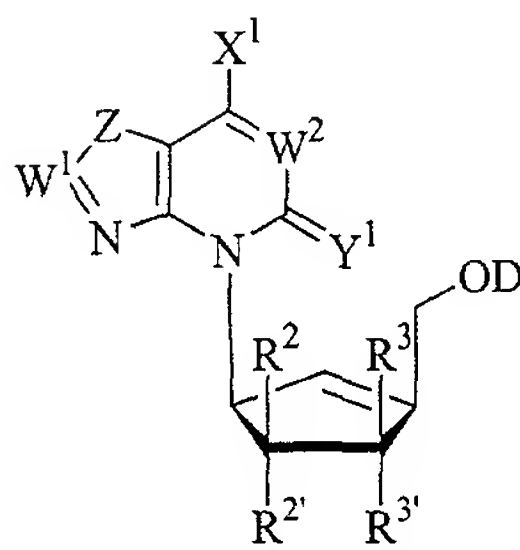
[IX-c]



[X-a]



[X-b]



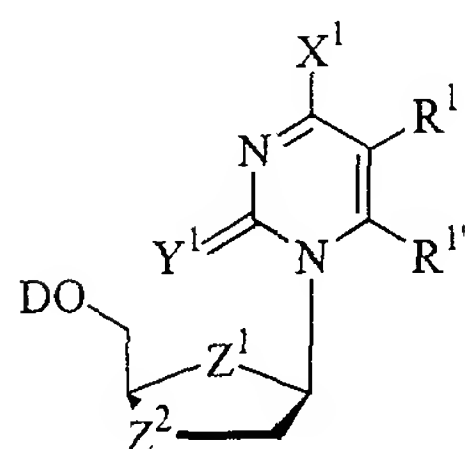
[X-c]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

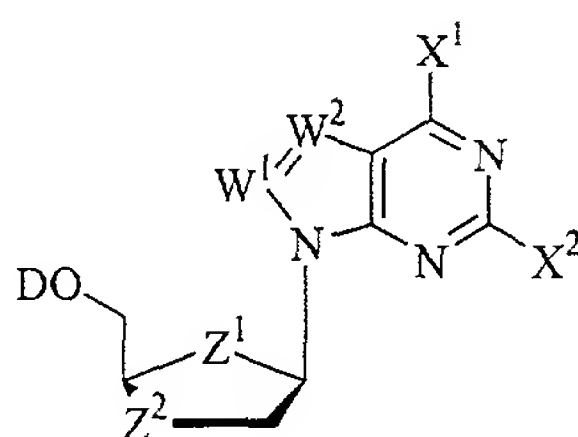
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R¹', R², R²', R³ and R³' is the same as defined previously;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (VIII) or (IX), at least one of R² and R²' is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R³' is hydrogen.

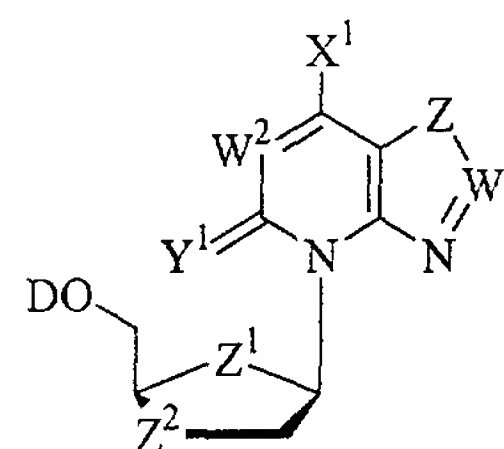
In further embodiment of the invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L-nucleoside is of the general formula (XI) or (XII), respectively:



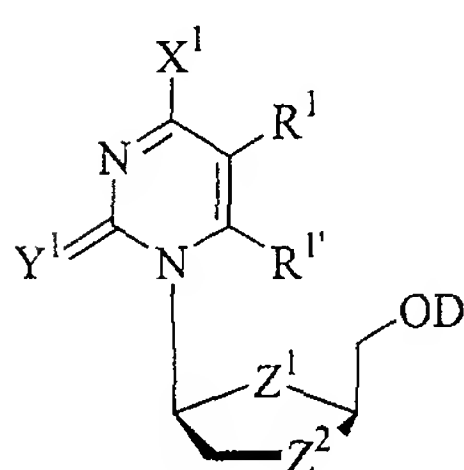
[XI-a]



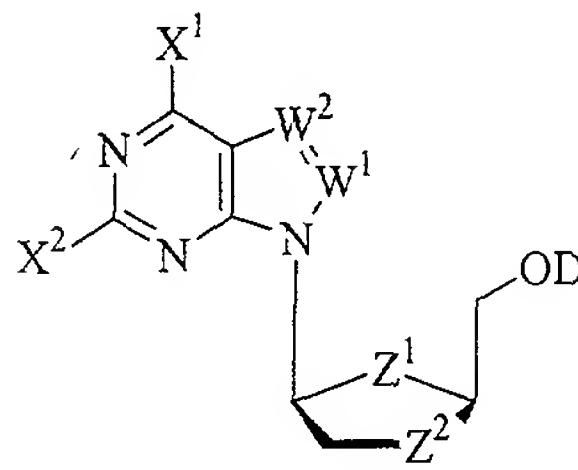
[XI-b]



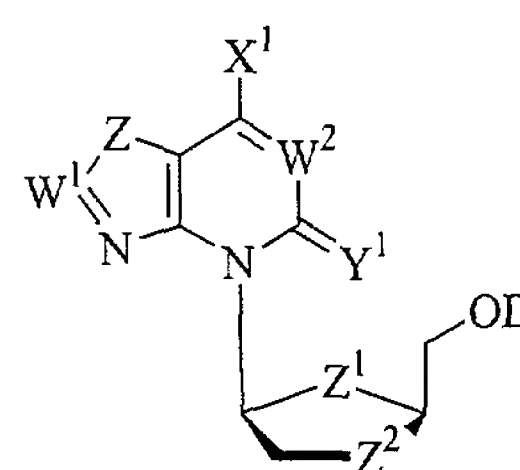
[XI-c]



[XII-a]



[XII-b]



[XII-c]

5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

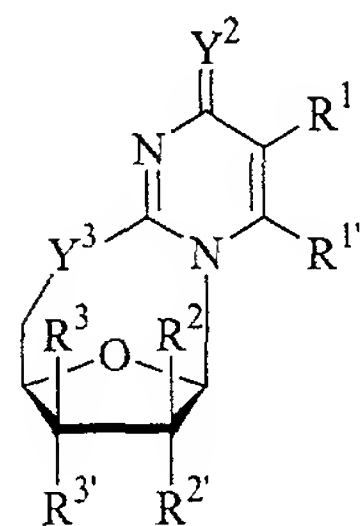
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R¹', R², R²', R³ and R³' is the same as defined previously;

each Z¹ and Z² independently is O, S, CH₂, NR⁶ or Se;

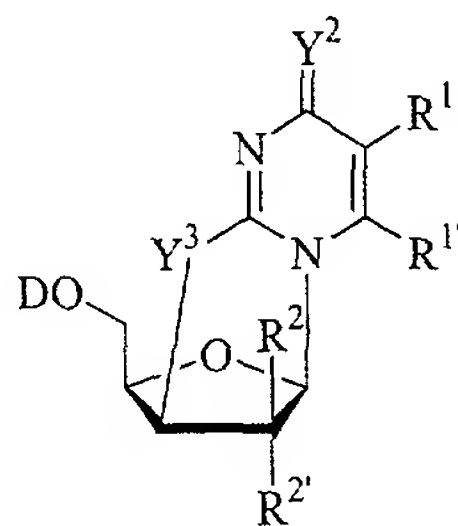
each R⁶ is hydrogen, lower alkyl or lower acyl.

10

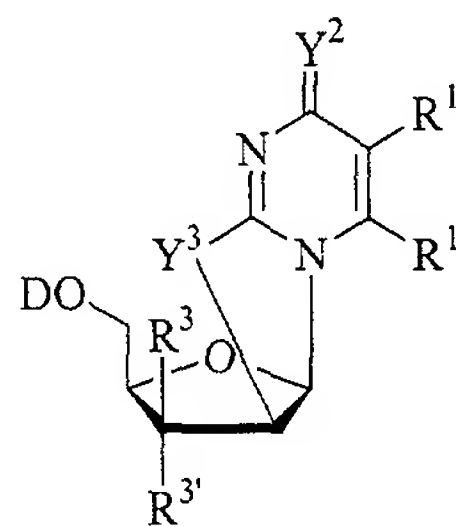
In a further embodiment of this invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L-nucleoside, though preferably β -D, is of the general formula (XIII):



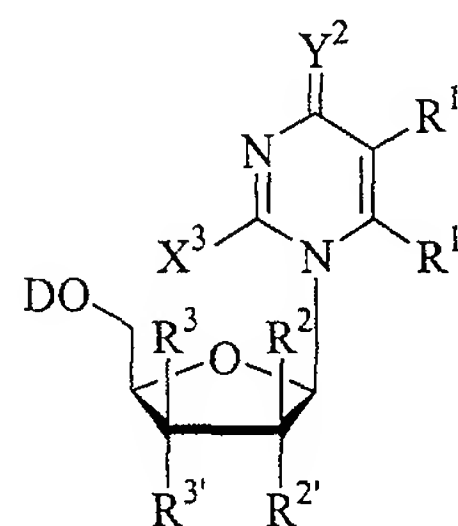
[XIII-a]



[XIII-b]



[XIII-c]



[XIII-d]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

each Y² is O, S, NH or NR⁷;

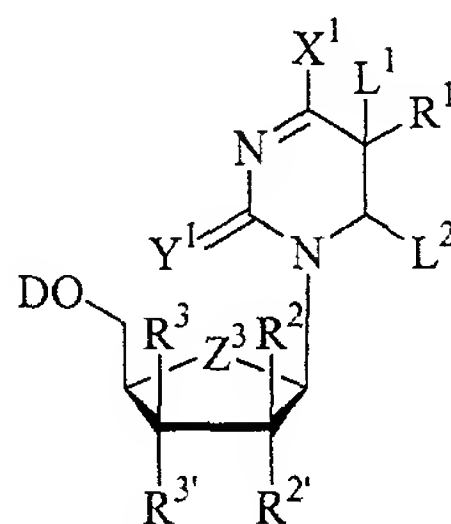
each Y³ is O, S, NH or NR⁸;

5 each X³ is OR⁹ or SR⁹; and

each R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ is hydrogen, lower alkyl of C₁-C₆, arylalkyl or aryl;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (XIII-d), at least one of R² and R^{2'} is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R^{3'} is hydrogen.

10 In another embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective compound is a β-D or β-L-nucleoside, though preferably β-D, resulting from the addition of a small molecule, such as alkyl hypochlorite, alkyl hypobromite, hypobromous acid or acyl halide to an appropriate pyrimidine nucleoside, forming a nucleoside of the formula (XIV):



[XIV]

15 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, X¹, Y¹, Z¹, R¹, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

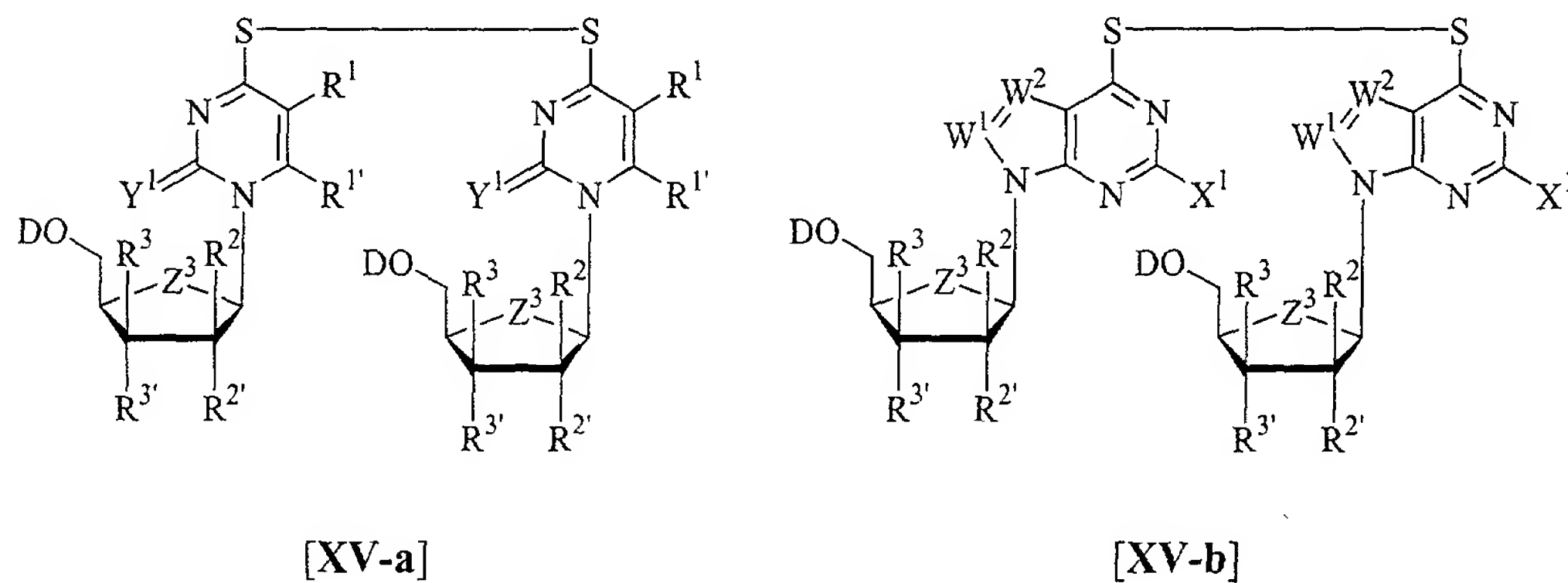
each L¹ is hydrogen, Cl or Br;

each L² is OH, OCH₃, OC₂H₅, OC₃H₇, OCF₃, OAc or OBz;

each Z³ can be O or CH₂.

20

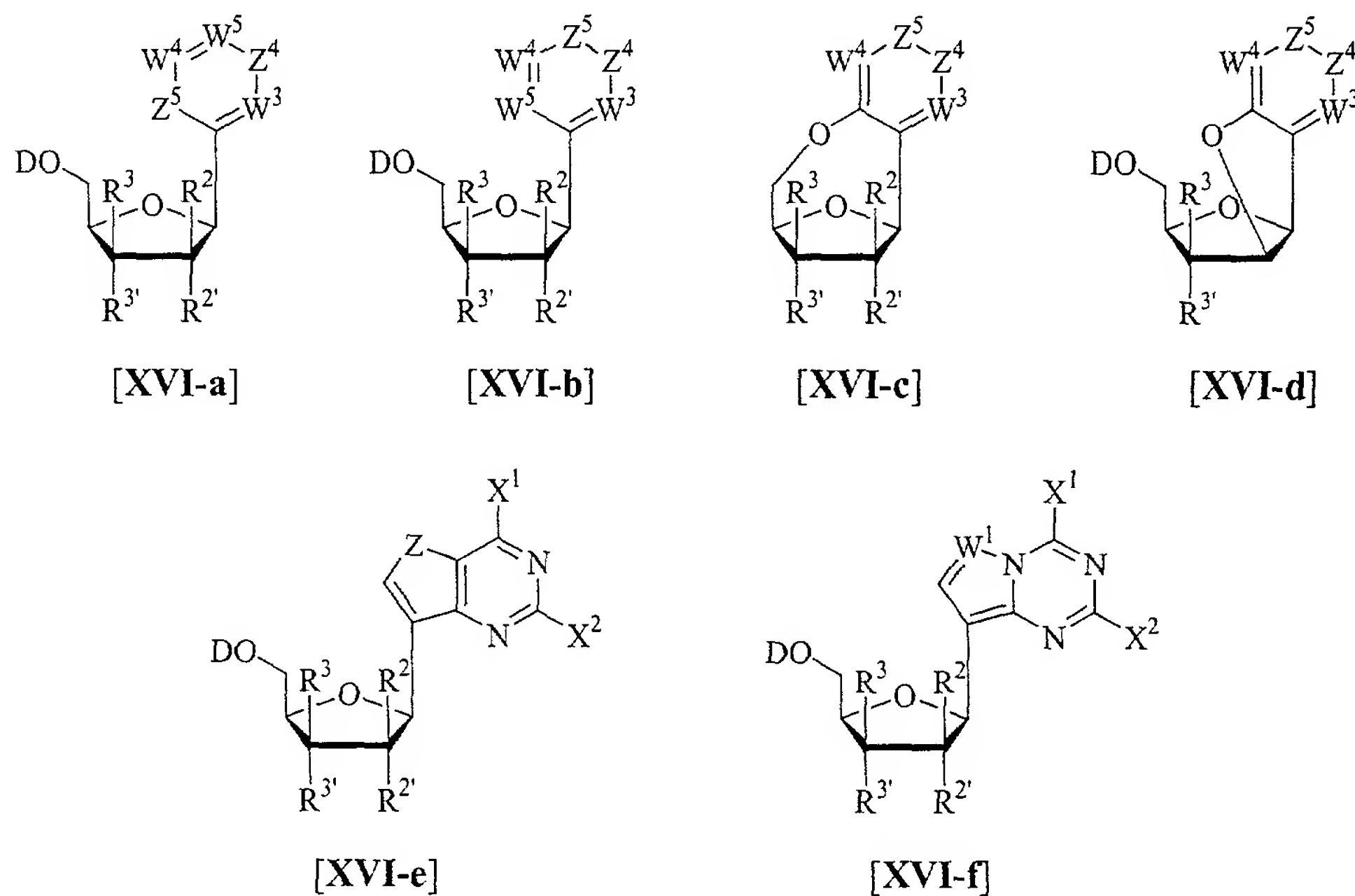
In another embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a dimeric nucleoside (each nucleoside being in either the β -D or β -L configuration) of general formula (XV), in which the two nucleosides are linked through a disulfide bond:



5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, W¹, W², X¹, Y¹, Z³, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously.

In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -D or β -L C-nucleoside of the general formula (XVI):



10 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, W¹, X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

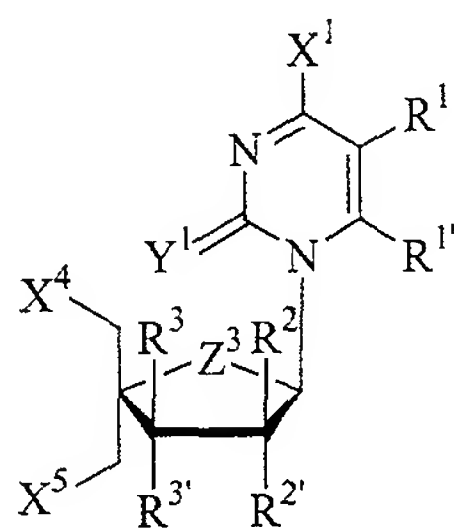
each W³ is independently N, CH or CR¹;

each W⁴ and W⁵ is independently N, CH, CX¹ or CR^{1'}; and

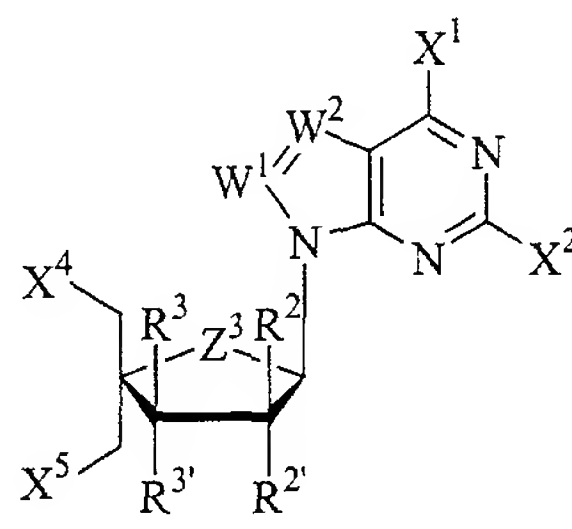
each Z⁴ and Z⁵ is independently NH or C(=Y¹);

5 such that if Z⁴ and Z⁵ are covalently bound, then Z⁴ is not C(=Y¹) when Z⁵ is C(=Y¹); and
there are no more than three ring nitrogens.

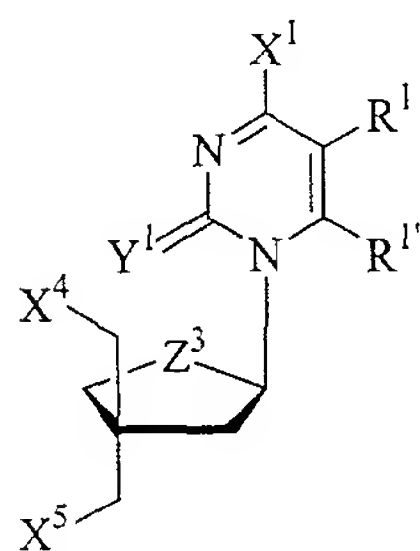
In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a
β-D or β-L-branched-chain sugar nucleoside of the general formula (XVII):



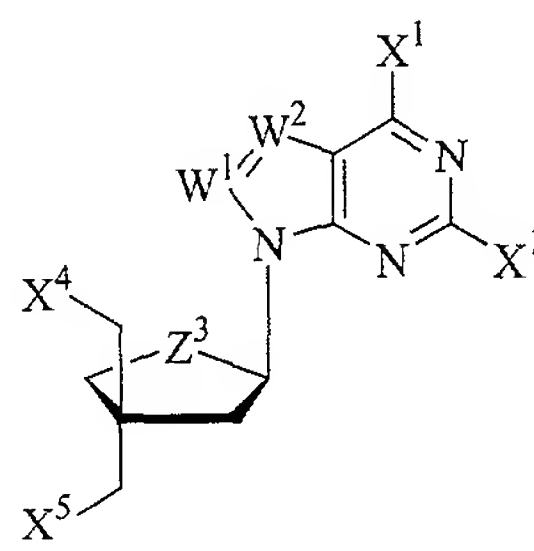
[XVII-a]



[XVII-b]



[XVII-c]



[XVII-d]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

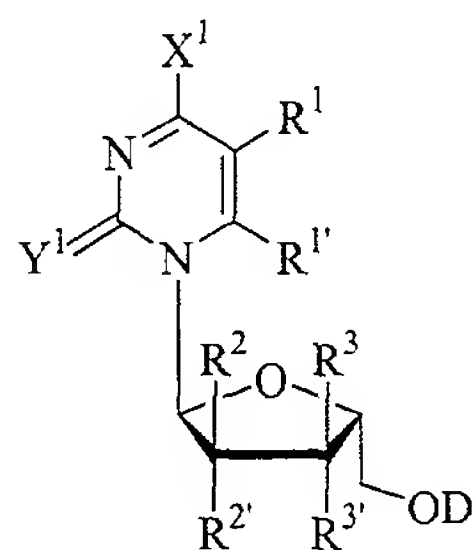
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z³, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

each X^4 and X^5 is independently hydrogen, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), N_3 , NH_2 , NHR^8 , $NR^8R^{8'}$, OH, OR^8 , SH or SR^8 ; and

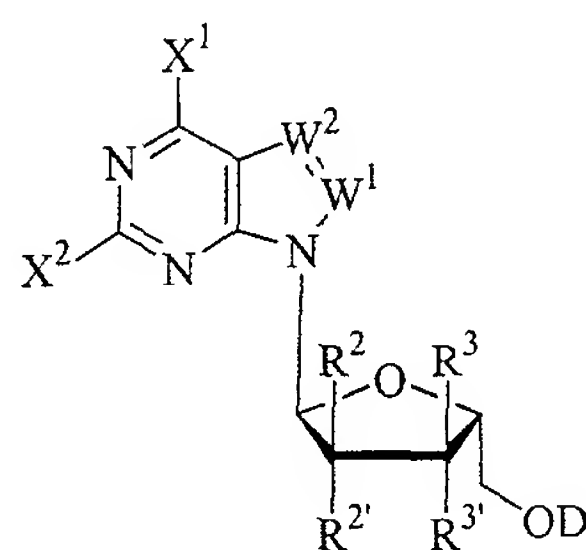
each R^8 and $R^{8'}$ is independently hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, aryl or arylalkyl, such as an unsubstituted or substituted phenyl or benzyl;

5 such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (XVII-a) or (XVII-b), X^4 is not OH or OR^8 .

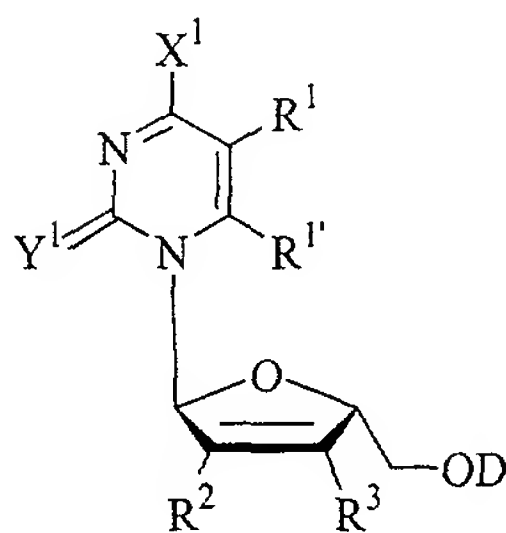
In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a α -D or α -L-nucleoside of the general formula (XVIII):



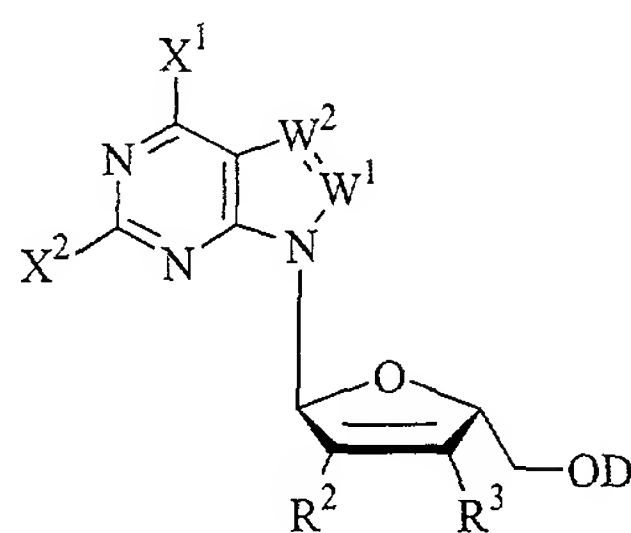
[XVIII-a]



[XVIII-b]



[XVIII-c]

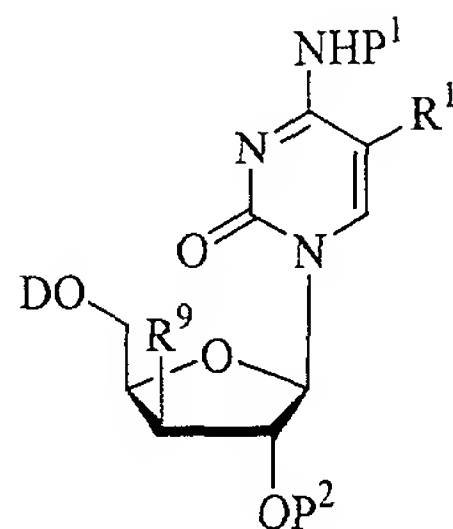


[XVIII-d]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, W^1 , W^2 , X^1 , X^2 , Y^1 , R^1 , $R^{1'}$, R^2 , $R^{2'}$, R^3 and $R^{3'}$ is the same as defined previously;

In a sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XIX):



[XIX]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

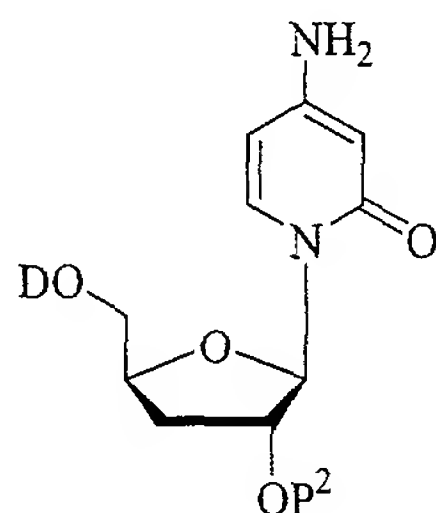
5 each D, R¹, R⁴ and R^{4'} is the same as defined previously;

each R⁹ is hydrogen, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I) or OP³;

each P¹ is hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, aryl, arylalkyl (such as an unsubstituted or substituted phenyl or benzyl), OH, OR⁴, NH₂, NHR⁴ or NR⁴R^{4'}; and

10 each P² and P³ is independently hydrogen, alkyl, acyl, -Ms, -Ts, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, mono-phosphate ester, diphosphate ester, triphosphate ester, phospholipid or amino acid, though preferably hydrogen.

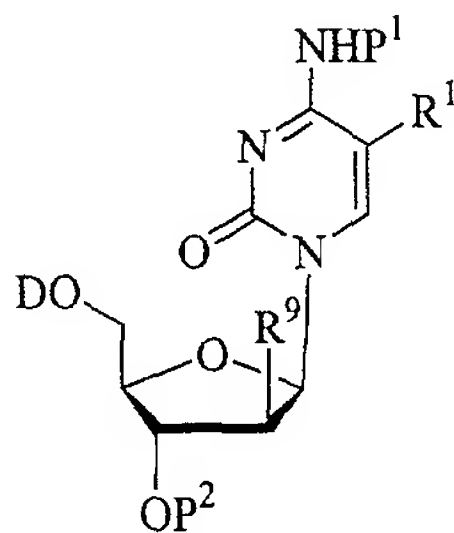
In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside of the formula (XIX) is the following:



15 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D and P² is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D and P² are independently hydrogen.

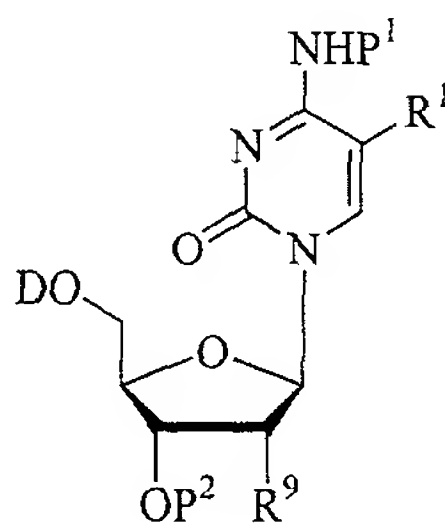
In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XX):



[XX]

5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:
each D, P¹, P², P³, R¹, R⁴, R⁴' and R⁹ is the same as defined previously.

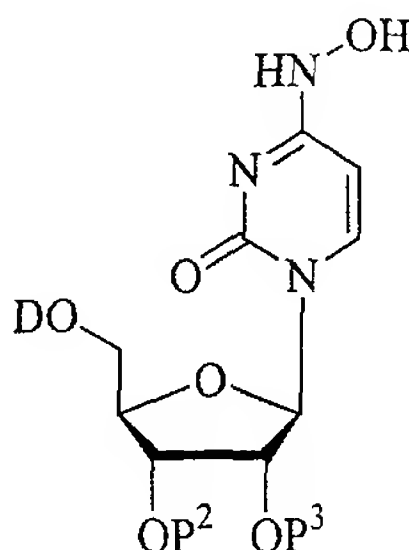
In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XXI):



[XXI]

10 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:
each D, P¹, P², P³, R¹, R⁴ and R⁴' is the same as defined previously.

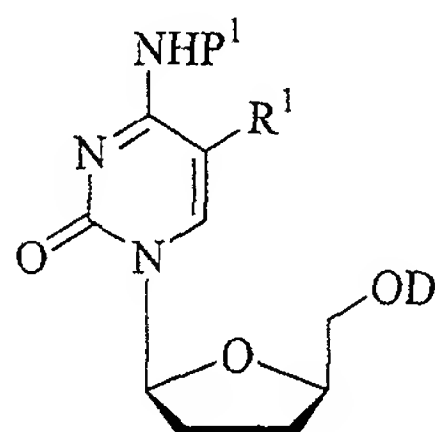
In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside of the formula (XXI) is the following:



or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

- 5 each D, P² and P³ is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D, P² and P³ are independently hydrogen.

In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XXII):

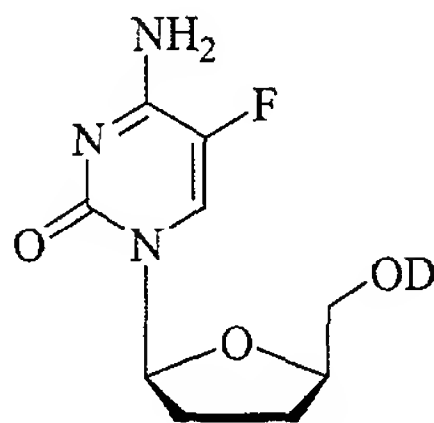


[XXII]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

- 10 each D, P¹ and R¹ is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D and P² are independently hydrogen.

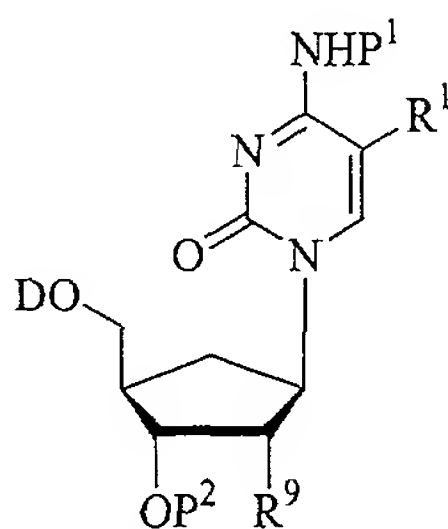
In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside, though preferably β -L, of the formula (XXII) is the following:



5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

D is the same as defined previously, and preferably H.

In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XXIII):

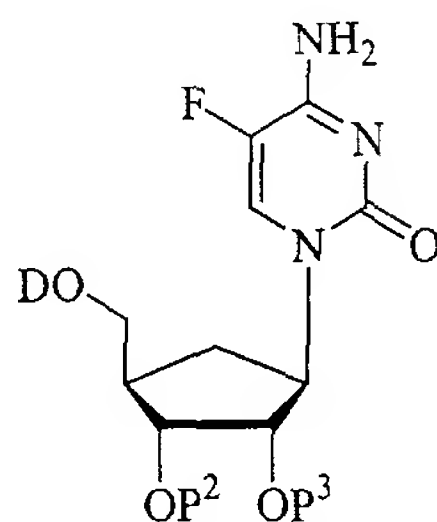


[XXIII]

10 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, P¹, P², P³, R¹, R⁴ and R^{4'} is the same as defined previously.

In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside of the formula (XXIII) is the following:



or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

- 5 each D, P² and P³ is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D, P² and P³ are independently hydrogen.

10 In one embodiment, the nucleoside has an EC₅₀ (effective concentration to achieve 50% viral inhibition) when tested in an appropriate cell-based assay, of less than 15 micromolar, and more particularly, less than 10 or 5 micromolar. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleoside is enantiomerically enriched.

The present invention also includes at least the following features:

- 15 (a) use of a β -D nucleoside or β -L nucleoside of formula (I) – (XXIII), as described herein, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof in a medical therapy, i.e. as an antiviral or antitumor/anticancer agent, for example for the treatment or prophylaxis of a *Flaviviridae* infections, including hepatitis C infection;
- 20 (b) use of a β -D nucleoside or β -L nucleoside of formula (I) – (XXIII), as described herein, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for treatment of a *Flaviviridae* infection, including hepatitis C infection;
- (c) a pharmaceutical composition that include an antivirally effective amount of a β -D nucleoside or β -L nucleoside of formula (I) – (XXIII), as described herein, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent according to the present invention;

- 304594007
- 10040001
- (d) a pharmaceutical composition with a β -D nucleoside or β -L nucleoside of formula (I) – (XXIII), as described herein, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof in combination with one or more other antivirally effective agents; and
- 5 (e) process for the preparation of β -D nucleoside or β -L nucleoside of formula (I) – (XXIII), as described herein, and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrugs thereof.

The activity and toxicity of the compounds described herein can be evaluated according to any known procedure. An efficient process to quantify the viral load in a host using real-time polymerase chain reaction ("RT-PCR") is provided below. The process involves the use of a quenched fluorescent probe molecule, which can be hybridized to the target viral DNA or RNA. Upon exonucleolytic degradation, a detectable fluorescent signal can be monitored. Using this technique, the RT-PCR amplified DNA or RNA can be detected in real time by monitoring the presence of fluorescence signals.

15 This specification demonstrates:

- (a) a process to quantitate viral load in real time using RT-PCR, as described herein;
- (b) a process to quantitate viral load of a *Flaviviridae* in a host, including BVDV and HCV, in a host in real time using the RT-PCR, as described herein;
- 20 (c) a process to quantitate viral load of BVDV in a MDBK cell line or a host sample in real time using the RT-PCR, as described herein;
- (d) a probe molecule designed to fluoresce upon exonucleolytic degradation and to be complementary to the BVDV NADL NS5B region, as described herein; and
- (e) a probe molecule with a sequence of 5'-6-fam-AAATCCTCCTAACAAGCGGGTTCCAGG-tamara-3' (Sequence ID No 1) and primers with a sequence of sense: 5'-AGCCTTCAGTTTCTTGCTGATGT-3' (Sequence ID No 2) and antisense: 5'-TGTTGCGAAAGCACCAACAG-3' (Sequence ID No 3);
- 25

- (f) a process to quantitate viral load of HCV in a host derived sample or a cell line in real time using the RT-PCR, as described herein;
- (g) a probe molecule designed to fluoresce upon exonucleolytic degradation and to be complementary to the HCV 5'-uncoding region, as described herein; and
- 5 (h) a probe molecule designed to fluoresce upon exonucleolytic degradation and to be complementary to the HCV coding region, as described herein; and
- (i) a probe molecule designed to fluoresce upon exonucleolytic degradation and to be complementary to the HCV 3'-uncoding region, as described herein; and
- 10 (j) a probe molecule with a sequence of 5'-6-fam-CCTCCAGGACCCCCCTCCC-tamara-3' (Sequence ID No 4) and primers with a sequence of sense: 5'-AGCCATGGCGTTAGTA(T/C)GAGTGT-3' (Sequence ID No 5) and antisense: 5'-TTCCGCAGACCACTATGG-3' (Sequence ID No 6).

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

15 **Figure 1** is an illustration of the increase in plaque forming units with increasing concentration of bovine viral diarrhea virus ("BVDV") in cell culture as described in Example 51. **Figure 1** establishes that the method of Example 51 provides reliable quantification of BVDV over a four log PFU/mL of virus.

20 **Figure 2** is an illustration of the BVDV replication cycle in MDBK cells to determine the optimal harvesting time (in hours post infection versus the log of plaque forming units ("PFU"), i.e. 22 hours after infection, which roughly corresponds to approximately one replication cycle, where the amount of virus produced is equal to the amount of virus inoculated into the cell, as described in Example 52.

Figure 3 is a bar chart graph showing the ability of certain test compounds to inhibit the number of plaque forming units, as described in Example 40 against BVDV.

25 **Figure 4** is a line graph illustrating that the prevention of cytotoxicity of a "carba-sugar" nucleoside in CEM cells (human T-cell lymphoma) and in SUDHL-1 cells (human anaplastic T-cell lymphoma cell line) can be accomplished by co-administration of natural nucleosides, namely cytidine and uridine.

Figure 5 provides the structure of various non-limiting examples of nucleosides of the present invention, as well as the known nucleoside, ribavirin, which is used as a comparative example in the text.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

5 The present invention provides a nucleoside of the general formula (I) – (XXIII) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug for the treatment of a host infected with a virus belonging to the *Flaviviridae*, the *Orthomyxoviridae*, or the *Paramyxoviridae* family. Alternatively, the nucleoside of the general formula (I) – (XXIII) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug can be used for the treatment of abnormal
10 cellular proliferation.

In one embodiment, a method for the treatment or prophylaxis of an antiviral or antiproliferative agent, for example for the treatment or prophylaxis of a viral infections, including *Flaviviridae* infections, including hepatitis C infection, influenza virus infection, including influenza A (such as H1N1 and H3N2) and influenza B and RSV, as well as
15 abnormal cellular proliferation that includes the administration of an anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective amount of a nucleoside of the present invention, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof is provided.

In another embodiment, a method for the treatment or prophylaxis of an antiviral or antiproliferative agent, for example for the treatment or prophylaxis of a *Flaviviridae*
20 infection that includes the administration of an antivirally amount of a nucleoside of the present invention, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for treatment is provided.

In another embodiment, a method for the treatment or prophylaxis of an antiviral or antiproliferative agent, for example for the treatment or prophylaxis of an Influenza
25 virus infection that includes the administration of an antivirally effective amount of a nucleoside of the present invention, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for treatment is provided.

In another embodiment, a method for the treatment or prophylaxis of an antiviral or antiproliferative agent, for example for the treatment or prophylaxis of a RSV infection
30 that includes the administration of an antivirally effective amount of the present invention,

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for treatment is provided.

5 In another embodiment, a method for the treatment or prophylaxis of an antiviral or antiproliferative agent, for example for the treatment or prophylaxis of a disease characterized by abnormal cellular proliferation that includes the administration of an anti-proliferatively effective amount of a nucleoside of the present invention.

In another embodiment, the invention is the use of one of the compounds described herein in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a viral infection or abnormal cellular proliferation, as provided herein.

10 In another embodiment, the invention is the use of one of the compounds described herein in the treatment of a host exhibiting a viral infection or abnormal cellular proliferation, as provided herein.

15 In another embodiment, a pharmaceutical composition that includes an antivirally or anti-proliferatively effective amount of a nucleoside of the present invention, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent according to the present invention is provided.

20 In another embodiment, a pharmaceutical composition with a nucleoside of the present invention, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof in combination with one or more other antivirally or anti-proliferatively effective agents is provided.

In another embodiment, a process for the preparation of the nucleosides of the present invention, and its pharmaceutically acceptable salt and prodrug thereof is provided.

25 In an additional embodiment, a method of treating a mammal having a virus-associated disorder which comprises administering to the mammal a pharmaceutically effective amount of a nucleoside of the present invention, or their pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof, is provided.

In an additional embodiment, a method of treating a mammal having disorder associated with abnormal cellular proliferation, which comprises administering to the

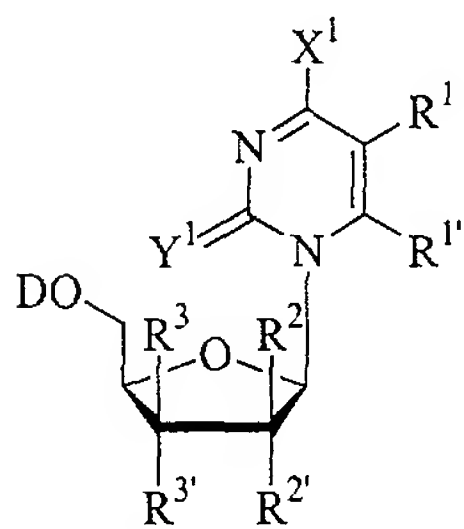
mammal a pharmaceutically effective amount of a nucleoside of the present invention, or their pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof, is provided.

In particular, the invention includes the described compounds in methods for treating or preventing, or uses for the treatment or prophylaxis of, or uses in the manufacture of a medicament for following:

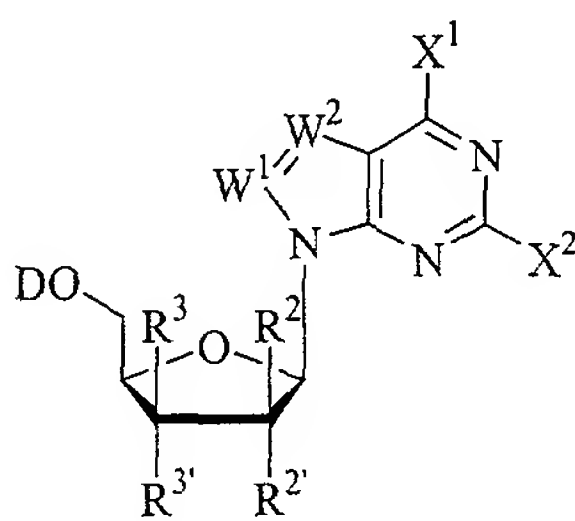
- (a) a *Flaviviridae* infection, including all members of the Hepacivirus genus (HCV), Pestivirus genus (BVDV, CSFV, BDV), or Flavivirus genus (Dengue virus, Japanese encephalitis virus group (including West Nile Virus), and Yellow Fever virus);
- (b) an *Orthomyxoviridae* infection, including all members of the Influenza A, B genus, in particular influenza A and all relevant subtypes – including H1N1 and H3N2 – and Influenza B;
- (c) a *Paramyxoviridae* infection, including Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) infection; and
- (d) abnormal cellular proliferation, including malignant tumors.

I. Compounds of the Invention

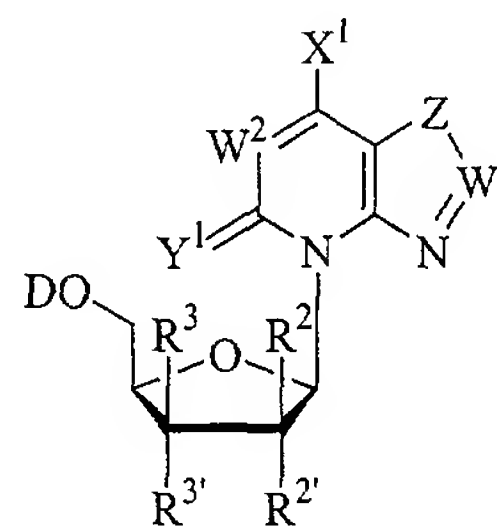
In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -D nucleoside of the general formula (I) or (II):



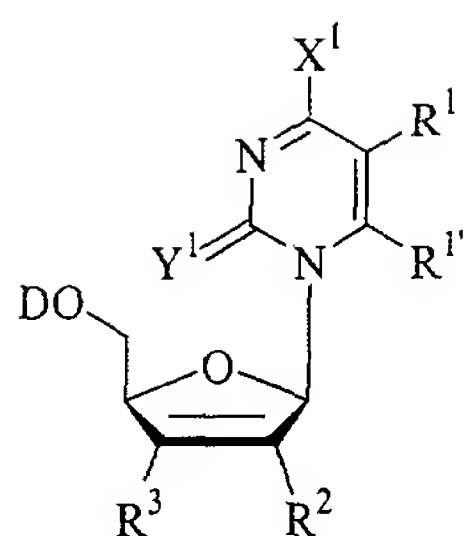
[I-a]



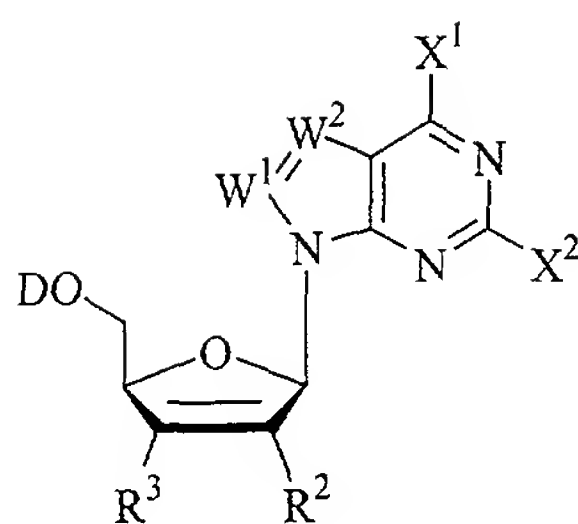
[I-b]



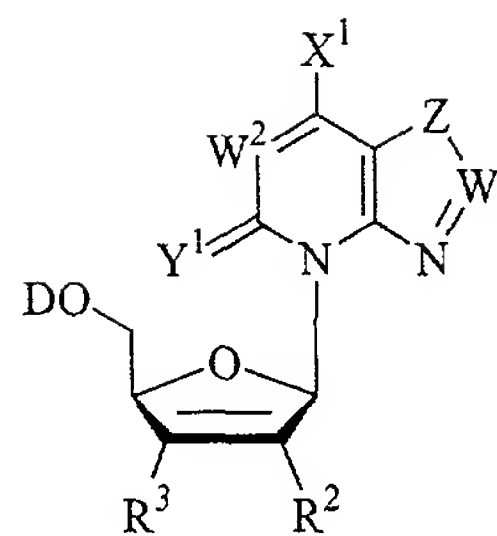
[I-c]



[II-a]



[II-b]



[II-c]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D is hydrogen, alkyl, acyl, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate,
monophosphate ester, diphosphate ester, triphosphate ester, phospholipid or amino
acid, though preferably hydrogen;

each W¹ and W² is independently CH or N;

each X¹ and X² is independently hydrogen, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), NH₂, NHR⁴,
NR⁴R^{4'}, NHOR⁴, NR⁴NR^{4'}R^{4''}, OH, OR⁴, SH or SR⁴;

each Y¹ is O, S or Se;

each Z is CH₂ or NH;

each R¹ and R^{1'} is independently hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl,
aryl, alkylaryl, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), NH₂, NHR⁵, NR⁵R^{5'}, NHOR⁵, NR⁵NHR^{5'},
NR⁵NR^{5'}R^{5''}, OH, OR⁵, SH, SR⁵, NO₂, NO, CH₂OH, CH₂OR⁵, CO₂H, CO₂R⁵,
CONH₂, CONHR⁵, CONR⁵R^{5'} or CN;

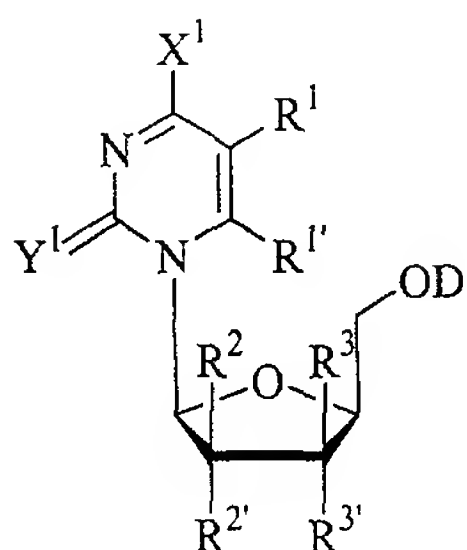
each R² and R^{2'} independently is hydrogen or halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), OH, SH, OCH₃,
SCH₃, NH₂, NHCH₃, CH=CH₂, CN, CH₂NH₂, CH₂OH, CO₂H.

each R³ and R^{3'} independently is hydrogen or halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), OH, SH, OCH₃,
SCH₃, NH₂, NHCH₃, CH₃, C₂H₅, CH=CH₂, CN, CH₂NH₂, CH₂OH, CO₂H.

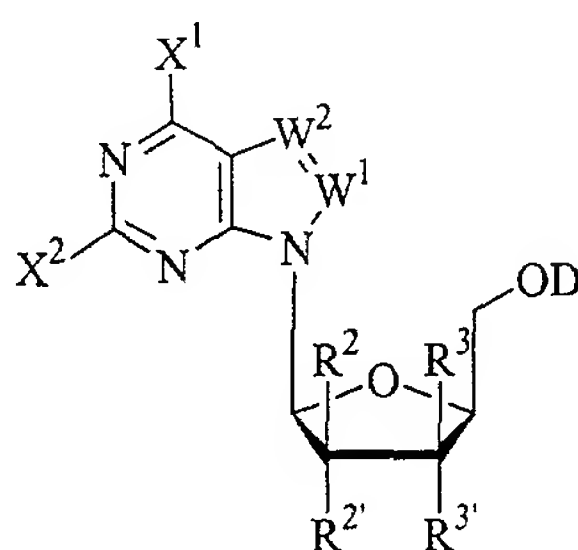
each R⁴, R^{4'}, R^{4''}, R⁵, R^{5'} and R^{5''} independently is hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower
alkenyl, aryl, or arylalkyl such as unsubstituted or substituted phenyl or benzyl;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (I) or (II), at least one of R² and
R^{2'} is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R^{3'} is hydrogen.

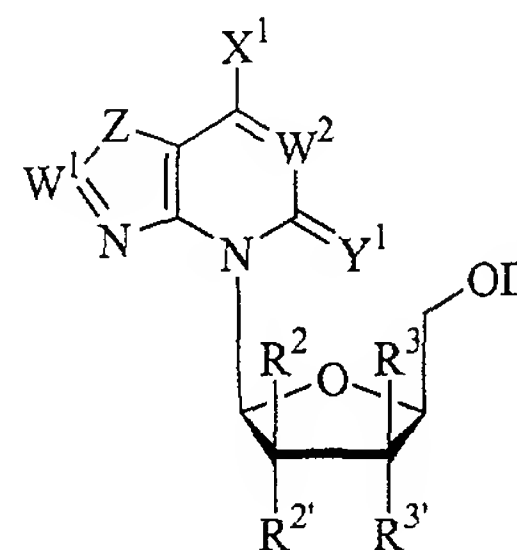
In another embodiment of the invention, anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -L nucleoside of the general formula (III) or (IV):



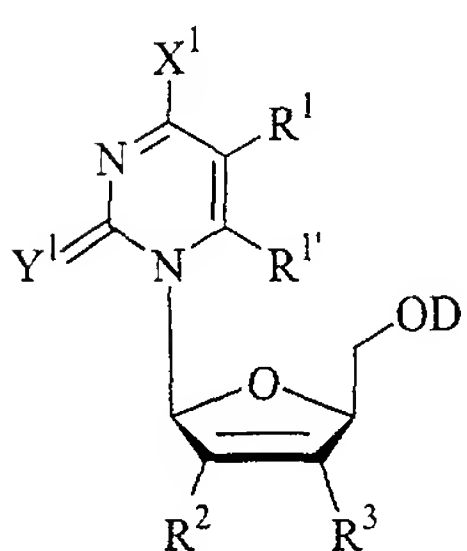
[III-a]



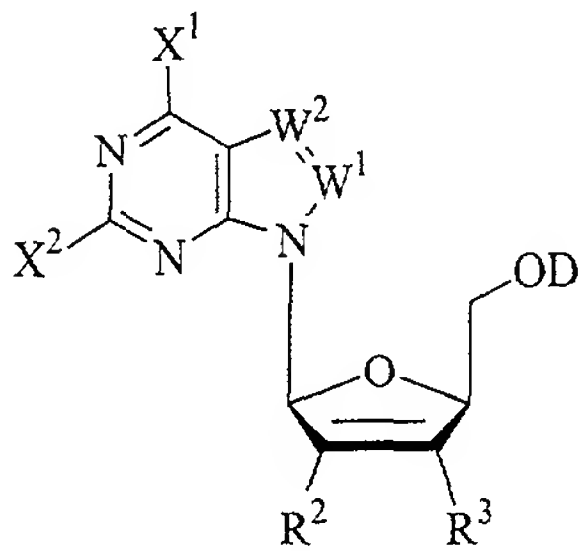
[III-b]



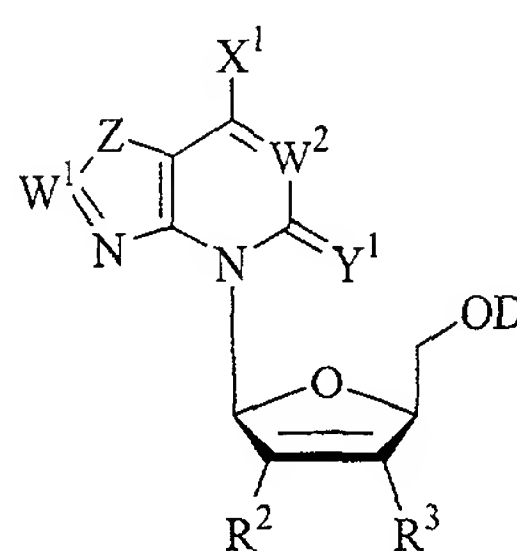
[III-c]



[IV-a]



[IV-b]



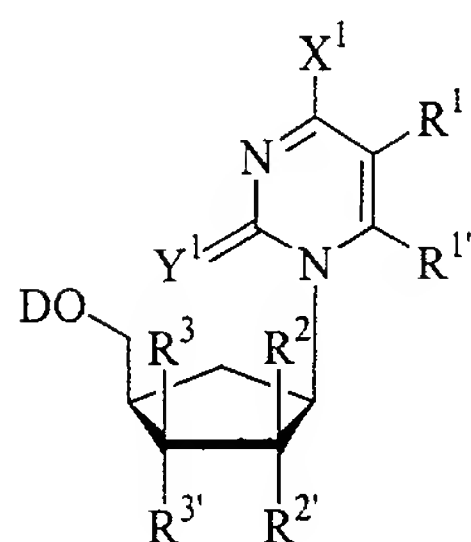
[IV-c]

5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

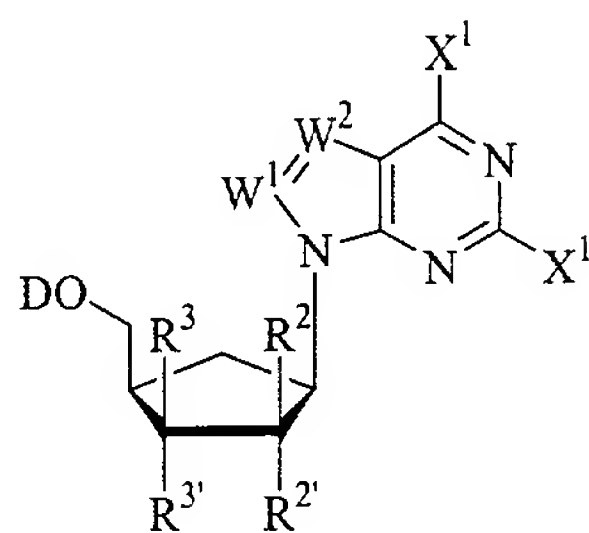
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R¹', R², R²', R³ and R³' is the same as defined previously;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (III) or (IV), at least one of R² and R²' is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R³' is hydrogen.

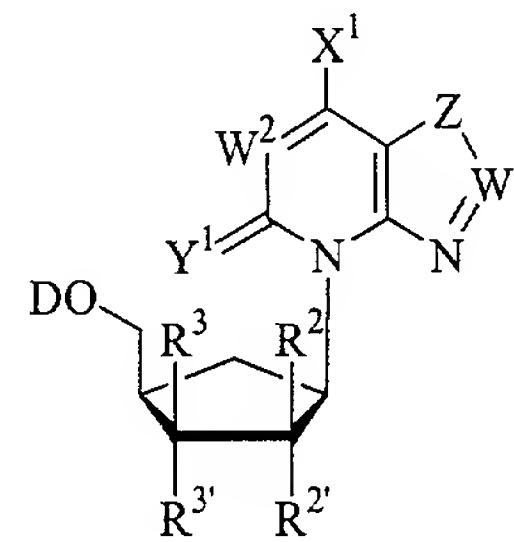
In one embodiment of the invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -D-carba-sugar nucleoside of the general formula (V) to (VII):



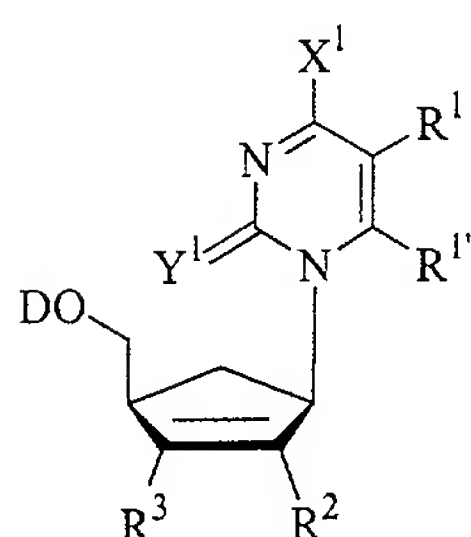
[V-a]



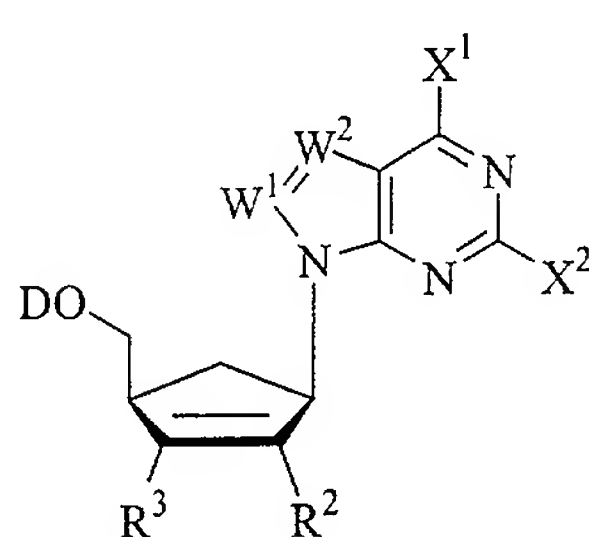
[V-b]



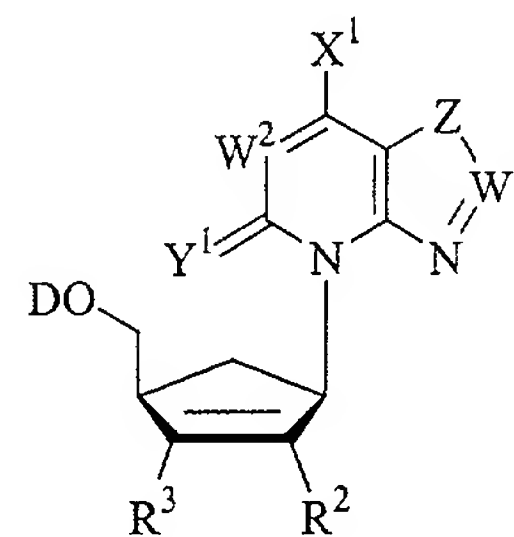
[V-c]



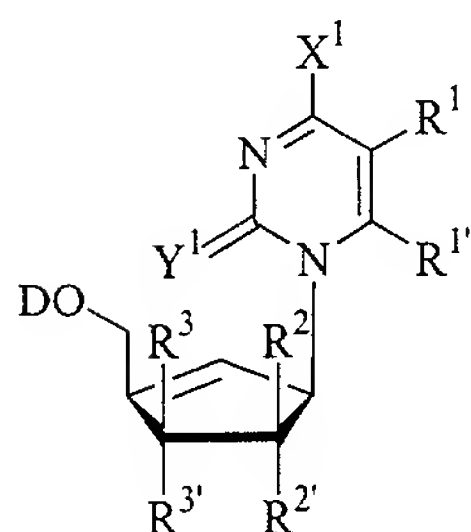
[VI-a]



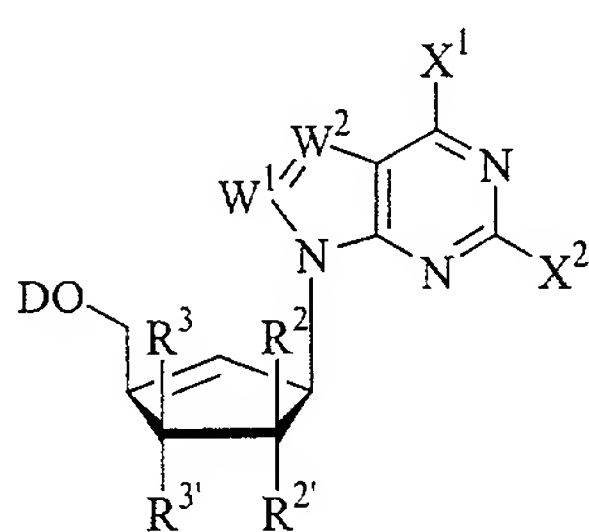
[VI-b]



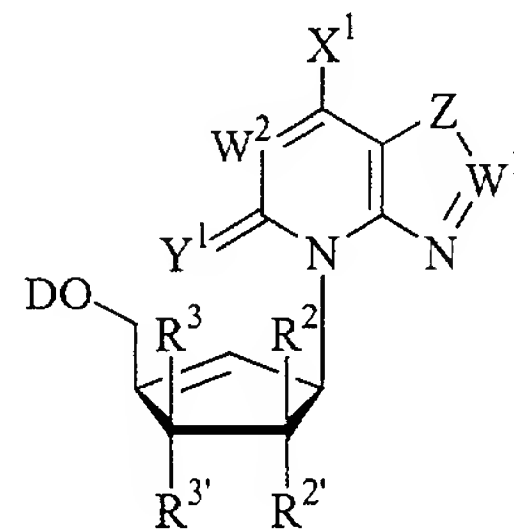
[VI-c]



[VII-a]



[VII-b]



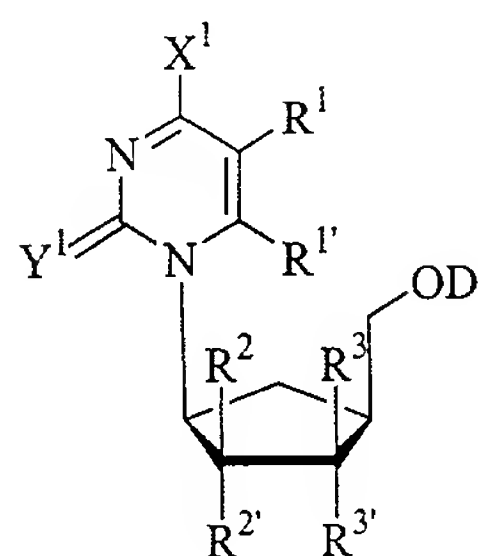
[VII-c]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

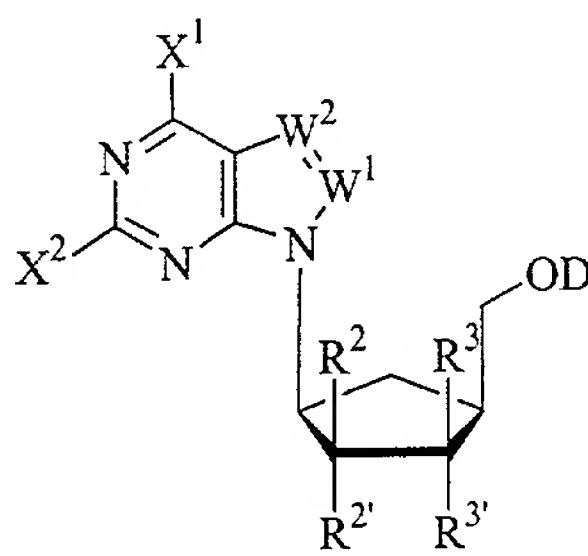
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (V) or (VI), at least one of R² and R^{2'} is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R^{3'} is hydrogen.

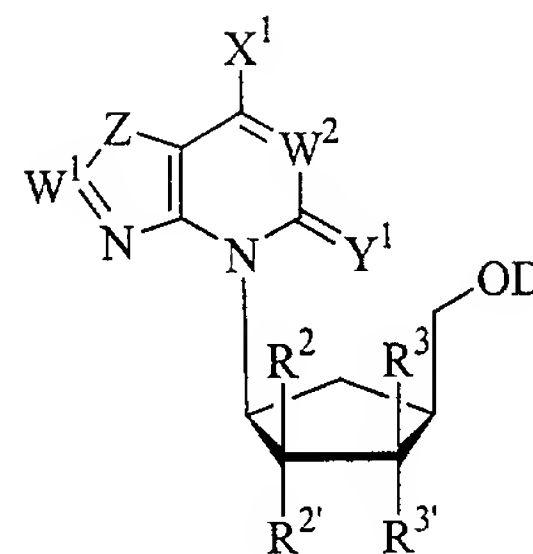
In one embodiment, anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -L-carba-sugar nucleoside of the general formula (VIII) to (X):



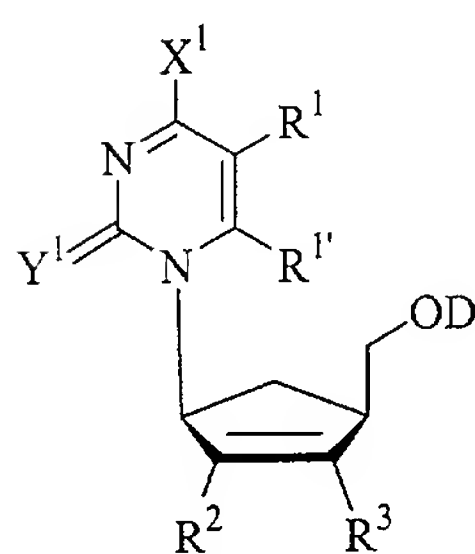
[VIII-a]



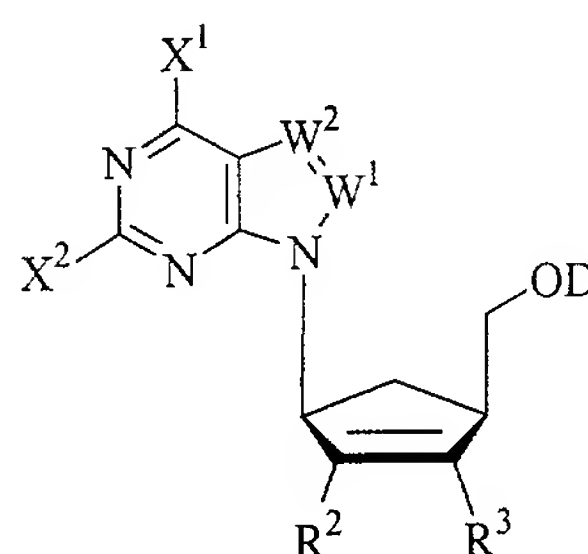
[VIII-b]



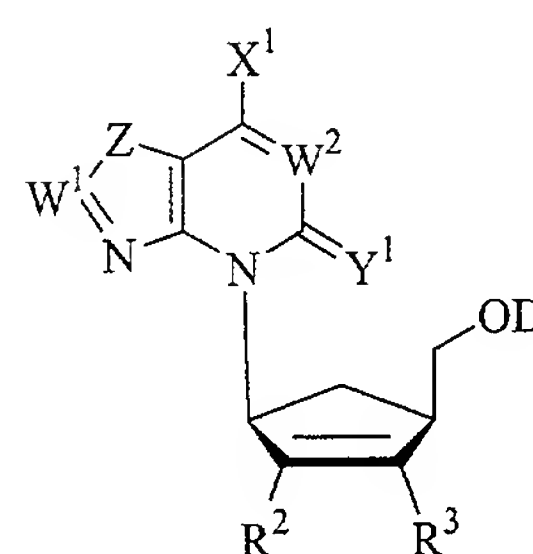
[VIII-c]



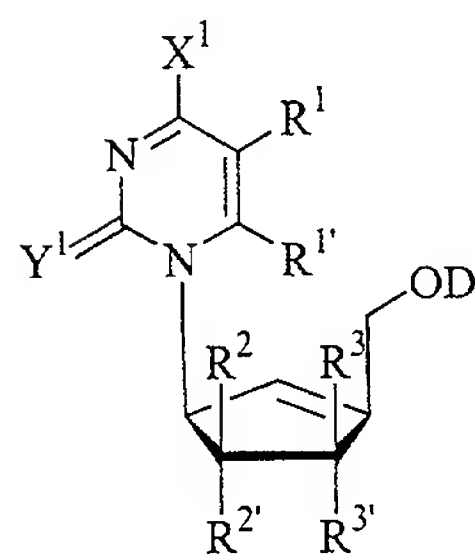
[IX-a]



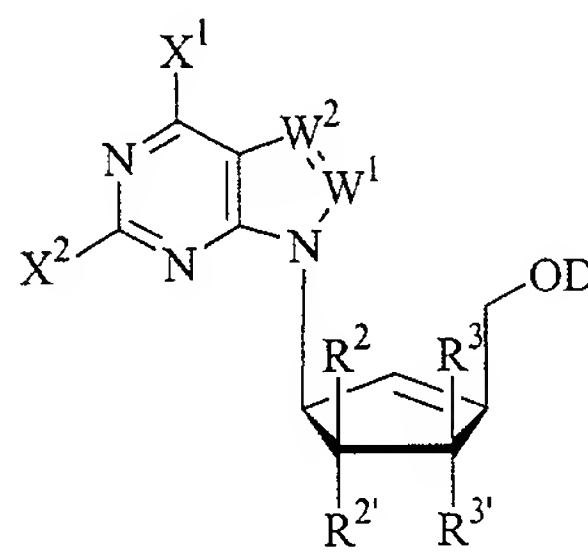
[IX-b]



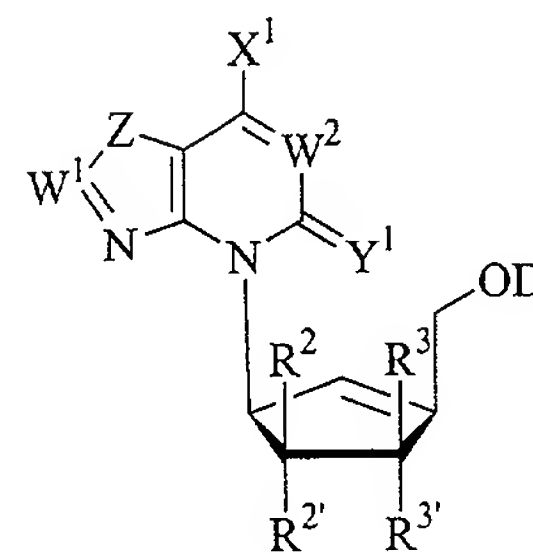
[IX-c]



[X-a]



[X-b]



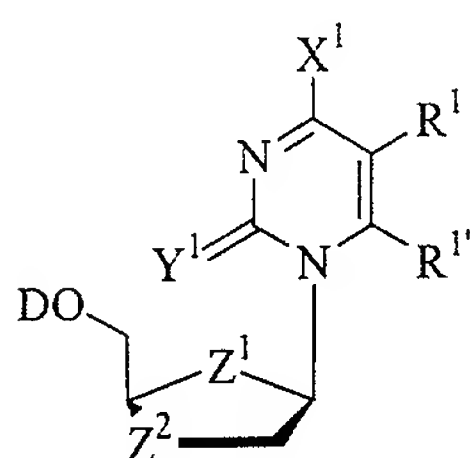
[X-c]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

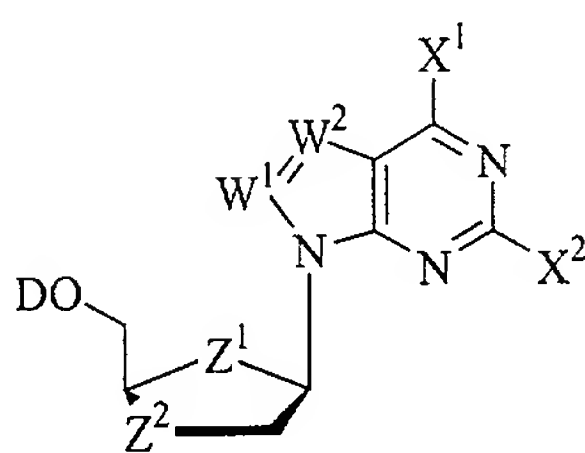
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R¹', R², R²', R³ and R³' is the same as defined previously;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (VIII) or (IX), at least one of R² and R²' is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R³' is hydrogen.

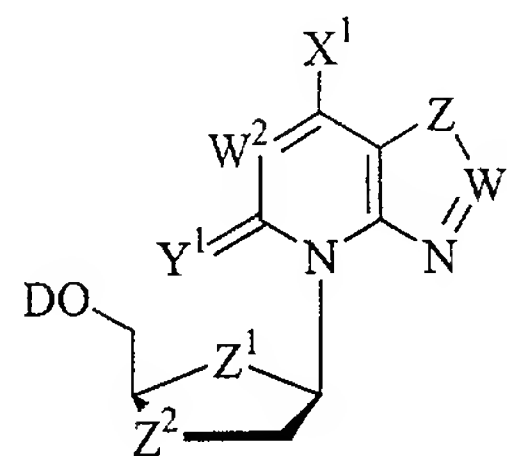
In further embodiment of the invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L-nucleoside is of the general formula (XI) or (XII), respectively:



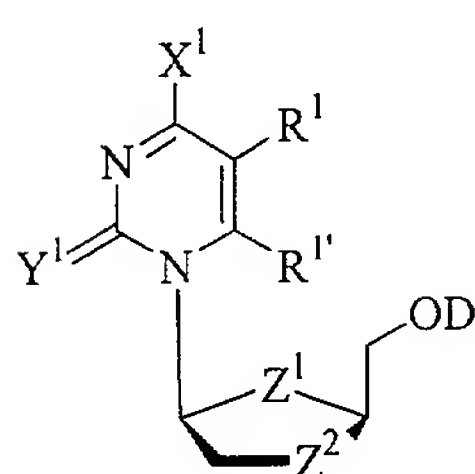
[XI-a]



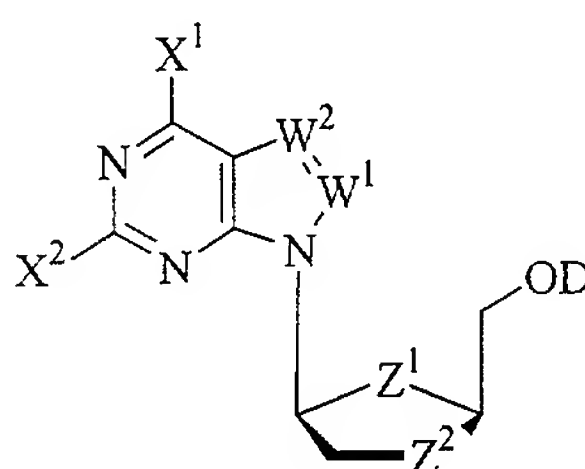
[XI-b]



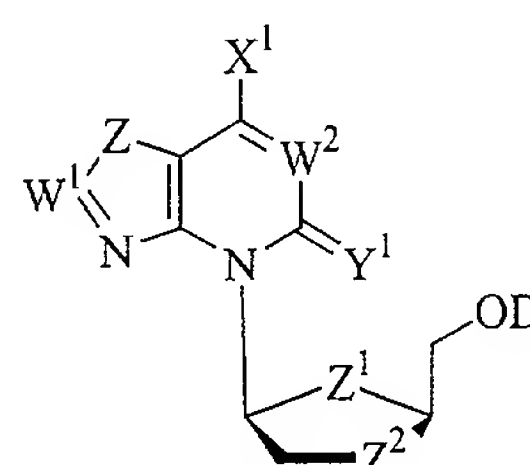
[XI-c]



[XII-a]



[XII-b]



[XII-c]

5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

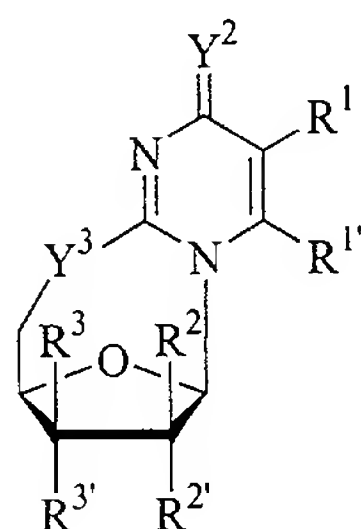
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R¹', R², R²', R³ and R³' is the same as defined previously;

each Z¹ and Z² independently is O, S, NR⁶ or Se;

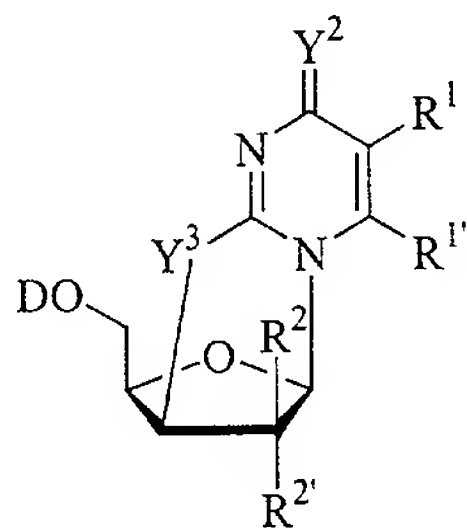
each R⁶ is hydrogen, lower alkyl or lower acyl.

10

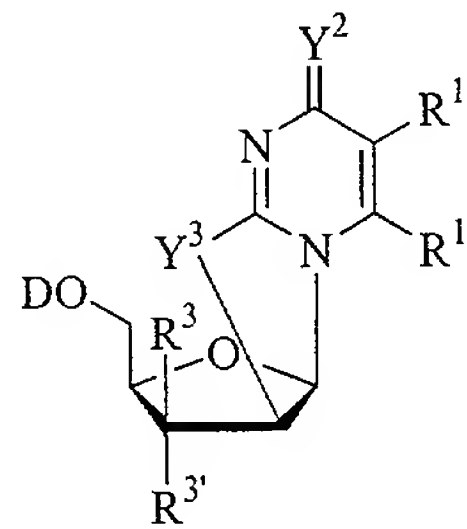
In a further embodiment of this invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L-nucleoside, though preferably β -D, is of the general formula (XIII):



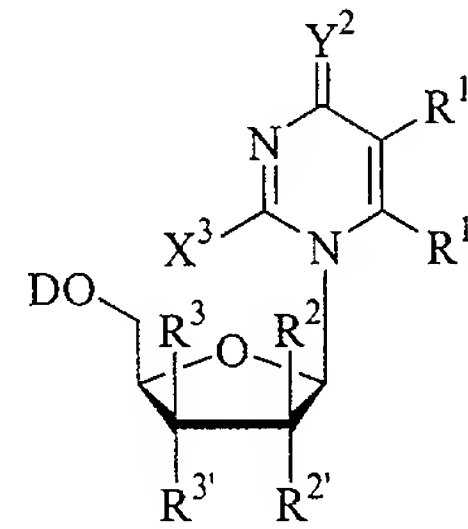
[XIII-a]



[XIII-b]



[XIII-c]



[XIII-d]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

each Y² is O, S, NH or NR⁷;

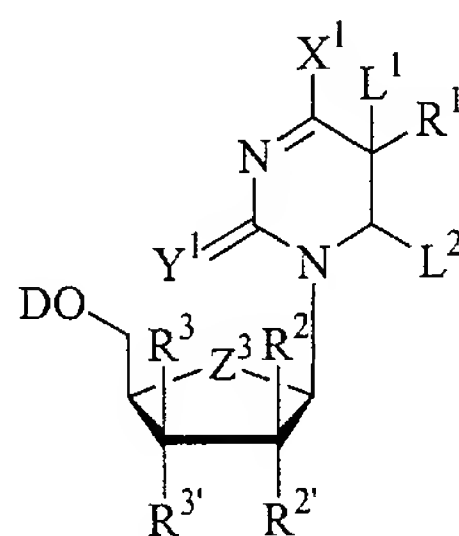
each Y³ is O, S, NH or NR⁸;

5 each X³ is OR⁹ or SR⁹; and

each R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ is hydrogen, lower alkyl of C₁-C₆, arylalkyl or aryl;

such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (XIII-d), at least one of R² and R^{2'} is hydrogen and at least one of R³ and R^{3'} is hydrogen.

10 In another embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective is a β-D or β-L-nucleoside, though preferably β-D, resulting from the addition of a small molecule, such as alkyl hypochlorite, alkyl hypobromite, hypobromous acid or acyl halide to an appropriate pyrimidine nucleoside, forming a nucleoside of the formula (XIV):



[XIV]

15 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, X¹, Y¹, Z¹, R¹, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

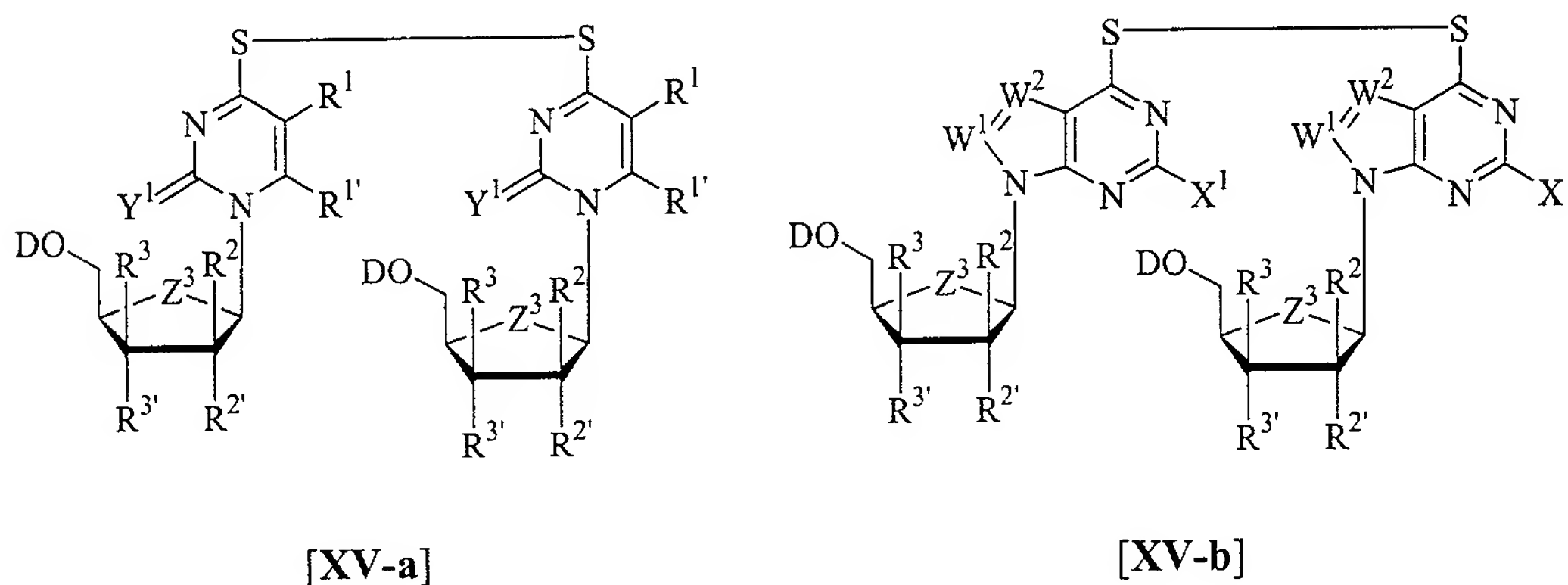
each L¹ is hydrogen, Cl or Br;

each L² is OH, OCH₃, OC₂H₅, OC₃H₇, OCF₃, OAc or OBz;

each Z³ can be O or CH₂.

20

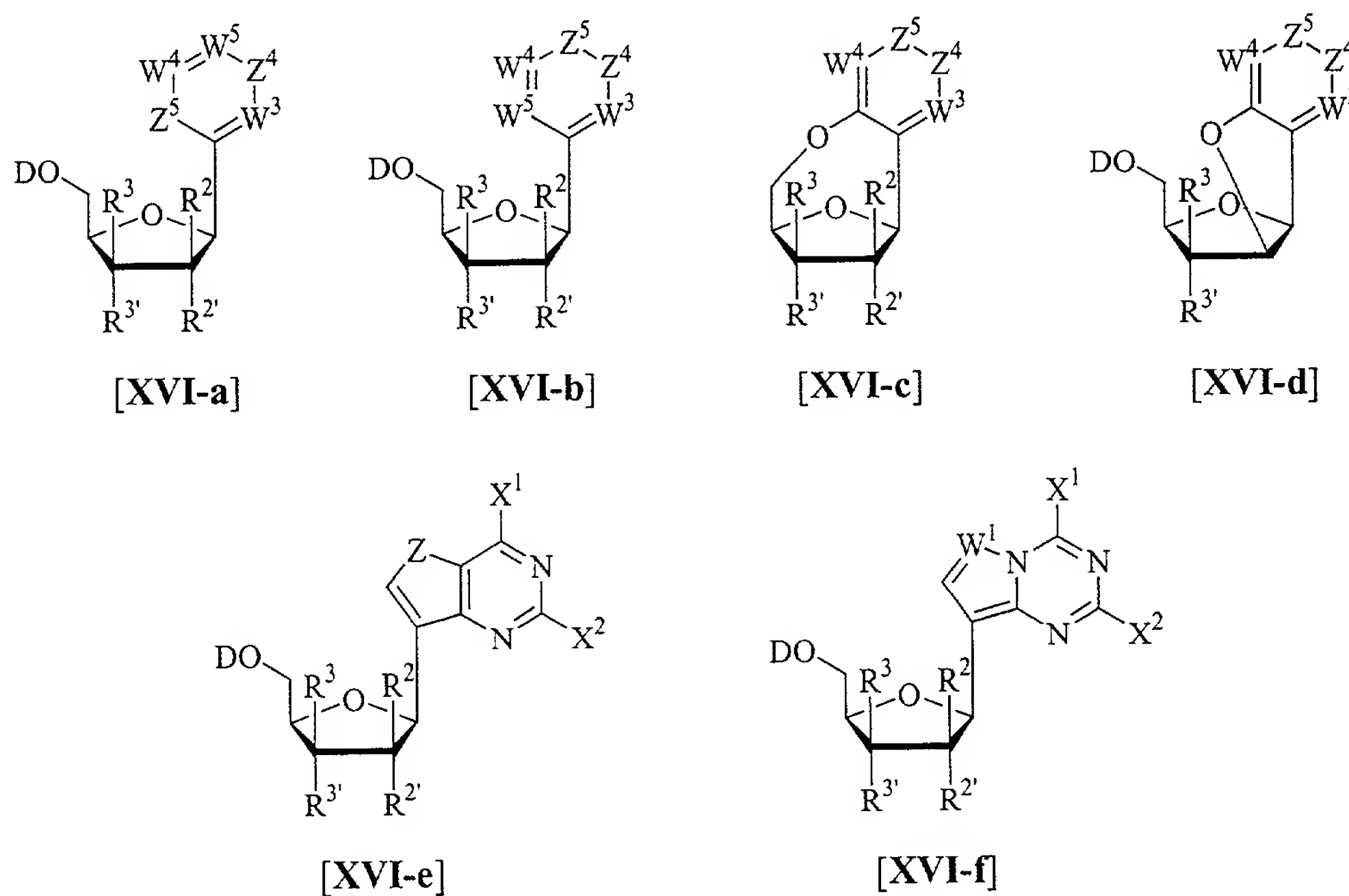
In another embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a dimeric nucleoside (each nucleoside being in either the β -D or β -L configuration) of general formula (XV), in which the two nucleosides are linked through a disulfide bond:



5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, W¹, W², X¹, Y¹, Z³, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously.

In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β -D or β -L C-nucleoside of the general formula (XVI):



or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, W¹, X¹, X², Y¹, Z, R¹, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

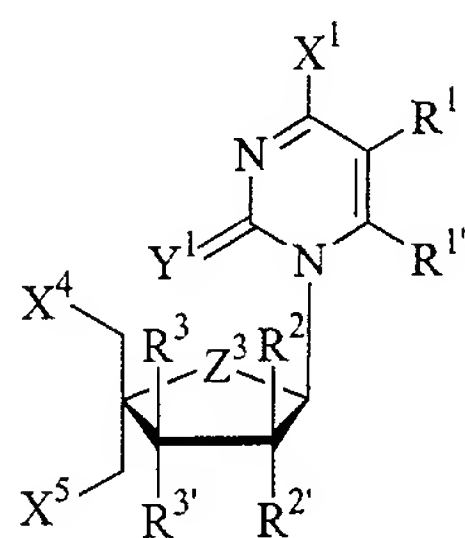
each W³ is independently N, CH or CR¹;

each W⁴ and W⁵ is independently N, CH, CX¹ or CR^{1'}; and

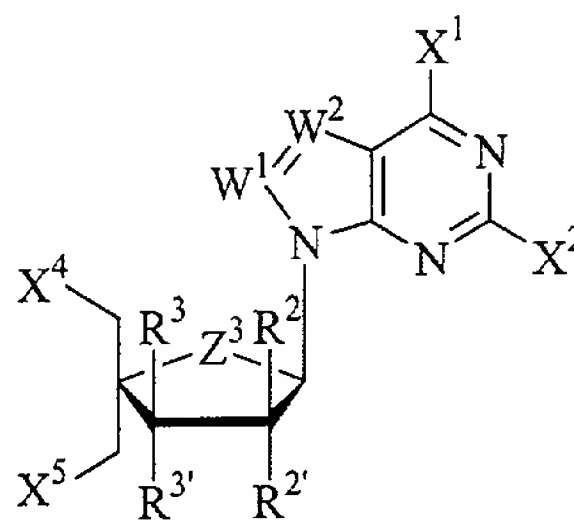
each Z⁴ and Z⁵ is independently NH or C(=Y¹);

- 5 such that if Z⁴ and Z⁵ are covalently bound, then Z⁴ is not C(=Y¹) when Z⁵ is C(=Y¹); and
there are no more than three ring-nitrogens.

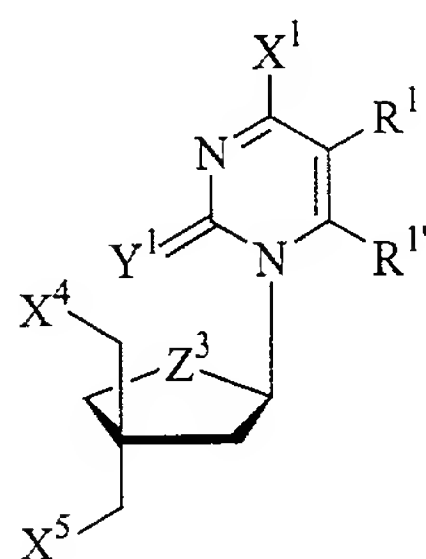
In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a β-D or β-L-branched-chain sugar nucleoside of the general formula (XVII):



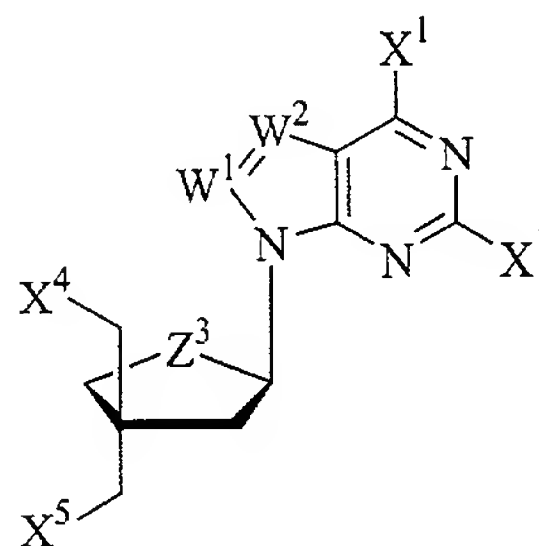
[XVII-a]



[XVII-b]



[XVII-c]



[XVII-d]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

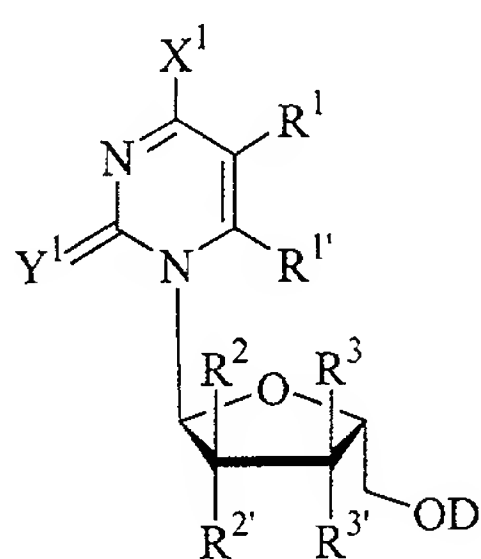
each D, W¹, W², X¹, X², Y¹, Z³, R¹, R^{1'}, R², R^{2'}, R³ and R^{3'} is the same as defined previously;

each X^4 and X^5 is independently hydrogen, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I), N_3 , NH_2 , NHR^8 , NR^8R^8 , OH, OR^8 , SH or SR^8 ; and

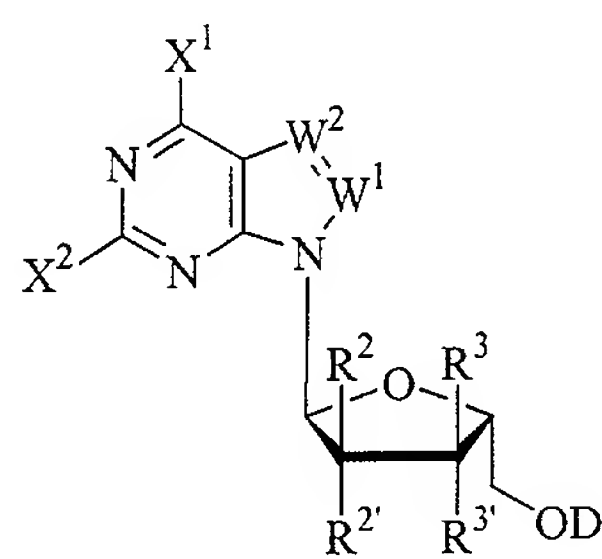
each R^8 and R^8 is independently hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, aryl or arylalkyl, such as an unsubstituted or substituted phenyl or benzyl;

- 5 such that for each nucleoside of the general formula (XVII-a) or (XVII-b), X^4 is not OH or OR^8 .

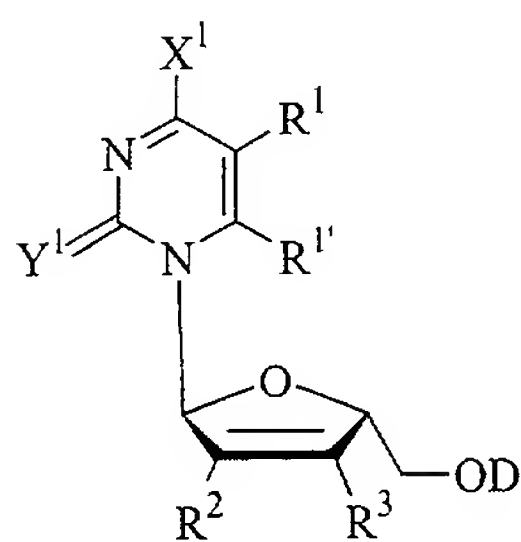
In one embodiment, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective nucleoside is a α -D or α -L-nucleoside of the general formula (XVIII):



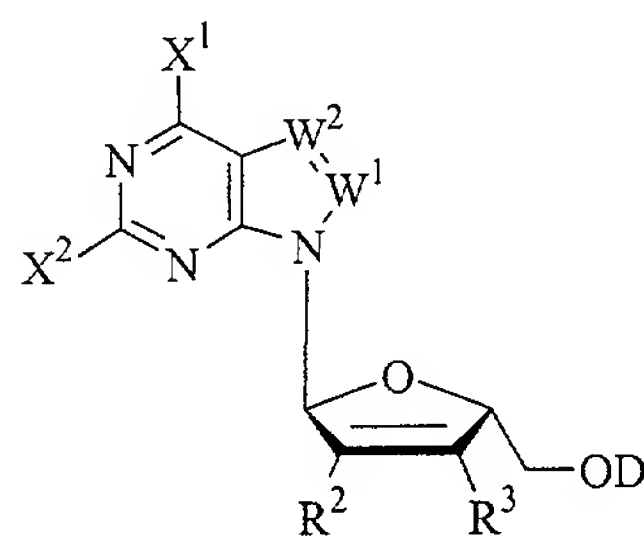
[XVIII-a]



[XVIII-b]



[XVIII-c]

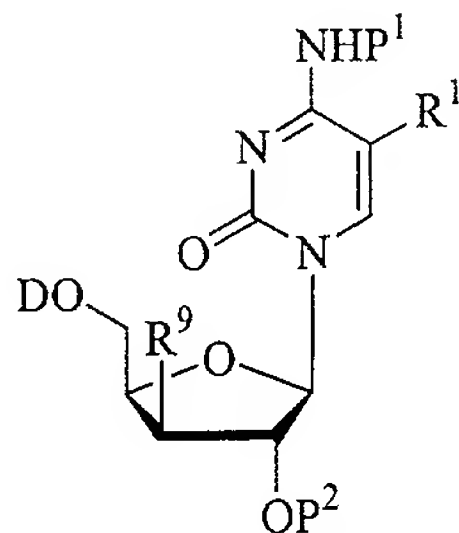


[XVIII-d]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, W^1 , W^2 , X^1 , X^2 , Y^1 , R^1 , $R^{1'}$, R^2 , $R^{2'}$, R^3 and $R^{3'}$ is the same as defined previously;

In a sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XIX):



[XIX]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

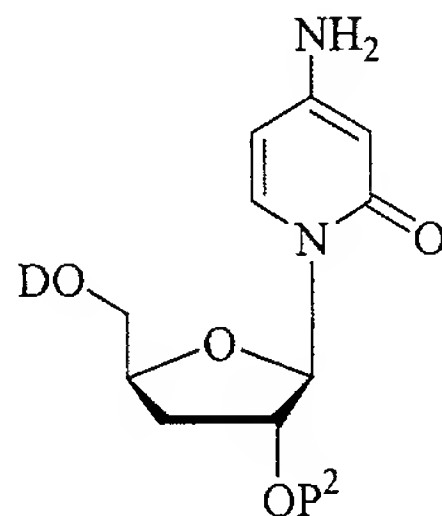
5 each D, R¹, R⁴ and R⁴' is the same as defined previously;

each R⁹ is hydrogen, halogen (F, Cl, Br or I) or OP³;

each P¹ is hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, aryl, arylalkyl (such as an unsubstituted or substituted phenyl or benzyl), OH, OR⁴, NH₂, NHR⁴ or NR⁴R⁴'; and

10 each P² and P³ is independently hydrogen, alkyl, acyl, -Ms, -Ts, monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, mono-phosphate ester, diphosphate ester, triphosphate ester, phospholipid or amino acid, though preferably hydrogen.

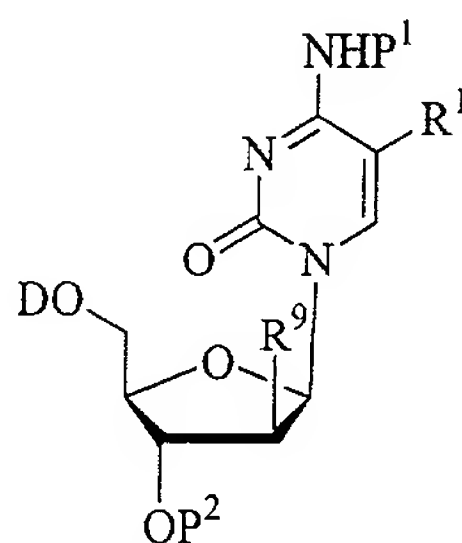
In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside of the formula (XIX) is the following:



15 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D and P² is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D and P² are independently hydrogen.

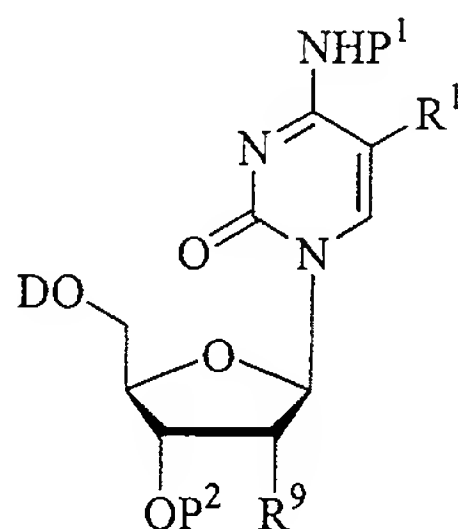
In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XX):



[XX]

5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:
each D, P¹, P², P³, R¹, R⁴, R⁴' and R⁹ is the same as defined previously.

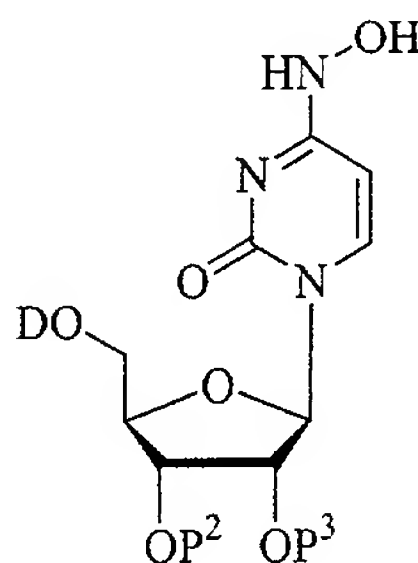
In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XXI):



[XXI]

10 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:
each D, P¹, P², P³, R¹, R⁴ and R⁴' is the same as defined previously.

In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside of the formula (XXI) is the following:

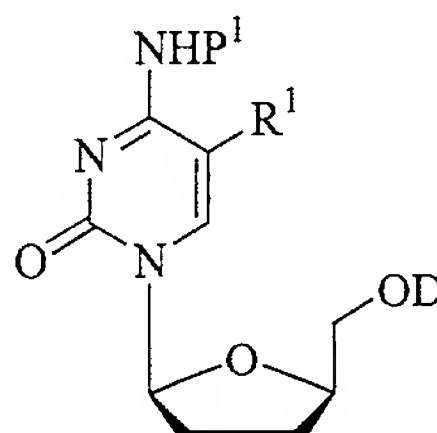


or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

- 5 each D, P² and P³ is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D, P² and P³ are independently hydrogen.

In another embodiment, N-hydroxycytosine is used as the base attached to any of the sugar or carba-sugar moieties described in this application, as if each were fully described a separate specific embodiment.

- 10 In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XXII):

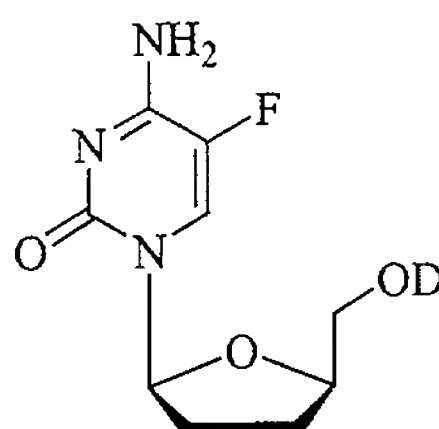


[XXII]

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

- 15 each D, P¹ and R¹ is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D and P² are independently hydrogen.

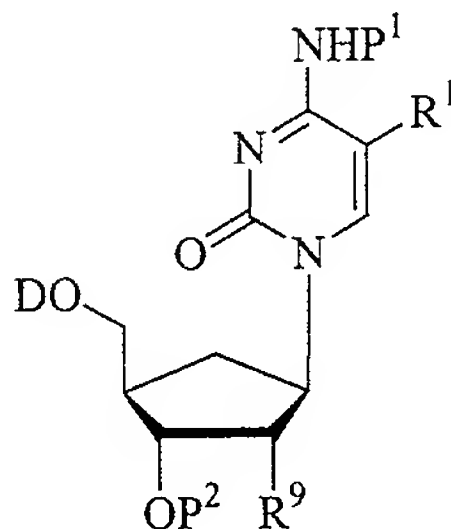
In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside, though preferably β -L, of the formula (XXII) is the following:



5 or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

D is the same as defined previously, and preferably H.

In another sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside is of the formula (XXIII):



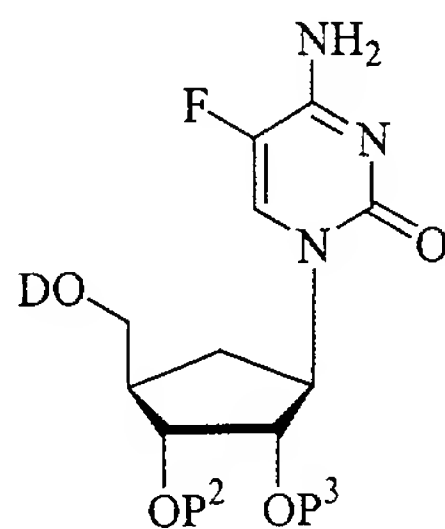
[XXIII]

10

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

each D, P¹, P², P³, R¹, R⁴ and R^{4'} is the same as defined previously.

In a particular sub-embodiment of the present invention, the anti-virally or anti-proliferatively effective β -D or β -L nucleoside of the formula (XXIII) is the following:

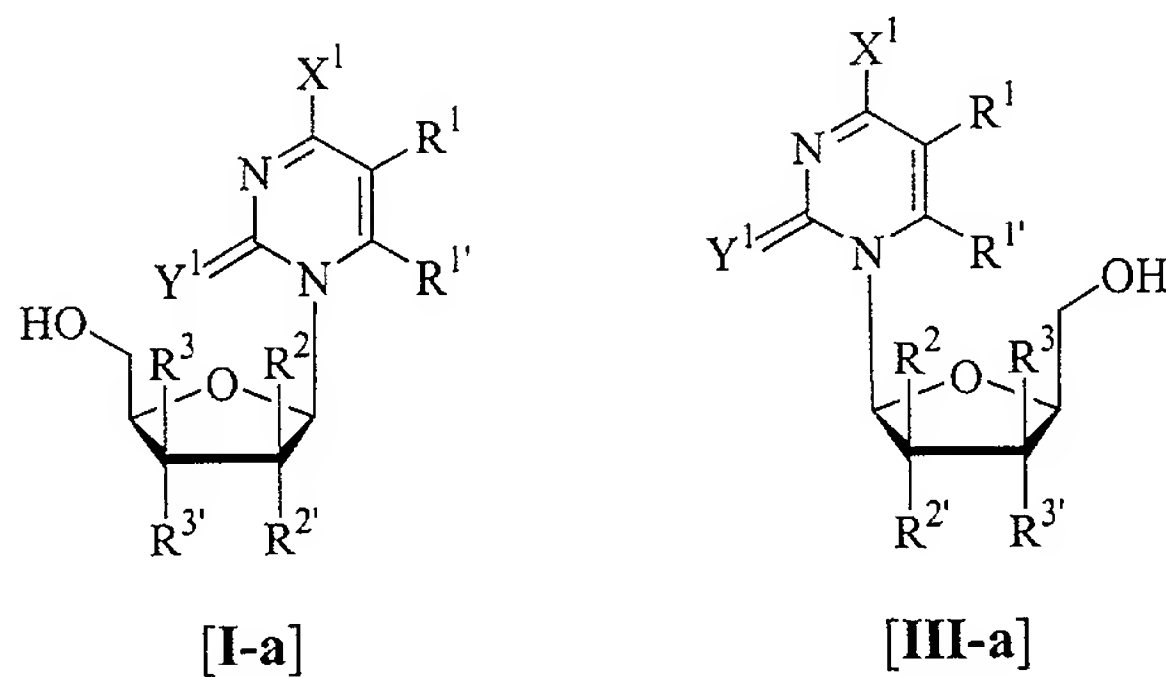


or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein:

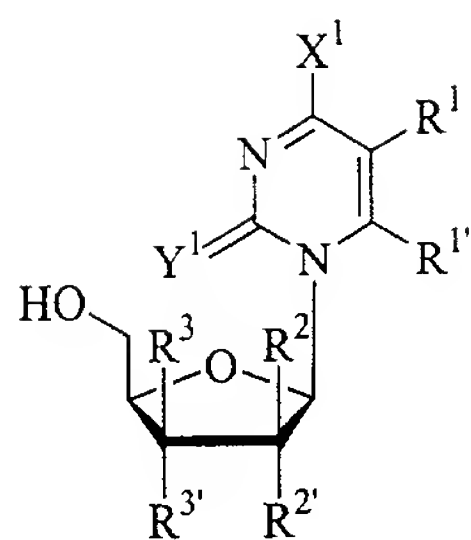
- 5 each D, P² and P³ is the same as defined previously. In a preferred embodiment, D, P² and P³ are independently hydrogen.

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D and β -L nucleosides of general formula (I-a) and (III-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 1.

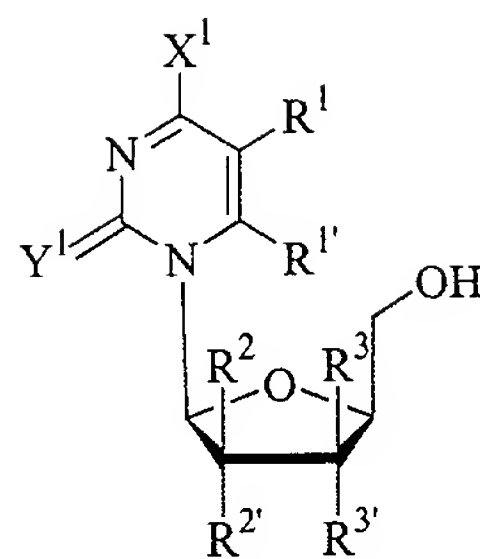
Table 1



ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
AA	NH ₂	O	H	H	OH	H	H	OH
AB	NH ₂	O	H	H	OH	H	H	I
AC	NH ₂	O	H	H	OH	H	H	Cl
AD	NH ₂	O	H	H	OH	H	H	Br
AE	NH ₂	O	H	H	OH	H	H	S-CN

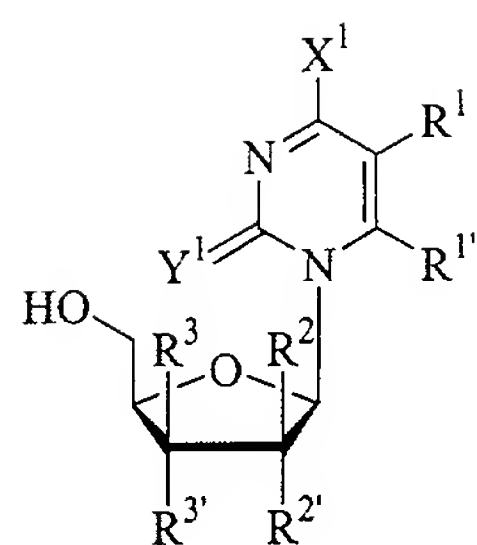


[I-a]

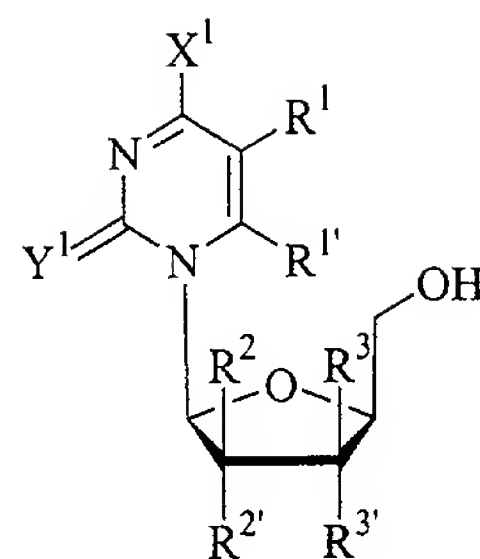


[III-a]

ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
AF	NH ₂	O	H	H	OH	H	H	N ₃
AG	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	Cl	H	OH
AH	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	Br	H	OH
AI	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	OH	Br	H
AJ	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	OH	H	H
AK	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	OH	O-Ms	H
AL	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	OH	O-Ts	H
AM	NH ₂	O	H	H	O-Ms	H	H	OH
AN	NH ₂	O	H	H	Cl	H	H	OH
AO	NH ₂	O	D	D	OH	H	H	OH
AP	NH ₂	O	F	H	OH	H	H	OH
AQ	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH
AR	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	H	H
AS	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	Cl	H
AT	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	Br	H
AU	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	Cl	H	OH
AV	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	O-Ts	H
AW	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	O-Ms	H
AX	NH ₂	O	Cl	H	H	OH	O-Ms	H

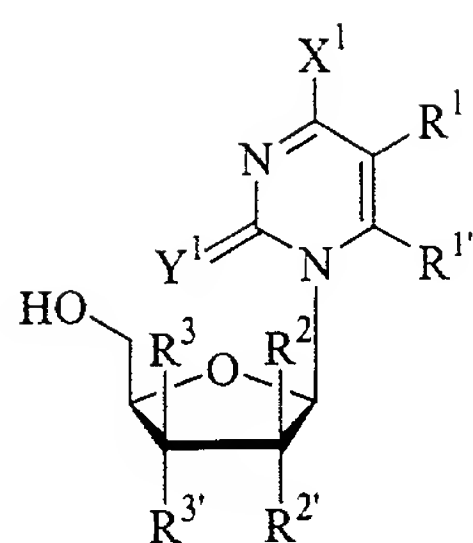


[I-a]

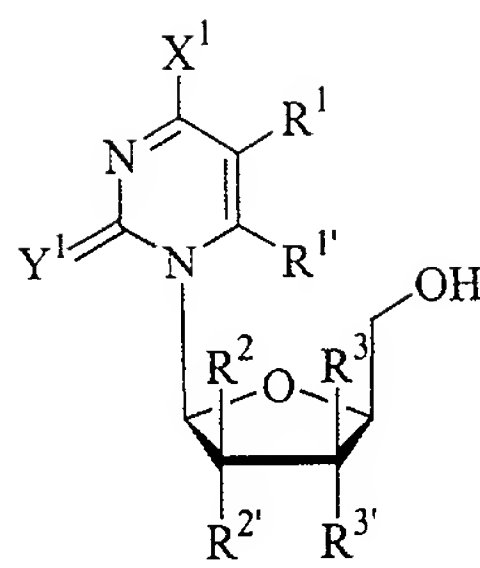


[III-a]

ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
AY	NH ₂	O	Br	H	H	OH	O-Ms	H
AZ	NH ₂	O	Br	H	H	OH	O-Ts	H
BA	NH ₂	O	Br	H	H	OH	Cl	H
BB	NH ₂	O	Br	H	H	OH	H	OH
BC	NH ₂	O	Br	H	OH	H	H	OH
BD	NH ₂	O	I	H	H	OH	O-Ms	H
BE	NH ₂	O	I	H	H	OH	Br	H
BF	NH ₂	O	I	H	H	OH	O-Ts	H
BG	NH ₂	O	I	H	H	Cl	H	OH
BH	NH ₂	O	I	H	Br	H	H	OH
BI	NH ₂	O	OH	H	OH	H	H	OH
BJ	NH ₂	O	NH ₂	H	H	OH	H	OH
BK	NH ₂	O	CH ₃	H	H	OH	Cl	H
BL	NH ₂	NH	H	H	OH	H	H	OH
BM	NH ₂	S	H	H	H	Se-phenyl	H	H
BN	NH-(2-Ph-Et)	O	H	H	OH	H	H	OH
BO	NH-COCH ₃	O	H	H	OH	H	H	OH
BP	NH-NH ₂	O	H	H	OH	H	H	OH
BQ	NH-NH ₂	O	F	H	OH	H	H	OH

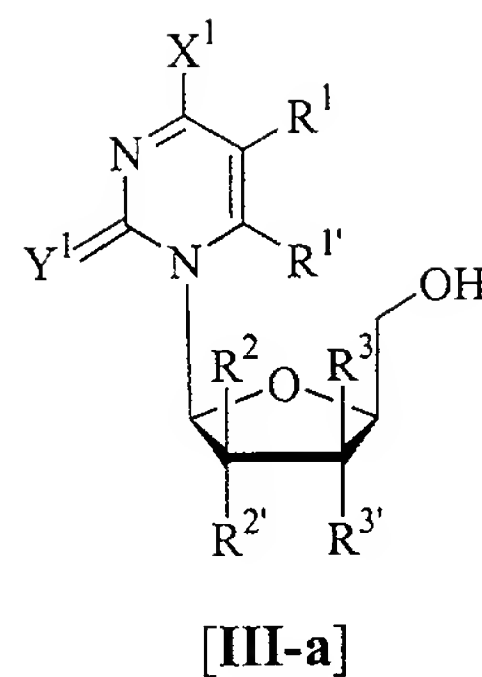
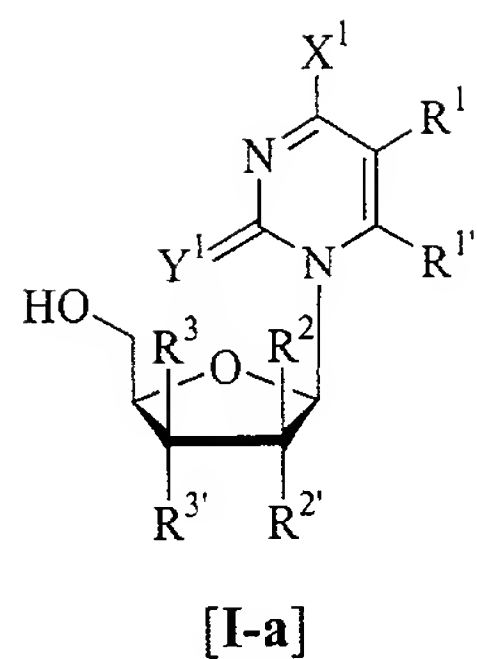


[I-a]



[III-a]

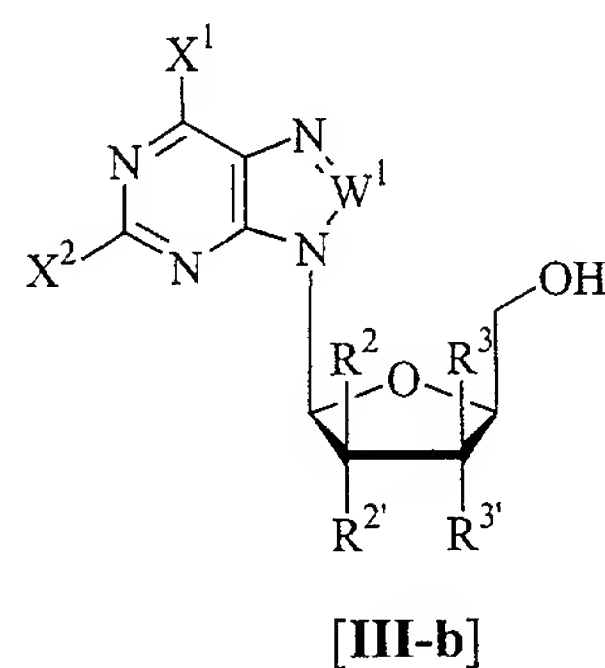
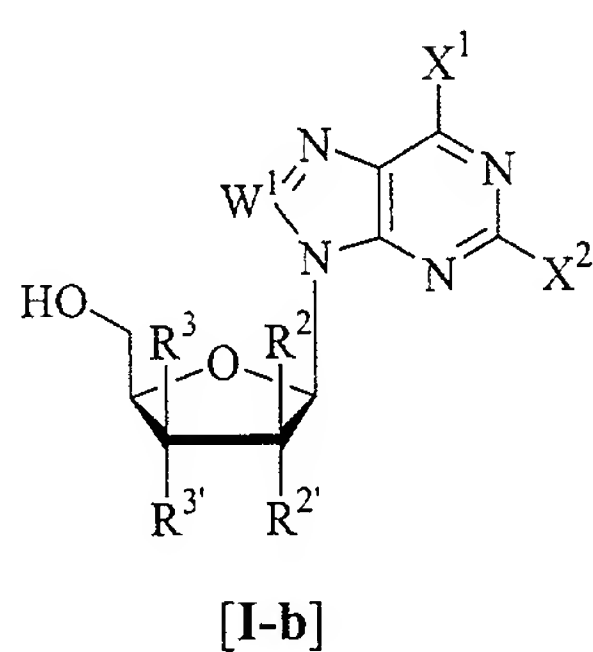
ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
BR	NH-NH ₂	O	CH ₃	H	H	OH	H	OH
BS	NH-OH	O	H	H	H	OH	H	OH
BT	NH-OH	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH
BU	NH-OH	O	Br	H	H	OH	H	OH
BV	NH-OH	O	I	H	H	OH	H	OH
BW	NH-OH	O	H	H	OH	H	H	OH
BX	OH	O	OH	H	OH	H	H	OH
BY	OH	O	NH ₂	H	H	OH	H	OH
BZ	OH	O	F	H	OH	H	H	OH
CA	OH	O	F	H	H	O-Ts	H	OH
CB	OH	O	F	H	H	O-Ms	H	O-Ms
CC	OH	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH
CD	OH	O	F	H	H	OH	H	O-Ts
CE	OH	O	F	H	H	H	H	OH
CF	O-Et	O	H	H	H	O-Bz	H	O-Bz
CG	S-CH ₃	O	H	H	H	F	H	OH
CH	SH	O	H	H	H	OH	H	OH
CI	SH	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH
CJ	N ₃	O	H	H	H	H	H	H



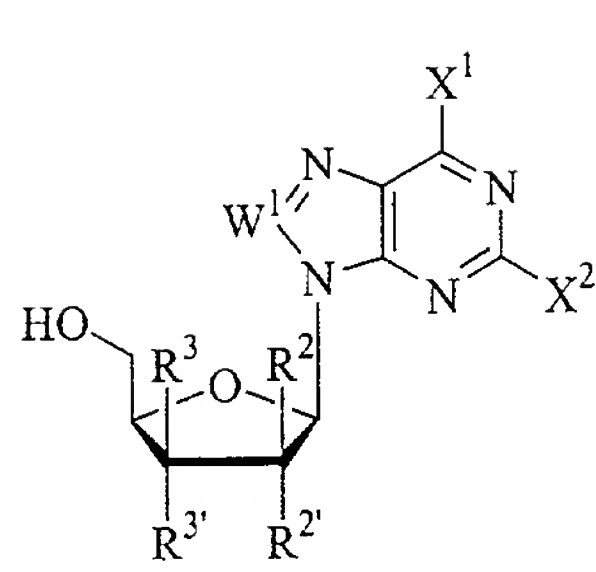
ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
CK	NH-(2-Ph-Et)	O	H	H	H	OH	H	OH
CL	OH	O	OH	H	H	OH	H	OH
CM	OH	O	H	H	H	OH	H	H

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D and β -L nucleosides of general formula (I-b) and (III-b) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 2.

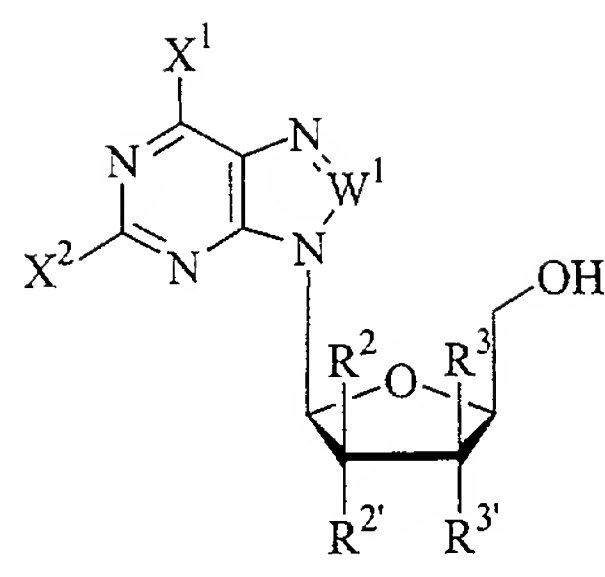
Table 2



ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
DA	OH	NH ₂	N	H	OH	H	OH
DB	OH	NH ₂	CH	F	H	H	OH
DC	NH-cyclohexyl	H	CH	H	H	H	H
DD	NH ₂	H	CH	H	OH	H	F
DE	NH ₂	H	CH	H	H	H	H



[I-b]

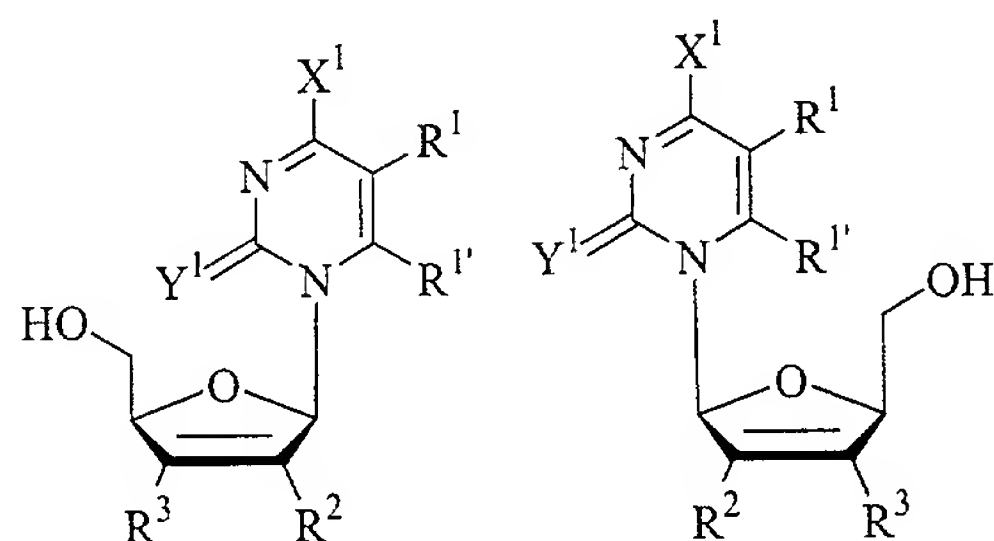


[III-b]

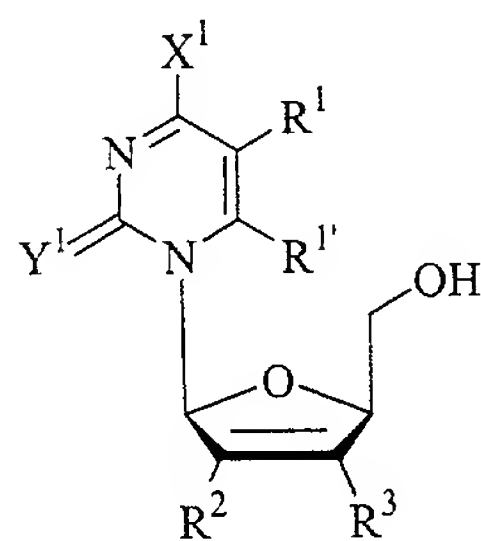
ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
DF	NH ₂	NH ₂	N	H	OH	H	OH
DG	NH ₂	NH ₂	CH	H	OH	H	OH
DH	Cl	H	CH	F	H	H	H
DI	Cl	I	CH	H	O-Ac	H	O-Ac
DJ	Cl	H	CH	H	OH	H	OH
DK	NH ₂	H	CH	H	OH	H	H
DL	Cl	H	CH	H	OH	H	H

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D and β -L nucleosides of general formula (II-a) and (IV-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 3.

Table 3

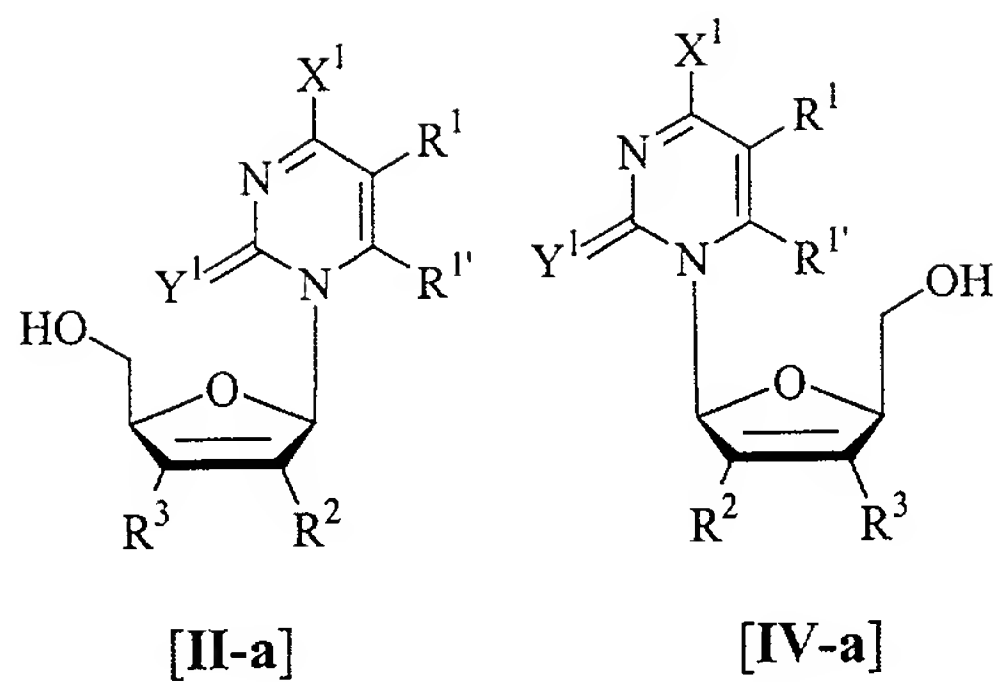


[II-a]



[IV-a]

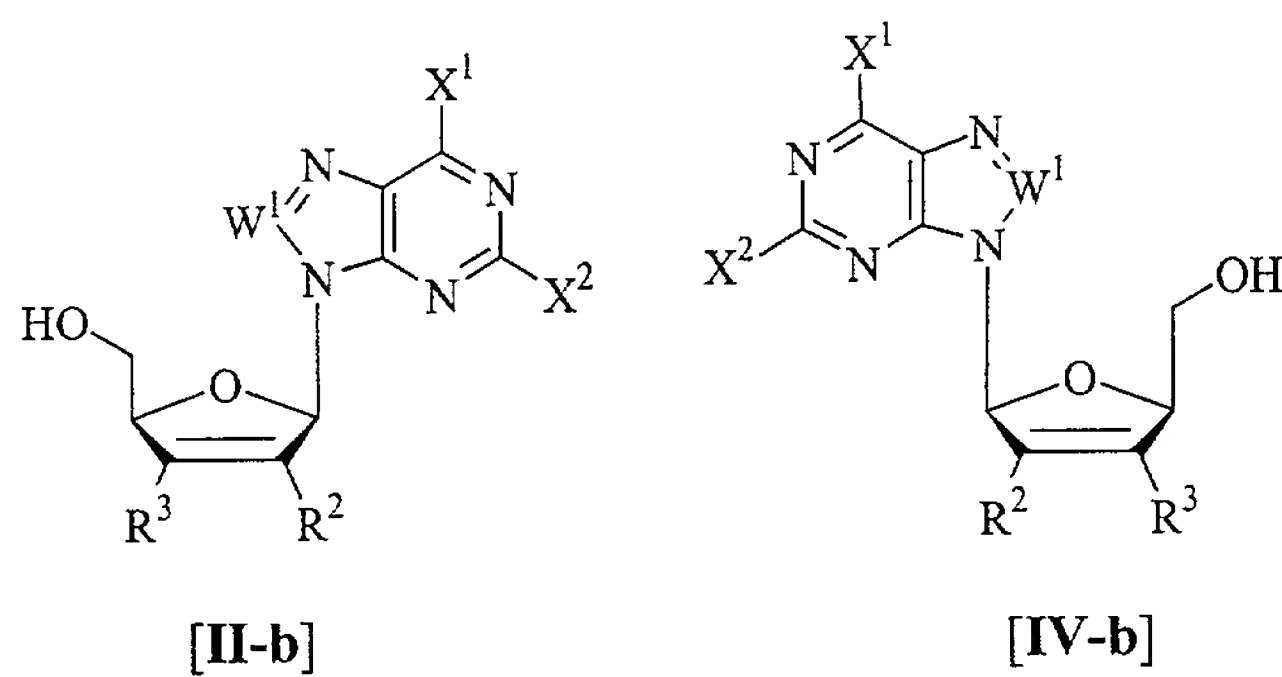
ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ³
EA	NH-Bz-(<i>m</i> -NO ₂)	O	F	H	H	H



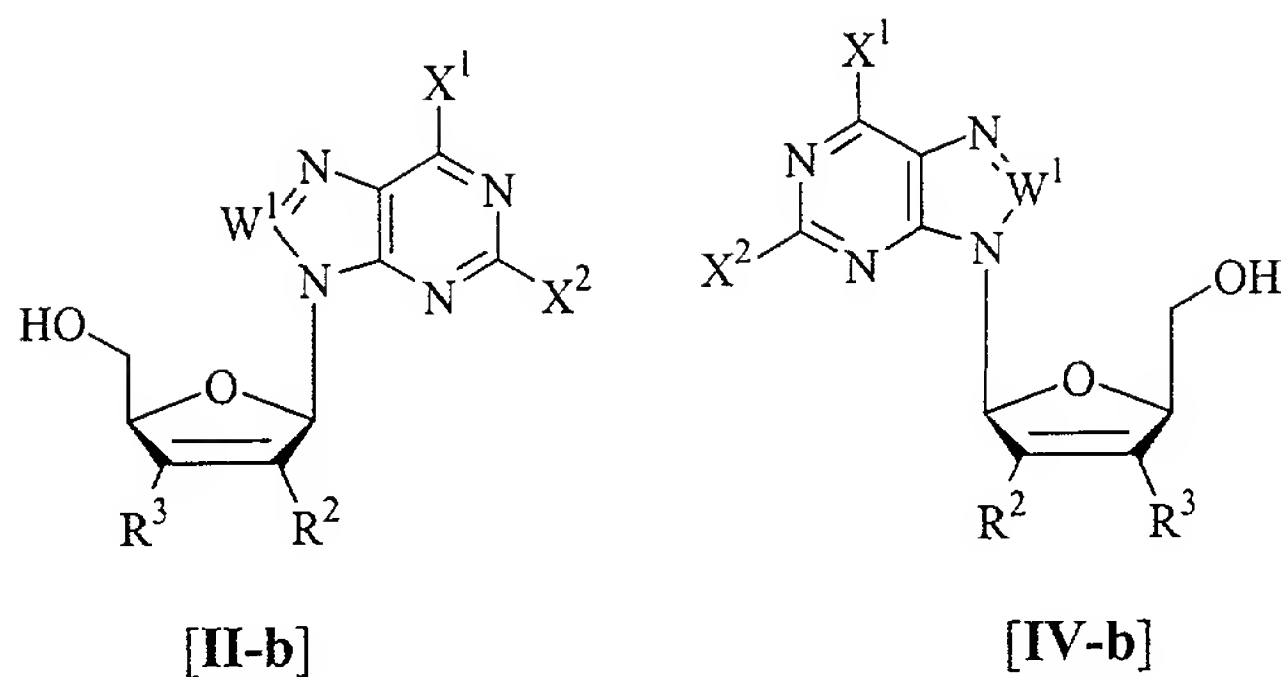
ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ³
EB	NH-Bz-(<i>o</i> -NO ₂)	O	F	H	H	H
EC	NH ₂	O	F	H	F	H

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D and β -L nucleosides of general formula (II-b) and (IV-b) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 4.

Table 4



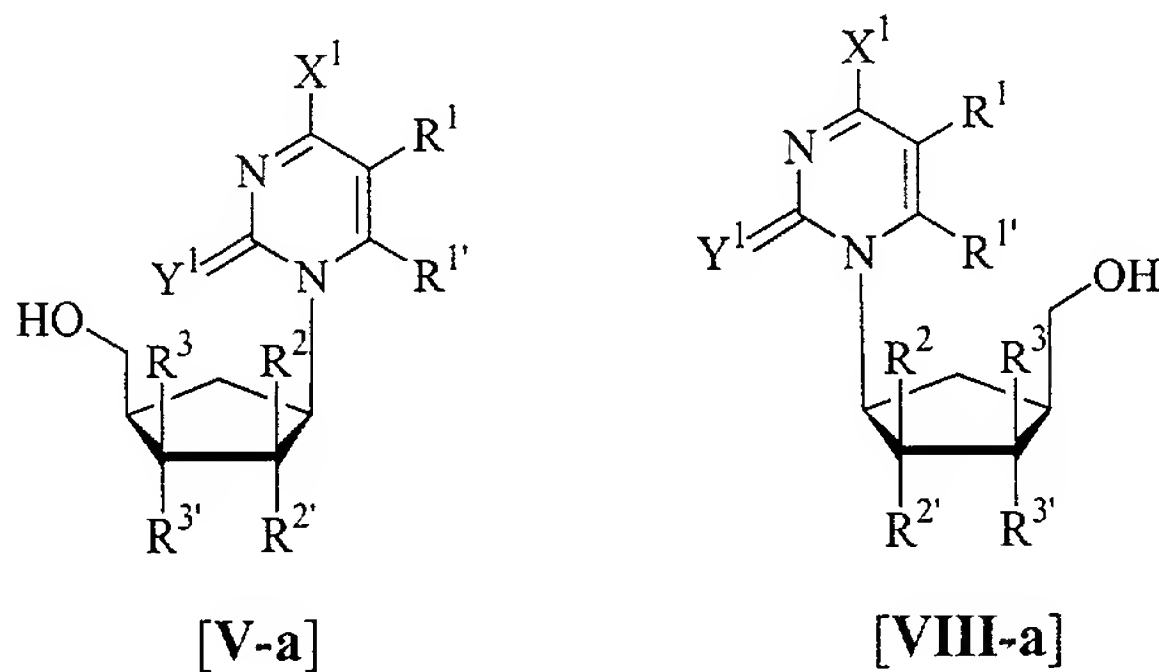
ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	R ²	R ³
FA	Cl	H	CH	F	H
FB	OH	H	CH	H	H
FC	NH ₂	F	CH	H	H
FD	NH ₂	F	CH	F	H
FE	NH ₂	H	CH	H	H
FF	OH	NH ₂	CH	H	H



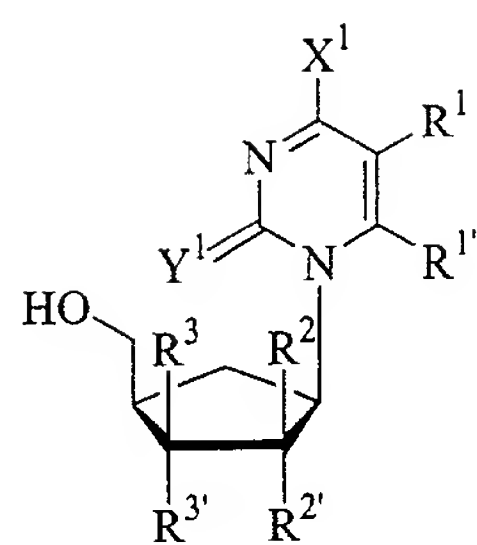
ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	R ²	R ³
FG	OH	H	CH	H	H

In a preferred embodiment, the β-D and β-L nucleosides of general formula (V-a) and (VIII-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 5.

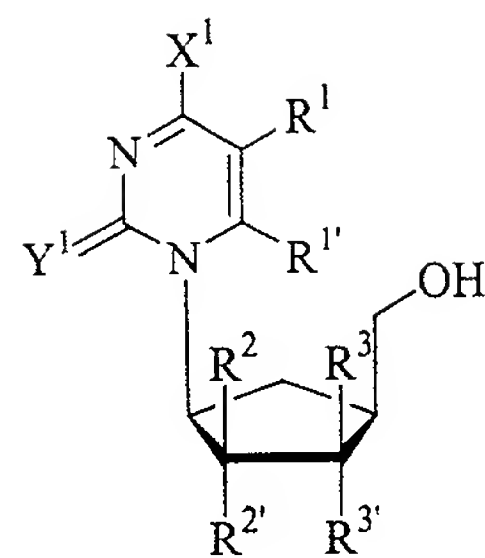
Table 5



ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
GA	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH
GB	OH	H	CH ₃	H	H	H	H	H
GC	OH	O	H	H	H	H	H	H
GD	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	OH	H	OH
GE	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	H	H	H
GF	OH	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH
GG	NH ₂	O	I	H	H	H	H	H



[V-a]

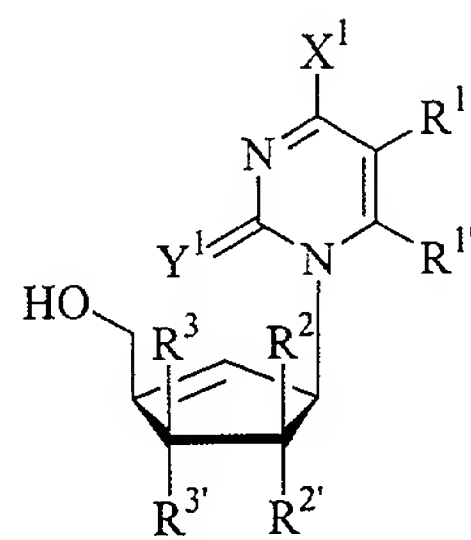


[VIII-a]

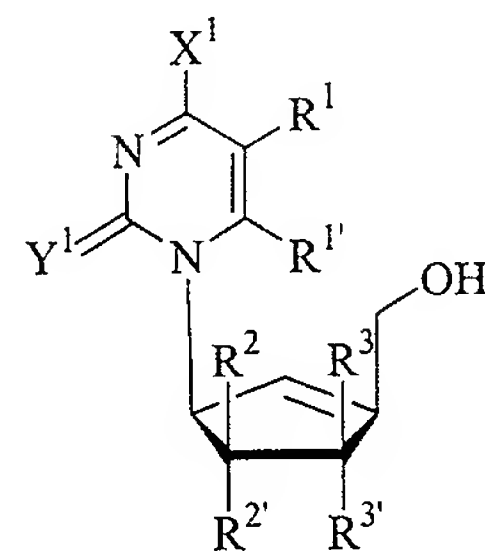
ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
GH	NH ₂	O	I	H	H	OH	H	OH
GI	NH ₂	O	Cl	H	H	OH	H	OH

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D and β -L nucleosides of general formula (VII-a) and (X-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 6.

Table 6



[VII-a]

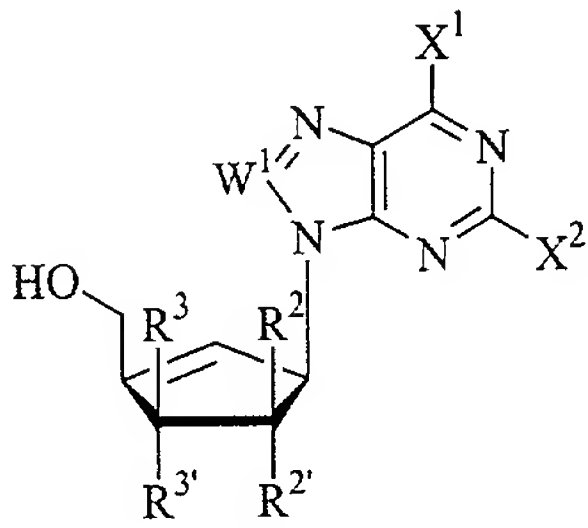


[X-a]

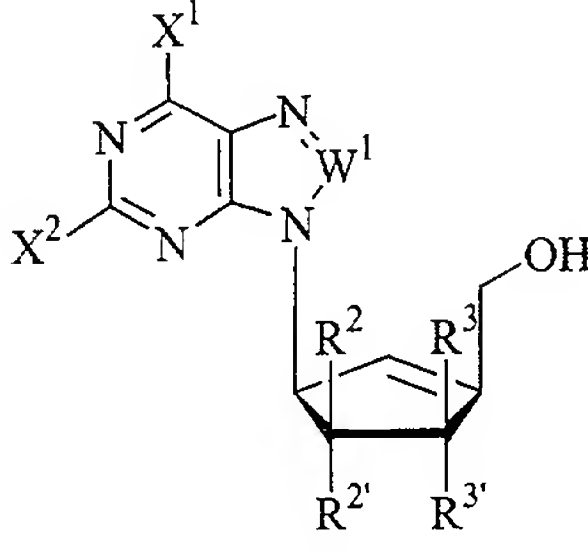
ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
HA	NH ₂	O	H	H	H	OH	H	OH
HB	NH ₂	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH
HC	NH-OH	O	H	H	H	OH	H	OH

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D and β -L nucleosides of general formula (VII-b) and (X-b) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 7.

Table 7



[VII-b]

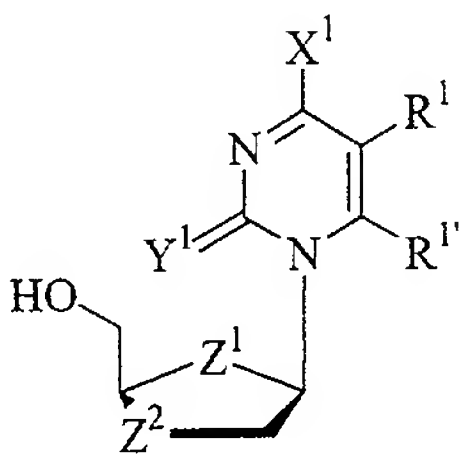


[X-b]

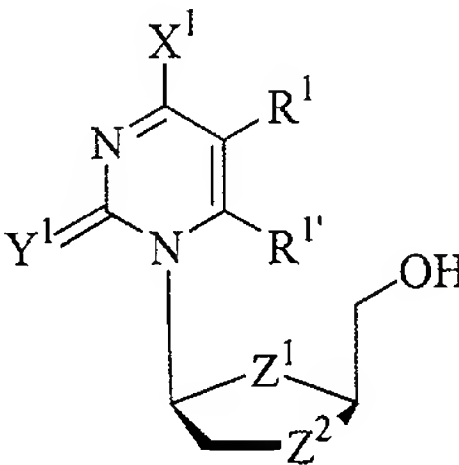
ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
IA	NH ₂	H	CH	H	OH	H	OH

5 In a preferred embodiment, the β -D or β -L nucleosides of general formula (XI-a) or (XII-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 8.

Table 8



[XI-a]

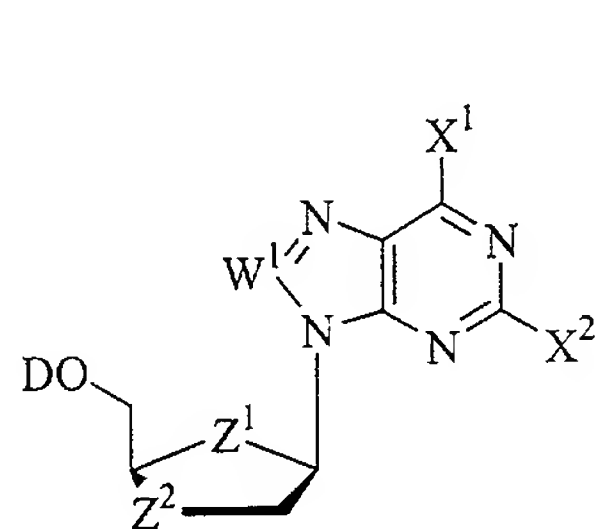


[XII-a]

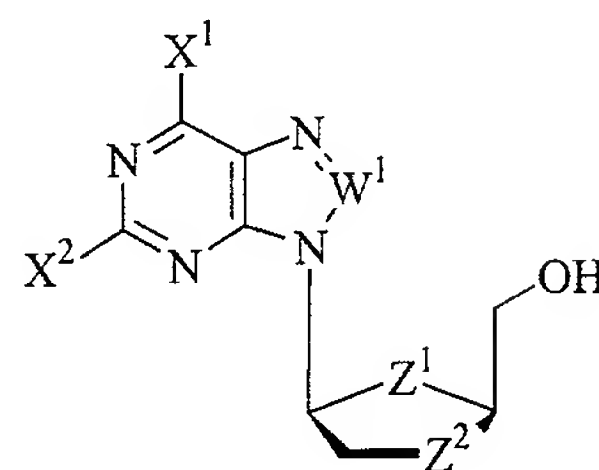
ID	X ¹	Y ¹	Z ¹	Z ²	R ¹	R ^{1'}
JA	NH ₂	O	O	O	H	H
JB	NH ₂	O	O	S	F	H
JC	NH ₂	O	O	O	F	H

In a preferred embodiment, the β -L nucleosides of general formula (XII-b) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 9.

Table 9



[XI-b]

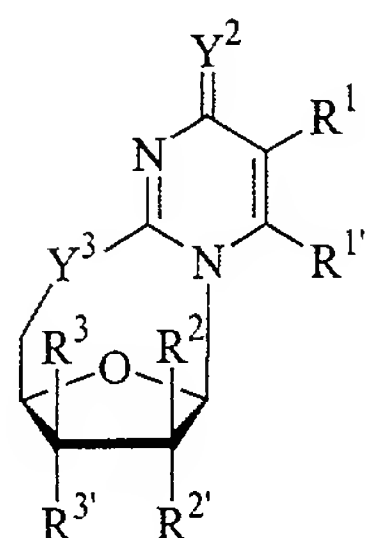


[XII-b]

ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	Z ¹	Z ²
KA	Cl	H	CH	O	S
KB	Cl	NH ₂	CH	O	S
KC	NH ₂	F	CH	O	S
KD	OH	H	CH	O	O

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D nucleosides of general formula (XIII-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 10.

Table 10

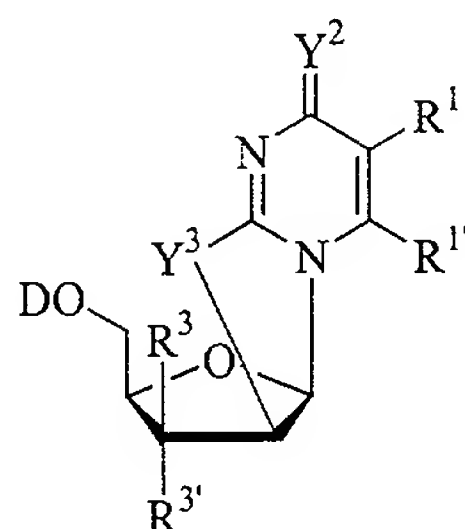


[XIII-a]

ID	Y ²	Y ³	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
LA	O	O	F	H	H	OH	H	OH

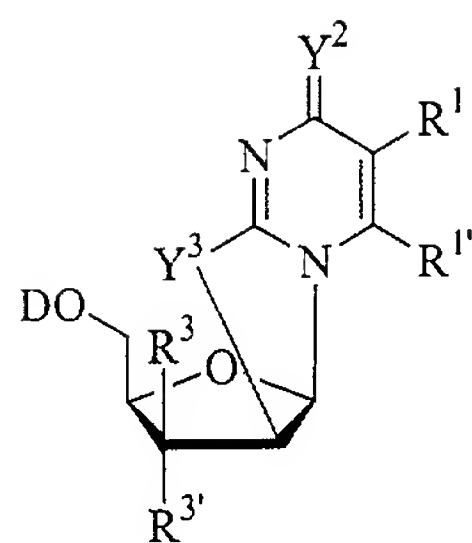
5 In a preferred embodiment, the β -D nucleosides of general formula (XIII-c) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 11.

Table 11



[XIII-c]

ID	Y ²	Y ³	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
MA	O	O	F	H	H	OH
MB	O	O	F	H	H	O-Ms
MC	NH	O	H	H	H	O-Ms

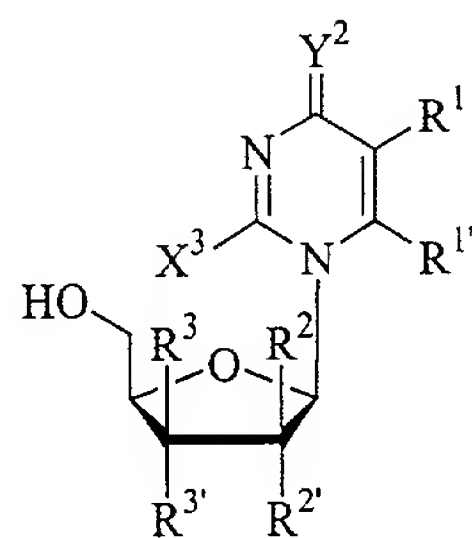


[XIII-c]

ID	Y ²	Y ³	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
MD	NH	O	H	H	H	O-Ac
ME	NH	O	H	H	H	OH
MF	NH	O	F	H	H	OH
MG	NH	O	F	H	H	O-Ac

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D nucleosides of general formula (XIII-d) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 12.

Table 12

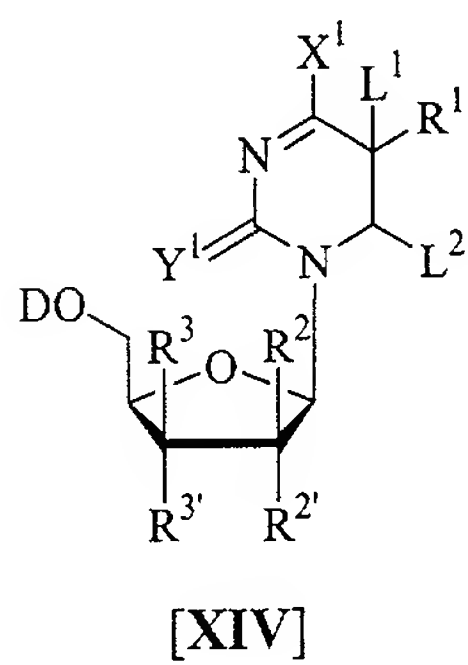


[XIII-d]

ID	Y ²	X ³	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
NA	O	O-CH ₃	H	H	H	O-Ac	H	O-Ac

In a preferred embodiment, the β -D nucleosides of general formula (XIV) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 13.

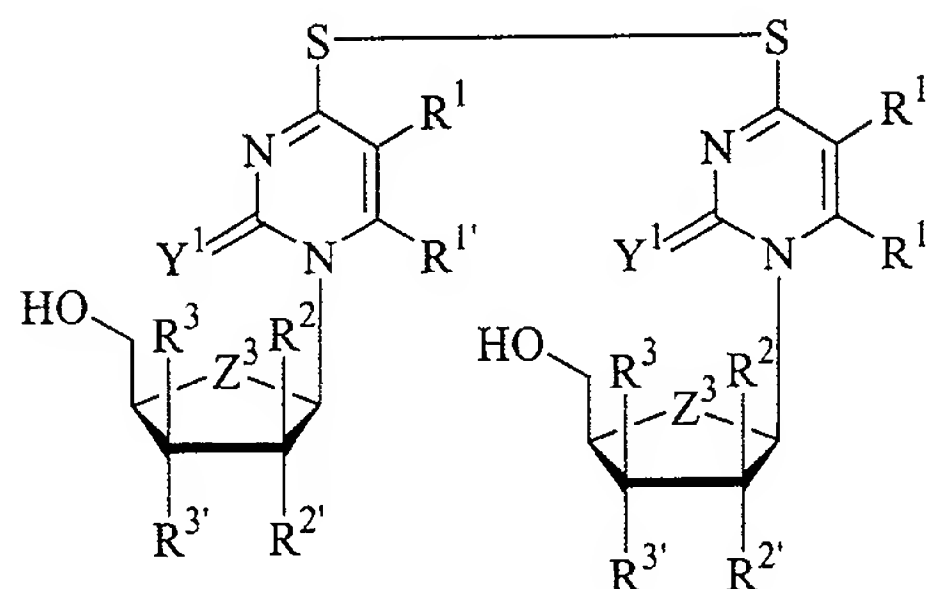
Table 13



ID	X ¹	Y ¹	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}	L ¹	L ²
OA	NH ₂	O	NH-OH	OH	OH	H	H	OH	H	OH
OB	OH	O	O	F	H	OH	H	OH	Cl	O-CH ₃
OC	OH	O	O	H	H	OH	H	OH	Br	O-CH ₃
OD	OH	O	O	F	H	OH	H	OH	Br	O-COCH ₃
OE	OH	O	O	F	H	OH	H	OH	Br	O-CH ₃
OF	OH	O	O	F	H	OH	H	OH	Br	O-Et
OG	OH	O	O	Cl	H	OH	H	OH	Br	O-CH ₃

In a preferred embodiment, the nucleosides of general formula (XV-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 14.

Table 14

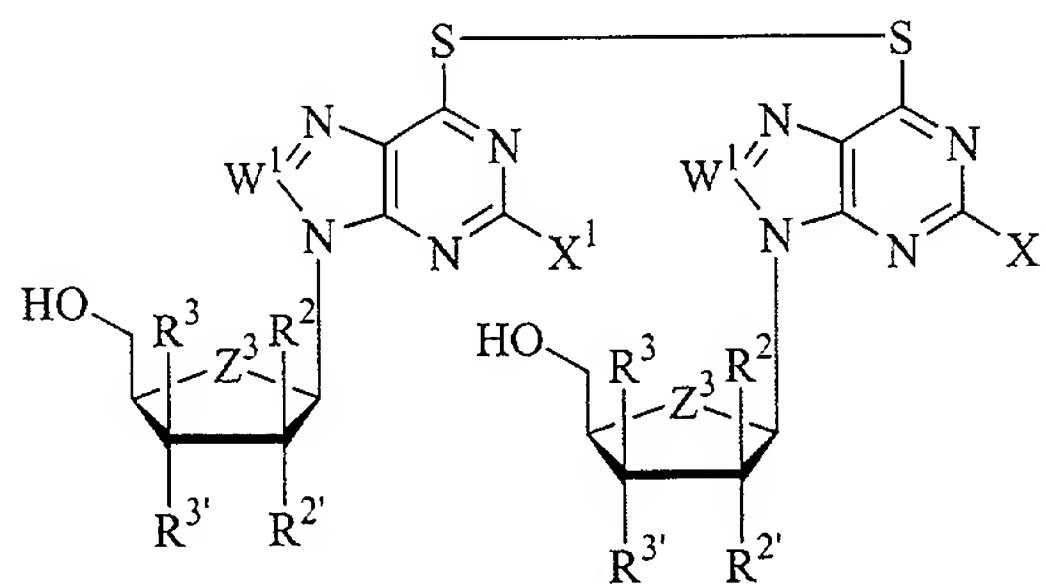


[XV-a]

ID	Y ¹	Z ³	R ¹	R ^{1'}	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
PA	O	O	H	H	H	OH	H	OH

5 In a preferred embodiment, the nucleosides of general formula (XV-b) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 15.

Table 15

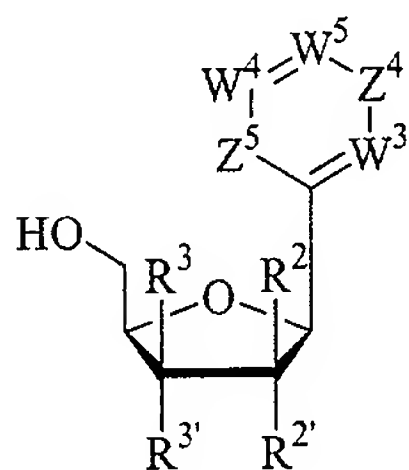


[XV-b]

ID	X ¹	W ¹	Z ³	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
QA	NH ₂	CH	O	H	OH	H	OH

In a preferred embodiment, the nucleosides of general formula (XVI-a) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 16.

Table 16

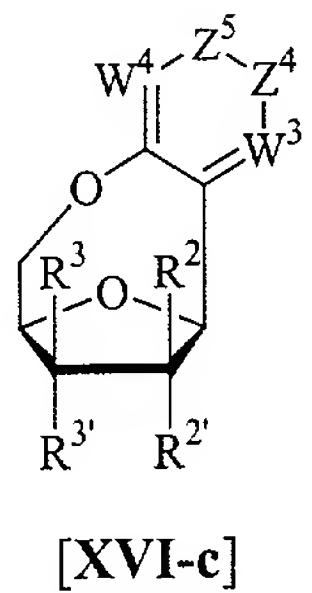


[XVI-a]

ID	W ³	Z ⁴	W ⁵	W ⁴	Z ⁵	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
RA	CH	NCH ₃	C-OH	N	C=O	H	OH	H	O-Ts
RB	CH	NH	C-NH ₂	N	C=O	H	OH	H	OH
RC	CH	NH	C-NHAc	N	C=O	H	OH	H	OH
RD	CH	NH	C-OH	N	C=O	H	OH	H	OH
RE	CH	NCH ₃	C-NH ₂	N	C=O	H	OH	H	OH
RF	CH	NH	C-NHBz	N	C=O	H	OH	H	OH
RG	CH	C=O	C-NH ₂	C-SH	NH	H	OH	H	OH
RH	CH	NH	C-OH	N	C=O	H	Cl	H	OH
RI	CH	NH	C-NH ₂	N	C=O	H	Br	H	OH

In a preferred embodiment, the nucleosides of general formula (XVI-c) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 17.

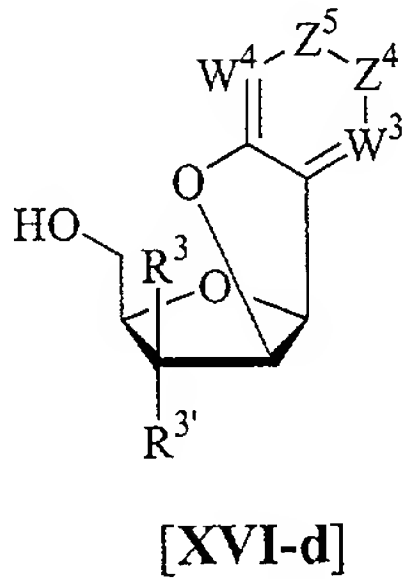
Table 17



ID	W ³	Z ⁴	Z ⁵	W ⁴	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
SA	CH	N-CH ₃	C=O	N	H	OH	H	O-Ac

5 In a preferred embodiment, the nucleosides of general formula (XVI-d) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 18.

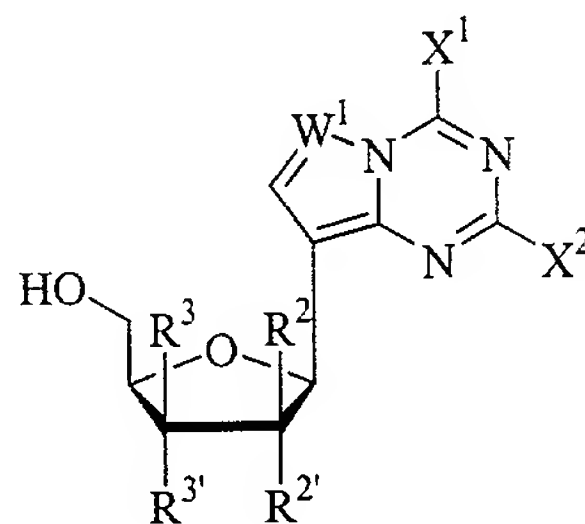
Table 18



ID	W ³	Z ⁴	Z ⁵	W ⁴	R ³	R ^{3'}
TA	CH	N	C=NH	N	H	OH

In a preferred embodiment, the nucleosides of general formula (XVI-f) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 19.

Table 19

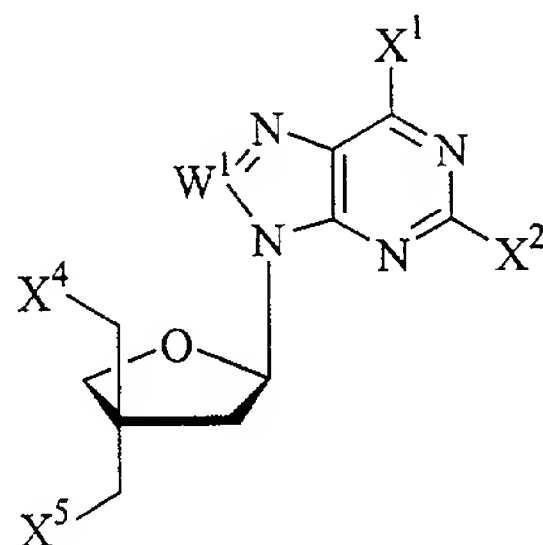


[XVI-f]

ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	R ²	R ^{2'}	R ³	R ^{3'}
UA	NH ₂	H	N	H	OH	H	OH

5 In a preferred embodiment, the nucleosides of general formula (XVII-d) are represented by the non-limiting examples provided in Table 20.

Table 20



[XVII-d]

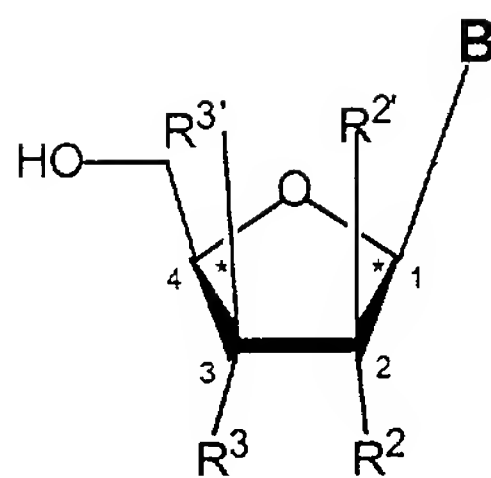
ID	X ¹	X ²	W ¹	X ⁴	X ⁵
VA	NH ₂	F	CH	H	OH

In one embodiment, the nucleoside has an EC₅₀ (effective concentration to achieve 50% viral inhibition) when tested in an appropriate cell-based assay, of less than 15 micromolar, and more particularly, less than 10 or 5 micromolar. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleoside is enantiomerically enriched.

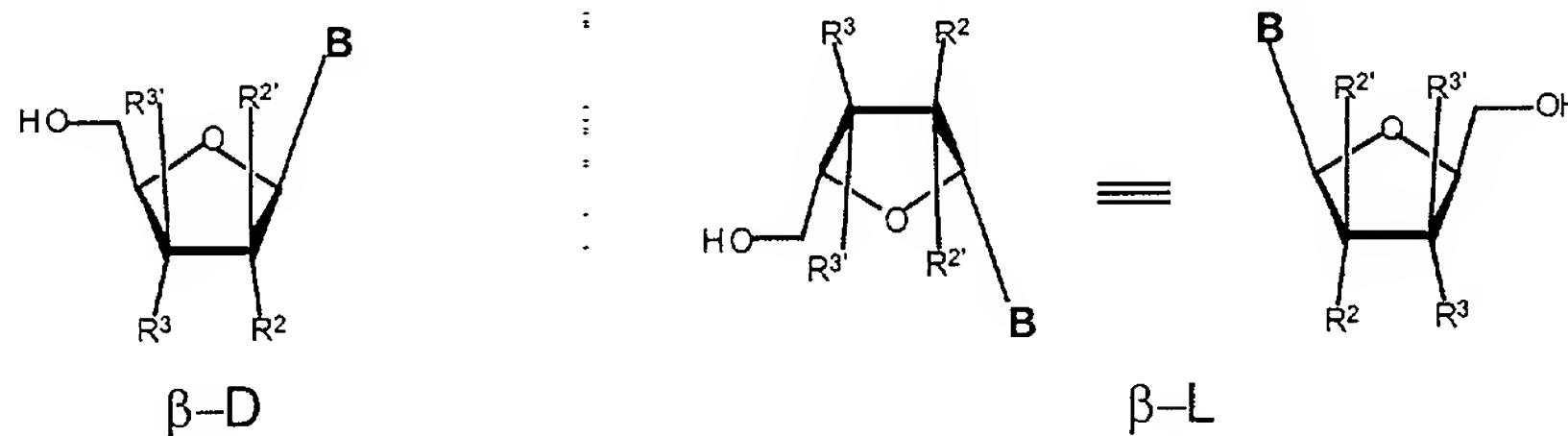
5 II. Stereoisomerism and Polymorphism

Compounds of the present invention having a chiral center may exist in and be isolated in optically active and racemic forms. Some compounds may exhibit polymorphism. The present invention encompasses racemic, optically-active, polymorphic, or stereoisomeric form, or mixtures thereof, of a compound of the invention, which possess the useful properties described herein. The optically active forms can be prepared by, for example, resolution of the racemic form by recrystallization techniques, by synthesis from optically-active starting materials, by chiral synthesis, or by chromatographic separation using a chiral stationary phase or by enzymatic resolution.

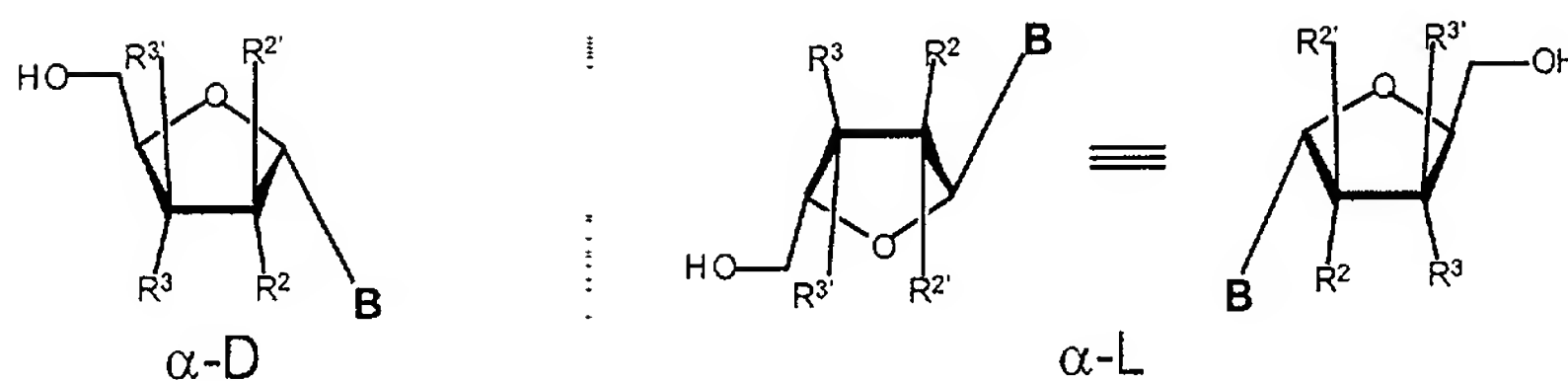
As shown below, a nucleoside contains at least two critical chiral carbon atoms (*). In general, the substituents on the chiral carbons [the specified purine or pyrimidine base (referred to as the C1 substituent when using the sugar ring intermediate numbering) and CH₂OH (referred to as the C4 substituent)] of the nucleoside can be either *cis* (on the same side) or *trans* (on opposite sides) with respect to the sugar ring system. Both the *cis* and *trans* racemates consist of a pair of optical isomers. Hence, each compound has four individual stereoisomers. The four stereoisomers are represented by the following configurations (when orienting the sugar moiety in a horizontal plane such that the -O-moiety is in back): (1) *cis*, with both groups "up", which is referred to as β-D; (2) the mirror image, i.e., *cis*, with both groups "down", which is the mirror image is referred to as β-L; (3) *trans* with the C4 substituent "up" and the C1 substituent "down" (referred to as α-D); and (4) *trans* with the C4 substituent "down" and the C1 substituent "up" (referred to as α-L). The two *cis* enantiomers together are referred to as a racemic mixture of β-enantiomers, and the two *trans* enantiomers are referred to as a racemic mixture of α-enantiomers.



The four possible stereoisomers of the claimed compounds are illustrated below.



cis (β)



trans (α)

III. Definitions

The term "alkyl," as used herein, unless otherwise specified, refers to a saturated straight, branched, or cyclic, primary, secondary, or tertiary hydrocarbon, including but not limited to those of C₁ to C₁₆, and specifically includes methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, *t*-butyl, pentyl, cyclopentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, isohexyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, 3-methylpentyl, 2,2-dimethylbutyl, and 2,3-dimethylbutyl. The alkyl group can be optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of alkyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyl, carboxyl, acyl, acyloxy, amino, amido, carboxyl derivatives, alkylamino, dialkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, azido, thiol, imine, sulfonic acid, sulfate, sulfonyl, sulfanyl, sulfinyl, sulfamonyl, ester, carboxylic acid, amide, phosphonyl, phosphinyl, phosphoryl,

phosphine, thioester, thioether, acid halide, anhydride, oxime, hydrozine, carbamate, phosphonic acid, phosphate, phosphonate, or any other viable functional group that does not inhibit the pharmacological activity of this compound, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, *et al.*,
5 Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, hereby incorporated by reference.

The term "lower alkyl," as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to a C₁ to C₄ saturated straight, branched, or if appropriate, a cyclic (for example, cyclopropyl) alkyl group, including both substituted and unsubstituted forms.

10 The term "alkylene" or "alkenyl" refers to a saturated hydrocarbyldiyl radical of straight or branched configuration, including but not limited to those that have from one to ten carbon atoms. Included within the scope of this term are methylene, 1,2-ethane-diyl, 1,1-ethane-diyl, 1,3-propane-diyl, 1,2-propane-diyl, 1,3-butane-diyl, 1,4-butane-diyl and the like. The alkylene group or other divalent moiety disclosed herein can be optionally
15 substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of alkyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyl, carboxyl, acyl, acyloxy, amino, amido, carboxyl derivatives, alkylamino, azido, dialkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, sulfonic acid, thiol, imine, sulfonyl, sulfanyl, sulfinyl, sulfamonyl, ester, carboxylic acid, amide, phosphonyl, phosphinyl, phosphoryl, phosphine, thioester, thioether, acid halide,
20 anhydride, oxime, hydrozine, carbamate, phosphonic acid, phosphonate, or any other viable functional group that does not inhibit the pharmacological activity of this compound, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, *et al.*, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, hereby incorporated by reference.

25 The term "aryl," as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to phenyl, biphenyl, or naphthyl, and preferably phenyl. The term includes both substituted and unsubstituted moieties. The aryl group can be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, hydroxyl, azido, amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, sulfonic acid, sulfate, phosphonic
30 acid, phosphate, or phosphonate, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, *et al.*, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

5 The term "aralkyl," as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to an aryl group as defined above linked to the molecule through an alkyl group as defined above. The term "alkaryl" or "alkylaryl" as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to an alkyl group as defined above linked to the molecule through an aryl group as defined above. In each of these groups, the alkyl group can be optionally substituted as describe above and the aryl group can be optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of alkyl, halo, haloalkyl, hydroxyl, carboxyl, acyl, acyloxy, amino, amido, azido, carboxyl derivatives, alkylamino, dialkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, sulfonic acid, thiol, imine, sulfonyl, sulfanyl, sulfinyl, sulfamonyl, 10 ester, carboxylic acid, amide, phosphonyl, phosphinyl, phosphoryl, phosphine, thioester, thioether, acid halide, anhydride, oxime, hydrozine, carbamate, phosphonic acid, phosphonate, or any other viable functional group that does not inhibit the pharmacological activity of this compound, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, *et al.*, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, hereby 15 incorporated by reference. Specifically included within the scope of the term aryl are phenyl; naphthyl; phenylmethyl; phenylethyl; 3,4,5-trihydroxyphenyl; 3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl; 3,4,5-triethoxy-phenyl; 4-chlorophenyl; 4-methylphenyl; 3,5-di-tertiarybutyl- 4-hydroxyphenyl; 4-fluorophenyl; 4-chloro-1-naphthyl; 2-methyl-1-naphthylmethyl; 2-naphthylmethyl; 4-chlorophenylmethyl; 4-*t*-butylphenyl; 4-*t*-butylphenylmethyl and the like. 20

The term "alkylamino" or "arylamino" refers to an amino group that has one or two alkyl or aryl substituents, respectively.

25 The term "halogen," as used herein, includes fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

The term "enantiomerically enriched" is used throughout the specification to describe a nucleoside which includes at least about 95%, preferably at least 96%, more preferably at least 97%, even more preferably, at least 98%, and even more preferably at least about 99% or more of a single enantiomer of that nucleoside. When a nucleoside of 30 a particular configuration (D or L) is referred to in this specification, it is presumed that the nucleoside is an enantiomerically enriched nucleoside, unless otherwise stated.

4043997-101901

The term "host," as used herein, refers to a unicellular or multicellular organism in which the virus can replicate, including cell lines and animals, and preferably a human. Alternatively, the host can be carrying a part of the viral genome, whose replication or function can be altered by the compounds of the present invention. The term host specifically refers to infected cells, cells transfected with all or part of the viral genome and animals, in particular, primates (including chimpanzees) and humans. Relative to abnormal cellular proliferation, the term "host" refers to unicellular or multicellular organism in which abnormal cellular proliferation can be mimicked. The term host specifically refers to cells that abnormally proliferate, either from natural or unnatural causes (for example, from genetic mutation or genetic engineering, respectively), and animals, in particular, primates (including chimpanzees) and humans. In most animal applications of the present invention, the host is a human patient. Veterinary applications, in certain indications, however, are clearly anticipated by the present invention (such as bovine viral diarrhea virus in cattle, hog cholera virus in pigs, and border disease virus in sheep).

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug" is used throughout the specification to describe any pharmaceutically acceptable form (such as an ester, phosphate ester, salt of an ester or a related group) of a compound which, upon administration to a patient, provides the active compound. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic or organic bases and acids. Suitable salts include those derived from alkali metals such as potassium and sodium, alkaline earth metals such as calcium and magnesium, among numerous other acids well known in the pharmaceutical art. Pharmaceutically acceptable prodrugs refer to a compound that is metabolized, for example hydrolyzed or oxidized, in the host to form the compound of the present invention. Typical examples of prodrugs include compounds that have biologically labile protecting groups on a functional moiety of the active compound. Prodrugs include compounds that can be oxidized, reduced, aminated, deaminated, hydroxylated, dehydroxylated, hydrolyzed, dehydrolyzed, alkylated, dealkylated, acylated, deacylated, phosphorylated, dephosphorylated to produce the active compound.

IV. Pharmaceutically Acceptable Salts and Prodrugs

In cases where compounds are sufficiently basic or acidic to form stable nontoxic acid or base salts, administration of the compound as a pharmaceutically acceptable salt may be appropriate. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic or organic bases and acids. Suitable salts include those derived from alkali metals such as potassium and sodium, alkaline earth metals such as calcium and magnesium, among numerous other acids well known in the pharmaceutical art. In particular, examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are organic acid addition salts formed with acids, which form a physiological acceptable anion, for example, tosylate, methanesulfonate, acetate, citrate, malonate, tartarate, succinate, benzoate, ascorbate, α -ketoglutarate, and α -glycerophosphate. Suitable inorganic salts may also be formed, including, sulfate, nitrate, bicarbonate, and carbonate salts.

Pharmaceutically acceptable salts may be obtained using standard procedures well known in the art, for example by reacting a sufficiently basic compound such as an amine with a suitable acid affording a physiologically acceptable anion. Alkali metal (for example, sodium, potassium or lithium) or alkaline earth metal (for example calcium) salts of carboxylic acids can also be made.

Any of the nucleosides described herein can be administered as a nucleotide prodrug to increase the activity, bioavailability, stability or otherwise alter the properties of the nucleoside. A number of nucleotide prodrug ligands are known. In general, alkylation, acylation or other lipophilic modification of the mono, di or triphosphate of the nucleoside will increase the stability of the nucleotide. Examples of substituent groups that can replace one or more hydrogens on the phosphate moiety are alkyl, aryl, steroids, carbohydrates, including sugars, 1,2-diacylglycerol and alcohols. Many are described in R. Jones and N. Bischofberger, *Antiviral Research*, **27** (1995) 1-17. Any of these can be used in combination with the disclosed nucleosides to achieve a desired effect.

The active nucleoside can also be provided as a 5'-phosphoether lipid or a 5'-ether lipid, as disclosed in the following references, which are incorporated by reference herein:

Kucera, L.S., N. Iyer, E. Leake, A. Raben, Modest E.K., D.L.W., and C. Piantadosi. 1990. "Novel membrane-interactive ether lipid analogs that inhibit infectious HIV-1 production and induce defective virus formation." *AIDS Res. Hum. Retro Viruses*. 6:491-501; Piantadosi, C., J. Marasco C.J., S.L. Morris-Natschke, K.L. Meyer, F. Gumus, J.R. Surles, K.S. Ishaq, L.S. Kucera, N. Iyer, C.A. Wallen, S. Piantadosi, and E.J. Modest. 1991. "Synthesis and evaluation of novel ether lipid nucleoside conjugates for anti-HIV activity." *J. Med. Chem.* 34:1408.1414; Hosteller, K.Y., D.D. Richman, D.A. Carson, L.M. Stuhmiller, G.M. T. van Wijk, and H. van den Bosch. 1992. "Greatly enhanced inhibition of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in CEM and HT4-6C cells by 3'-deoxythymidine diphosphate dimyristoylglycerol, a lipid prodrug of 3,-deoxythymidine." *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* 36:2025.2029; Hosetler, K.Y., L.M. Stuhmiller, H.B. Lenting, H. van den Bosch, and D.D. Richman, 1990. "Synthesis and antiretroviral activity of phospholipid analogs of azidothymidine and other antiviral nucleosides." *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:61127.

Nonlimiting examples of U.S. patents that disclose suitable lipophilic substituents that can be covalently incorporated into the nucleoside, preferably at the 5'-OH position of the nucleoside or lipophilic preparations, include U.S. Patent Nos. 5,149,794 (Sep. 22, 1992, Yatvin *et al.*); 5,194,654 (Mar. 16, 1993, Hostetler *et al.*); 5,223,263 (June 29, 1993, Hostetler *et al.*); 5,256,641 (Oct. 26, 1993, Yatvin *et al.*); 5,411,947 (May 2, 1995, Hostetler *et al.*); 5,463,092 (Oct. 31, 1995, Hostetler *et al.*); 5,543,389 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin *et al.*); 5,543,390 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin *et al.*); 5,543,391 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin *et al.*); and 5,554,728 (Sep. 10, 1996; Basava *et al.*), all of which are incorporated herein by reference. Foreign patent applications that disclose lipophilic substituents that can be attached to the nucleosides of the present invention, or lipophilic preparations, include WO 89/02733, W0 90/00555, W0 91/16920, W0 91/18914, W0 93/00910, W0 94/26273, W0 96/15132, EP 0 350 287, EP 93917054.4, and W0 91/19721.

V. Pharmaceutical Compositions

Pharmaceutical compositions based upon a β -D or β -L compound of formula (I) – (XXIII) or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug can be prepared in a therapeutically effective amount for treating a *Flaviviridae*, *Orthomyxoviridae* or *Paramyxoviridae* viral infection or abnormal cellular proliferation, optionally in

combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable additive, carrier or excipient. The therapeutically effective amount may vary with the infection or condition to be treated, its severity, the treatment regimen to be employed, the pharmacokinetics of the agent used, as well as the patient treated.

5 In one aspect according to the present invention, the compound according to the present invention is formulated preferably in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In general, it is preferable to administer the pharmaceutical composition in orally administrable form, but formulations may be administered via
10 parenteral, intravenous, intramuscular, transdermal, buccal, subcutaneous, suppository or other route. Intravenous and intramuscular formulations are preferably administered in sterile saline. One of ordinary skill in the art may modify the formulation within the teachings of the specification to provide numerous formulations for a particular route of administration without rendering the compositions of the present invention unstable or compromising its therapeutic activity. In particular, a modification of a desired compound
15 to render it more soluble in water or other vehicle, for example, may be easily accomplished by routine modification (salt formulation, esterification, etc.).

 In certain pharmaceutical dosage forms, the prodrug form of the compound, especially including acylated (acetylated or other) and ether derivatives, phosphate esters and various salt forms of the present compounds, is preferred. One of ordinary skill in the
20 art will recognize how to readily modify the present compound to a prodrug form to facilitate delivery of active compound to a targeted site within the host organism or patient. The artisan also will take advantage of favorable pharmacokinetic parameters of the prodrug form, where applicable, in delivering the desired compound to a targeted site within the host organism or patient to maximize the intended effect of the compound in the
25 treatment of *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infections or conditions related to abnormal cellular proliferation.

 The amount of compound included within therapeutically active formulations, according to the present invention, is an effective amount for treating the infection or
30 condition, in preferred embodiments, a *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infection or a condition related to abnormal cellular proliferation. In general, a therapeutically effective amount of

the present compound in pharmaceutical dosage form usually ranges from about 0.1 mg/kg to about 100 mg/kg or more, depending upon the compound used, the condition or infection treated and the route of administration. For purposes of the present invention, a prophylactically or preventively effective amount of the compositions, according to the present invention, falls within the same concentration range as set forth above for therapeutically effective amount and is usually the same as a therapeutically effective amount.

Administration of the active compound may range from continuous (intravenous drip) to several oral administrations per day (for example, Q.I.D., B.I.D., etc.) and may include oral, topical, parenteral, intramuscular, intravenous, subcutaneous, transdermal (which may include a penetration enhancement agent), buccal and suppository administration, among other routes of administration. Enteric-coated oral tablets may also be used to enhance bioavailability and stability of the compounds from an oral route of administration. The most effective dosage form will depend upon the pharmacokinetics of the particular agent chosen, as well as the severity of disease in the patient. Oral dosage forms are particularly preferred, because of ease of administration and prospective favorable patient compliance.

To prepare the pharmaceutical compositions according to the present invention, a therapeutically effective amount of one or more of the compounds according to the present invention is preferably mixed with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier according to conventional pharmaceutical compounding techniques to produce a dose. A carrier may take a wide variety of forms depending on the form of preparation desired for administration, e.g., oral or parenteral. In preparing pharmaceutical compositions in oral dosage form, any of the usual pharmaceutical media may be used. Thus, for liquid oral preparations such as suspensions, elixirs and solutions, suitable carriers and additives including water, glycols, oils, alcohols, flavoring agents, preservatives, coloring agents and the like may be used. For solid oral preparations such as powders, tablets, capsules, and for solid preparations such as suppositories, suitable carriers and additives including starches, sugar carriers, such as dextrose, mannitol, lactose and related carriers, diluents, granulating agents, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents and the like may be used. If desired, the tablets or capsules may be enteric-coated for sustained release by standard techniques. The use of these dosage forms may significantly impact the bioavailability of the compounds in the patient.

For parenteral formulations, the carrier will usually comprise sterile water or aqueous sodium chloride solution, though other ingredients, including those that aid dispersion, also may be included. Where sterile water is to be used and maintained as sterile, the compositions and carriers must also be sterilized. Injectable suspensions may also be prepared, in which case appropriate liquid carriers, suspending agents and the like may be employed.

Liposomal suspensions (including liposomes targeted to viral antigens) may also be prepared by conventional methods to produce pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. This may be appropriate for the delivery of free nucleosides, acyl nucleosides or phosphate ester prodrug forms of the nucleoside compounds according to the present invention.

In particularly preferred embodiments according to the present invention, the compounds and compositions are used to treat, prevent or delay the onset of *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infections or conditions related to abnormal cellular proliferation. Preferably, to treat, prevent or delay the onset of the infection or condition, the compositions will be administered in oral dosage form in amounts ranging from about 250 micrograms up to about 1 gram or more at least once a day, preferably, or up to four times a day. The present compounds are preferably administered orally, but may be administered parenterally, topically or in suppository form.

The compounds according to the present invention, because of their low toxicity to host cells in certain instances, may be advantageously employed prophylactically to prevent *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infections or conditions related to abnormal cellular proliferation or to prevent the occurrence of clinical symptoms associated with the viral infection or condition. Thus, the present invention also encompasses methods for the prophylactic treatment of viral infection, and in particular *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infections or of a condition related to abnormal cellular proliferation. In this aspect, according to the present invention, the present compositions are used to prevent or delay the onset of a *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infection or a condition related to abnormal

cellular proliferation. This prophylactic method comprises administration to a patient in need of such treatment, or who is at risk for the development of the virus or condition, an amount of a compound according to the present invention effective for alleviating, preventing or delaying the onset of the viral infection or condition. In the prophylactic treatment according to the present invention, it is preferred that the antiviral or antiproliferative compound utilized should be low in toxicity and preferably non-toxic to the patient. It is particularly preferred in this aspect of the present invention that the compound that is used should be maximally effective against the virus or condition and should exhibit a minimum of toxicity to the patient. In the case of *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infections or conditions related to abnormal cellular proliferation, compounds according to the present invention, which may be used to treat these disease states, may be administered within the same dosage range for therapeutic treatment (i.e., about 250 micrograms up to 1 gram or more from one to four times per day for an oral dosage form) as a prophylactic agent to prevent the proliferation of a *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infections or conditions related to abnormal cellular proliferation, or alternatively, to prolong the onset of a *Flaviviridae* (including HCV), *Orthomyxoviridae* (including Influenza A and B), *Paramyxoviridae* (including RSV) infections or conditions related to abnormal cellular proliferation, which manifests itself in clinical symptoms.

In addition, compounds according to the present invention can be administered in combination or alternation with one or more antiviral, anti-HBV, anti-HCV or anti-herpetic agent or interferon, anti-cancer or antibacterial agents, including other compounds of the present invention. Certain compounds according to the present invention may be effective for enhancing the biological activity of certain agents according to the present invention by reducing the metabolism, catabolism or inactivation of other compounds and as such, are co-administered for this intended effect.

This invention is further illustrated in the following sections. The Experimental Details section and Examples contained therein are set forth to aid in an understanding of the invention. This section is not intended to, and should not be interpreted to, limit in any way the invention set forth in the claims that follow thereafter.

VI. Therapies for the Treatment of *Flaviviridae* Infection

It has been recognized that drug-resistant variants of viruses can emerge after prolonged treatment with an antiviral agent. Drug resistance most typically occurs by mutation of a gene that encodes for an enzyme used in the viral replication cycle, and most typically in the case of HCV, the RNA-dependent-RNA polymerase. It has been demonstrated that the efficacy of a drug against viral infection can be prolonged, augmented, or restored by administering the compound in combination or alternation with a second, and perhaps third, antiviral compound that induces a different mutation from that caused by the principle drug. Alternatively, the pharmacokinetics, biodistribution or other parameter of the drug can be altered by such combination or alternation therapy. In general, combination therapy is typically preferred over alternation therapy because it induces multiple simultaneous stresses on the virus.

Examples of agents that have been identified as active against the hepatitis C virus, and thus can be used in combination or alternation with one or more nucleosides of general formula (I) – (XXIII) include:

- (a) interferon and ribavirin (Battaglia, A. M. *et al.* Ann. Pharmacother. **2000**, *34*, 487; Berenguer, M. *et al.* Antivir. Ther. **1998**, *3* (Suppl. 3), 125);
- (b) Substrate-based NS3 protease inhibitors (Attwood *et al.* PCT WO 98/22496, **1998**; Attwood *et al.* Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy **1999**, *10*, 259, ; Attwood *et al.* German Patent Publication DE 19914474; Tung *et al.* PCT WO 98/17679), including alphaketoamides and hydrazinoureas, and inhibitors that terminate in an electrophile such as a boronic acid or phosphonate (Llinas-Brunet *et al.* PCT WO 99/07734);
- (c) Non-substrate-based inhibitors such as 2,4,6-trihydroxy-3-nitro-benzamide derivatives (Sudo K. *et al.*, Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications, **1997**, *238*, 643 and Sudo K. *et al.* Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy **1998**, *9*, 186), including RD3-4082 and RD3-4078, the former substituted on the amide with a 14 carbon chain and the latter processing a *para*-phenoxyphenyl group;
- (d) Thiazolidine derivatives which show relevant inhibition in a reverse-phase HPLC assay with an NS3/4A fusion protein and NS5A/5B substrate (Sudo K. *et al.*

Antiviral Research **1996**, 32, 9), especially compound RD-1-6250, possessing a fused cinnamoyl moiety substituted with a long alkyl chain, RD4 6205 and RD4 6193;

- (e) Thiazolidines and benzanilides identified in Kakiuchi N. *et al.* J. EBS Letters **421**, 217 and Takeshita N. *et al.* Analytical Biochemistry **1997**, 247, 242;
- 5 (f) A phenanthrenequinone possessing activity against HCV protease in a SDS-PAGE and autoradiography assay isolated from the fermentation culture broth of *Streptomyces* sp., Sch 68631 (Chu M. *et al.* Tetrahedron Letters **1996**, 37, 7229), and Sch 351633, isolated from the fungus *Penicillium griscofuluum*, which demonstrates activity in a scintillation proximity assay (Chu M. *et al.*, Bioorganic and Medicinal
- 10 Chemistry Letters 9, 1949);
- (g) Selective NS3 inhibitors based on the macromolecule elgin c, isolated from leech (Qasim M.A. *et al.* Biochemistry **1997**, 36,1598);
- (h) HCV helicase inhibitors (Diana G. D. *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,633,358 and Diana G. D. *et al.* PCT WO 97/36554);
- 15 (i) HCV polymerase inhibitors such as nucleotide analogues, gliotoxin (Ferrari R. *et al.* Journal of Virology **1999**, 73, 1649), and the natural product cerulenin (Lohmann V. *et al.* Virology **1998**, 249, 108);
- (j) Antisense phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides (S-ODN) complementary to at least a portion of a sequence of the HCV (Anderson *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 6,174,868), and in particular the sequence stretches in the 5' non-coding region (NCR) (Alt M. *et al.* Hepatology **1995**, 22, 707), or nucleotides 326-348 comprising the 3' end of the
- 20 NCR and nucleotides 371-388 located in the core coding region of the HCV RNA (Alt M. *et al.* Archives of Virology **1997**, 142, 589 and Galderisi U. *et al.*, Journal of Cellular Physiology **1999**, 81:2151);
- 25 (k) Inhibitors of IRES-dependent translation (Ikeda N *et al.* Japanese Patent Pub. JP-08268890; Kai Y. *et al.* Japanese Patent Publication JP-10101591);
- (l) Nuclease-resistant ribozymes (Maccjak D.J. *et al.*, Hepatology **1999**, 30, abstract 995);
- (m) Amantadine, such as rimantadine (Smith, Abstract from Annual Meeting of the
- 30 American Gastroenterological Association and AASLD, **1996**);

- (n) Quinolones, such as ofloxacin, ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin (AASLD Abstracts, Hepatology, Oct. 1994, Program Issue, 20 (4), pt.2, abstract no. 293);
- (o) Nucleoside analogs (Ismaili *et al.* WO 01/60315; Storer WO 01/32153), including 2'-deoxy-L-nucleosides (Watanabe *et al.* WO 01/34618), and 1-(β -L-ribofuranosyl)-1,2,4-triazole-3-carboxamide (levovirinTM) (Tam WO 01/46212); and
- (p) Other miscellaneous compounds including 1-amino-alkylcyclohexanes (Gold *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 6,034,134), alkyl lipids (Chojkier *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,922,757), vitamin E and other antioxidants (Chojkier *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,922,757), squalene, bile acids (Ozeki *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,846,964), N-(phosphonoacetyl)-L-aspartic acid, (Diana *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,830,905), benzenedicarboxamides (Diana *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,633,388), polyadenylic acid derivatives (Wang *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,496,546), 2',3'-dideoxyinosine (Yarchoan *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,026,687), benzimidazoles (Colacino *et al.* U.S. Patent No. 5,891,874), glucamines (Mueller *et al.* WO 01/08672), substituted-1,5-imino-D-glucitol compounds (Mueller *et al.* WO 00/47198).

VII. Therapies for the Treatment of *Orthomyxoviridae* Infection

It has been recognized that drug-resistant variants of influenza can emerge after prolonged treatment with an antiviral agent. Drug resistance most typically occurs by mutation of a gene that encodes for an enzyme used in the viral replication cycle, resulting in antigenic shifts or drifts. It has been demonstrated that the efficacy of a drug against influenza infection can be prolonged, augmented, or restored by administering the compound in combination or alternation with a second, and perhaps third, antiviral compound that induces a different mutation from that caused by the principle drug. Alternatively, the pharmacokinetics, biodistribution or other parameter of the drug can be altered by such combination or alternation therapy. In general, combination therapy is typically preferred over alternation therapy because it induces multiple simultaneous stresses on the virus.

Examples of agents that have been identified as active against the influenza virus, and thus can be used in combination or alternation with one or more nucleosides of general formula(I) – (XXIII) include:

- (a) actinomycin D (Barry, R. D. et al. "Participation of deoxyribonucleic acid in the multiplication of influenza virus" Nature, 1962, 194, 1139-1140);
- (b) amantadine (Van Voris, L. P. et al. "Antivirals for the chemoprophylaxis and treatment of influenza" Semin Respir Infect, 1992, 7, 61-70);
- 5 (c) 4-amino- or 4-guanidino-2-deoxy-2,3-didehydro-D-N-acetylneuroaminic acid – 4-amino- or 4-guanidino-Neu 5 Ac2en (von Itzstein, M. et al. "Rational design of potent sialidase-based inhibitors of influenza virus replication" Nature, 1993, 363, 418-423);
- (d) ribavirin (Van Voris, L. P. et al. "Antivirals for the chemoprophylaxis and treatment of influenza" Semin Respir Infect, 1992, 7, 61-70);
- 10 (e) interferon (Came, P. E. et al. "Antiviral activity of an interferon-inducing synthetic polymer" Proc Soc Exp Biol Med, 1969, 131, 443-446; Gerone, P. J. et al. "Inhibition of respiratory virus infections of mice with aerosols of synthetic double-stranded ribonucleic acid" Infect Immun, 1971, 3, 323-327; Takano, K. et al. "Passive interferon protection in mouse influenza" J Infect Dis, 1991, 164, 969-972);
- 15 (f) inactivated influenza A and B virus vaccines ("Clinical studies on influenza vaccine – 1978" Rev Infect Dis, 1983, 5, 721-764; Galasso, G. T. et al. "Clinical studies on influenza vaccine – 1976" J Infect Dis, 1977, 136 (suppl), S341-S746; Jennings, R. et al. "Responses of volunteers to inactivated influenza virus vaccines" J Hyg, 1981, 86, 1-16; Kilbourne, E. D. "Inactivated influenza vaccine" In: Plotkin SA, Mortimer EA, eds. Vaccines Philadelphia: Saunders, 1988, 420-434; Meyer, H. M., Jr. et al. "Review of existing vaccines for influenza" Am J Clin Pathol, 1978, 70, 146-152; "Mortality and Morbidity Weekly Report. Prevention and control of Influenza: Part I, Vaccines. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP)" MMWR, 1993, 42 (RR-6), 1-14; Palache, A. M. et al. "Antibody response after influenza immunization with various vaccine doses: A double-blind, placebo-controlled, multi-centre, dose-response study in elderly nursing-home residents and young volunteers" Vaccine, 1993, 11, 3-9; Potter, C. W. "Inactivated influenza virus vaccine" In: Beare AS, ed. Basic and applied influenza research, Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1982, 119-158).
- 20
- 25
- 30

VIII. Therapies for the Treatment of *Paramyxoviridae* Infection

It has been recognized that drug-resistant variants of RSV can emerge after prolonged treatment with an antiviral agent. Drug resistance most typically occurs by mutation of a gene that encodes for an enzyme used in the viral replication cycle. It has been demonstrated that the efficacy of a drug against RSV infection can be prolonged, augmented, or restored by administering the compound in combination or alternation with a second, and perhaps third, antiviral compound that induces a different mutation from that caused by the principle drug. Alternatively, the pharmacokinetics, biodistribution or other parameter of the drug can be altered by such combination or alternation therapy. In general, combination therapy is typically preferred over alternation therapy because it induces multiple simultaneous stresses on the virus.

Examples of agents that have been identified as active against RSV, and thus can be used in combination or alternation with one or more nucleosides of general formula (I) – (XXIII) include:

- (a) ribavirin (Hruska, J. F. et al. "In vivo inhibition of respiratory syncytial virus by ribavirin" Antimicrob Agents Chemother, 1982, 21, 125-130); and
- (b) purified human intravenous IgG – IVIG (Prince, G. A. et al. "Effectiveness of topically administered neutralizing antibodies in experimental immunotherapy of respiratory syncytial virus infection in cotton rats" J Virol, 1987, 61, 1851-1954; Prince, G. A. et al. "Immunoprophylaxis and immunotherapy of respiratory syncytial virus infection in cotton rats" Infect Immun, 1982, 42, 81-87).

IX. Therapies for the Treatment of Abnormal Cellular Proliferation

Examples of agents that have been identified as active against abnormal cellular proliferation, and thus can be used in combination or alternation with one or more nucleosides of general formula (I) – (XXIII) include:

A. Alkylating Agents

Nitrogen Mustards: Mechlorethamine (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas), Cyclophosphamide, Ifosfamide (acute and chronic lymphocytic leukemias,

Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, multiple myeloma, neuroblastoma, breast, ovary, lung, Wilms' tumor, cervix, testis, soft-tissue sarcomas), Melphalan (L-sarcolysin) (multiple myeloma, breast, ovary), Chlorambucil (chronic lymphocytic leukemia, primary macroglobulinemia, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas).

5 Ethylenimines and Methylmelamines: Hexamethylmelamine (ovary), Thiopeta (bladder, breast, ovary).

Alkyl Sulfonates: Busulfan (chronic granulocytic leukemia).

10 Nitrosoureas: Carmustine (BCNU) (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, primary brain tumors, multiple myeloma, malignant melanoma), Lomustine (CCNU) (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, primary brain tumors, small-cell lung), Semustine (methyl-CCNU) (primary brain tumors, stomach, colon), Streptozocin (STR) (malignant pancreatic insulinoma, malignant carcinoid).

Triazines: Dacarbazine (DTIC; dimethyltriazenoimidazole-carboxamide) (malignant melanoma, Hodgkin's disease, soft-tissue sarcomas).

15 B. Antimetabolites

Folic Acid Analogs: Methotrexate (amethopterin) (acute lymphocytic leukemia, choriocarcinoma, mycosis fungoides, breast, head and neck, lung, osteogenic sarcoma).

20 Pyrimidine Analogs: Fluorouracil (5-fluorouracil; 5-FU) Floxuridine (fluorodeoxyuridine; FUDR) (breast, colon, stomach, pancreas, ovary, head and neck, urinary bladder, premalignant skin lesions) (topical), Cytarabine (cytosine arabinoside) (acute granulocytic and acute lymphocytic leukemias).

25 Purine Analogs and Related Inhibitors: Mercaptopurine (6-mercaptopurine; 6-MP) (acute lymphocytic, acute granulocytic and chronic granulocytic leukemia), Thioguanine (6-thioguanine: TG) (acute granulocytic, acute lymphocytic and chronic granulocytic leukemia), Pentostatin (2'-deoxycytosine) (hairy cell leukemia, mycosis fungoides, chronic lymphocytic leukemia).

Vinca Alkaloids: Vinblastine (VLB) (Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, breast, testis), Vincristine (acute lymphocytic leukemia, neuroblastoma,

Wilms' tumor, rhabdomyosarcoma, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, small-cell lung).

Epipodophylotoxins: Etoposide (testis, small-cell lung and other lung, breast, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, acute granulocytic leukemia, Kaposi's sarcoma), Teniposide (testis, small-cell lung and other lung, breast, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, acute granulocytic leukemia, Kaposi's sarcoma).

C. Natural Products

Antibiotics: Dactinomycin (actinomycin D) (choriocarcinoma, Wilms' tumor rhabdomyosarcoma, testis, Kaposi's sarcoma), Daunorubicin (daunomycin; rubidomycin) (acute granulocytic and acute lymphocytic leukemias), Doxorubicin (soft tissue, osteogenic, and other sarcomas; Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, acute leukemias, breast, genitourinary thyroid, lung, stomach, neuroblastoma), Bleomycin (testis, head and neck, skin and esophagus lung, and genitourinary tract, Hodgkin's disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas), Plicamycin (mithramycin) (testis, malignant hypercalcemia), Mitomycin (mitomycin C) (stomach, cervix, colon, breast, pancreas, bladder, head and neck).

Enzymes: L-Asparaginase (acute lymphocytic leukemia).

Biological Response Modifiers: Interferon-alfa (hairy cell leukemia, Kaposi's sarcoma, melanoma, carcinoid, renal cell, ovary, bladder, non Hodgkin's lymphomas, mycosis fungoides, multiple myeloma, chronic granulocytic leukemia).

D. Miscellaneous Agents

Platinum Coordination Complexes: Cisplatin (cis-DDP) Carboplatin (testis, ovary, bladder, head and neck, lung, thyroid, cervix, endometrium, neuroblastoma, osteogenic sarcoma).

Anthracenedione: Mixtozantrone (acute granulocytic leukemia, breast).

Substituted Urea: Hydroxyurea (chronic granulocytic leukemia, polycythemia vera, essential thrombocytosis, malignant melanoma).

Methylhydrazine Derivative: Procarbazine (N-methylhydrazine, MIH) (Hodgkin's disease).

Adrenocortical Suppressant: Mitotane (o,p'-DDD) (adrenal cortex), Aminoglutethimide (breast).

5 Adrenocorticosteroids: Prednisone (acute and chronic lymphocytic leukemias, non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, Hodgkin's disease, breast).

Progestins: Hydroxprogesterone caproate, Medroxyprogesterone acetate, Megestrol acetate (endometrium, breast).

E. Antioangiogenesis Agents

10 Angiostatin, Endostatin.

F. Hormones and Antagonists

Estrogens: Diethylstilbestrol Ethinyl estradiol (breast, prostate)

Antiestrogen: Tamoxifen (breast).

Androgens: Testosterone propionate Fluoxymesterone (breast).

15 Antiandrogen: Flutamide (prostate).

Gonadotropin-Releasing Hormone Analog: Leuprolide (prostate).

X. Synthetic Protocol

Compounds of formula (I) – (XXIII) can be synthesized by any means known in the art. In particular, the compounds can be made via three distinct routes: (a) from a pre-formed nucleoside, (b) condensation of a modified sugar or unmodified ribose with purine or pyrimidine, and (c) combination of the two routes. Since the 3-deoxy-D-erythropentofuranose structure is found in the nucleoside antibiotic, cordycepin, a number of total syntheses of this antibiotic have been reported during 1960s (*see*: Lee, W. W. *et al.* J. Am. Chem. Soc., **1961**, *83*, 1906; Walton, E. *et al.* J. Am. Chem. Soc., **1964**, *86*, 2952; Suhadolnik, R. J. *et al.* Carbohydr. Res., **1968**, *61*, 545; Ikehara, M. *et al.* Chem. Pharm. Bull., **1967**, *15*, 94; Kaneko, M. *et al.* Chem. Pharm. Bull. **1972**, *20*, 63). In a preferred

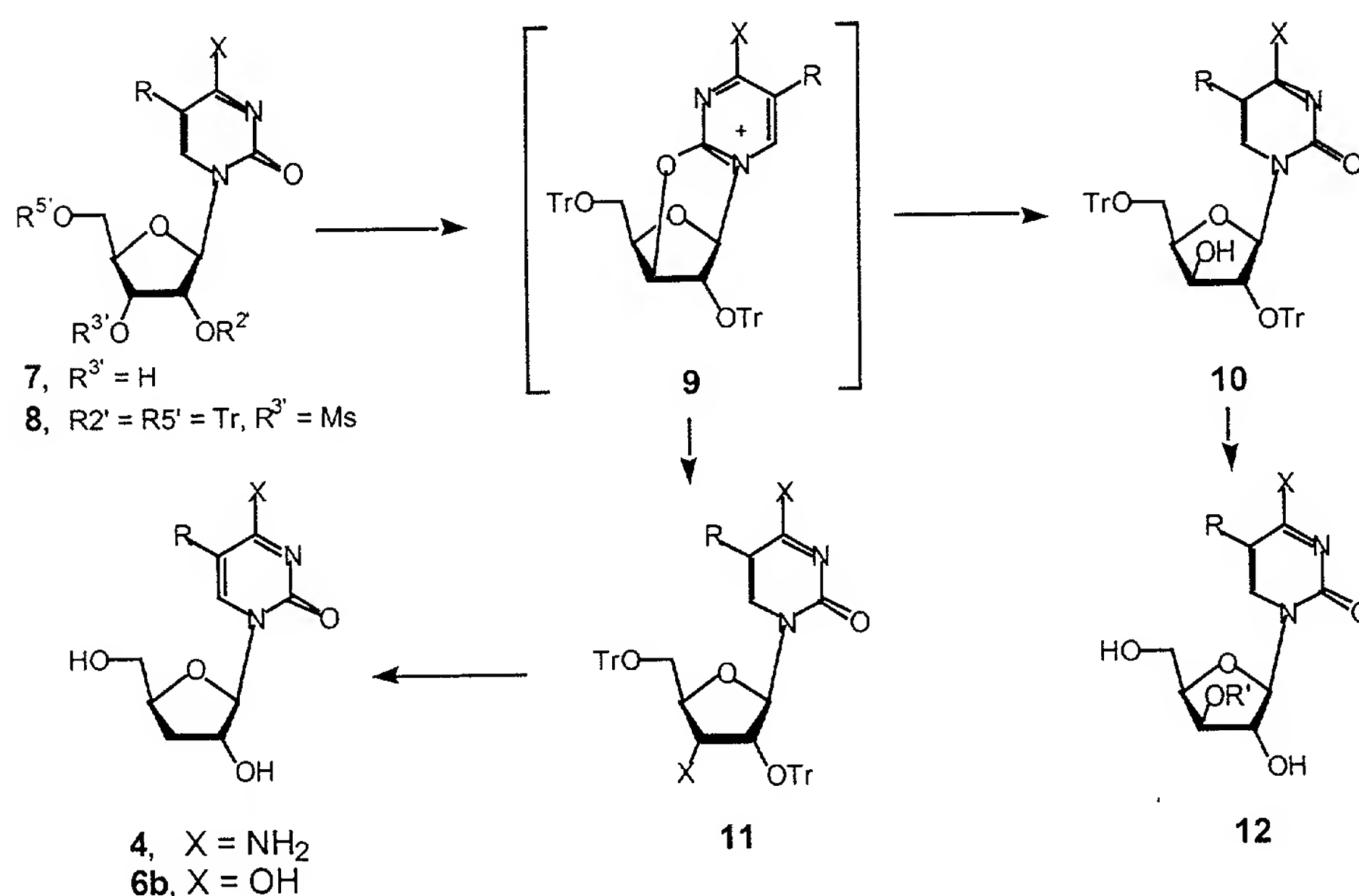
20

25

corresponding protected uracil nucleoside **5**, which can be readily converted into free 3'-bromo-xylo nucleoside **6a**, from which 3'-deoxyuridine derivatives **6b** can be obtained by reductive debromination. In a similar manner, starting from N⁴-protected-L-cytidine, the L-enantiomer (**III-a**) of **4** and **6** can be synthesized.

5 In an alternate embodiment for the preparation of nucleosides **I-a**, 2', 5'-di-O-tritylation of a ribonucleoside gives **7** ($R^{2'} = R^{5'} = \text{Tr}$) which is converted into the corresponding 3'-O-mesylates **8** (**Scheme 2**). Treatment of **8** with diluted potassium or sodium hydroxide gives the corresponding xylo derivative **10** via anhydronucleoside **9**, which, after de-O-tritylation, affords **12**. Mesylation of **10**, followed by de-O-tritylation yields the 3'-O-mesyl xylo-nucleoside. Upon treatment of **8** with lithium bromide or sodium iodide, the corresponding 3'-deoxy-3'-halogeno derivative **11** is formed via **9**, which, after de-O-tritylation, followed by hydrogenolysis, is converted into the desired 3'-deoxyuridine derivative **6b**. In a similar manner, starting from an L-ribonucleoside, the L-nucleoside (**III-a**) counterparts of **4** and **6** are synthesized.

Scheme 2

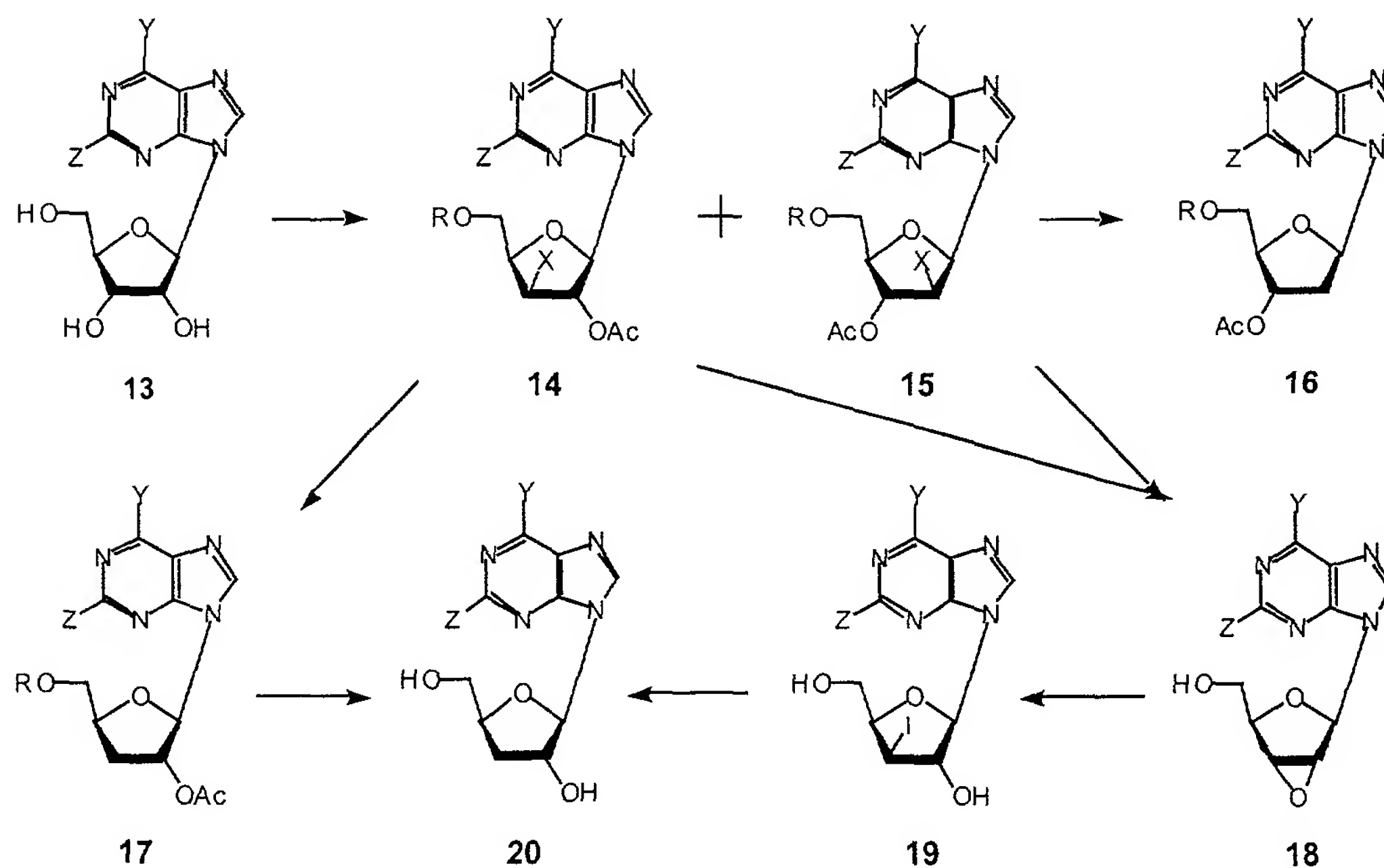


An example for the preparation of type **I-b** compound, purine nucleoside, is the synthesis of 3'-deoxypurine nucleosides (**Scheme 3**). Ribonucleoside **13** is treated with 2-methoxyisobutyryl halide ($X = \text{Cl}$ or Br) to give a mixture of 3'-halogeno-xylo-furanosyl

and 2'-halogeno-arabinofuranosyl derivatives (**14** and **15**). Hydrogenolysis, followed by chromatographic separation affords the corresponding 3'-deoxynucleoside **17** along with the 2'-deoxynucleoside **16**. Saponification of **17** gives the desired 3'-deoxynucleoside **20**. Treatment of the reaction mixture of **14** and **15** with a base gives the single epoxide **18** in quantitative yield, which, upon treatment with ammonium or sodium iodide affords exclusively the 3'-xylo-iodide **19**. Hydrogenolysis of **19** affords **20**. Reduction of **18** with a reducing agent such as Raney nickel, lithium aluminum hydride or sodium borohydride also yields **20**.

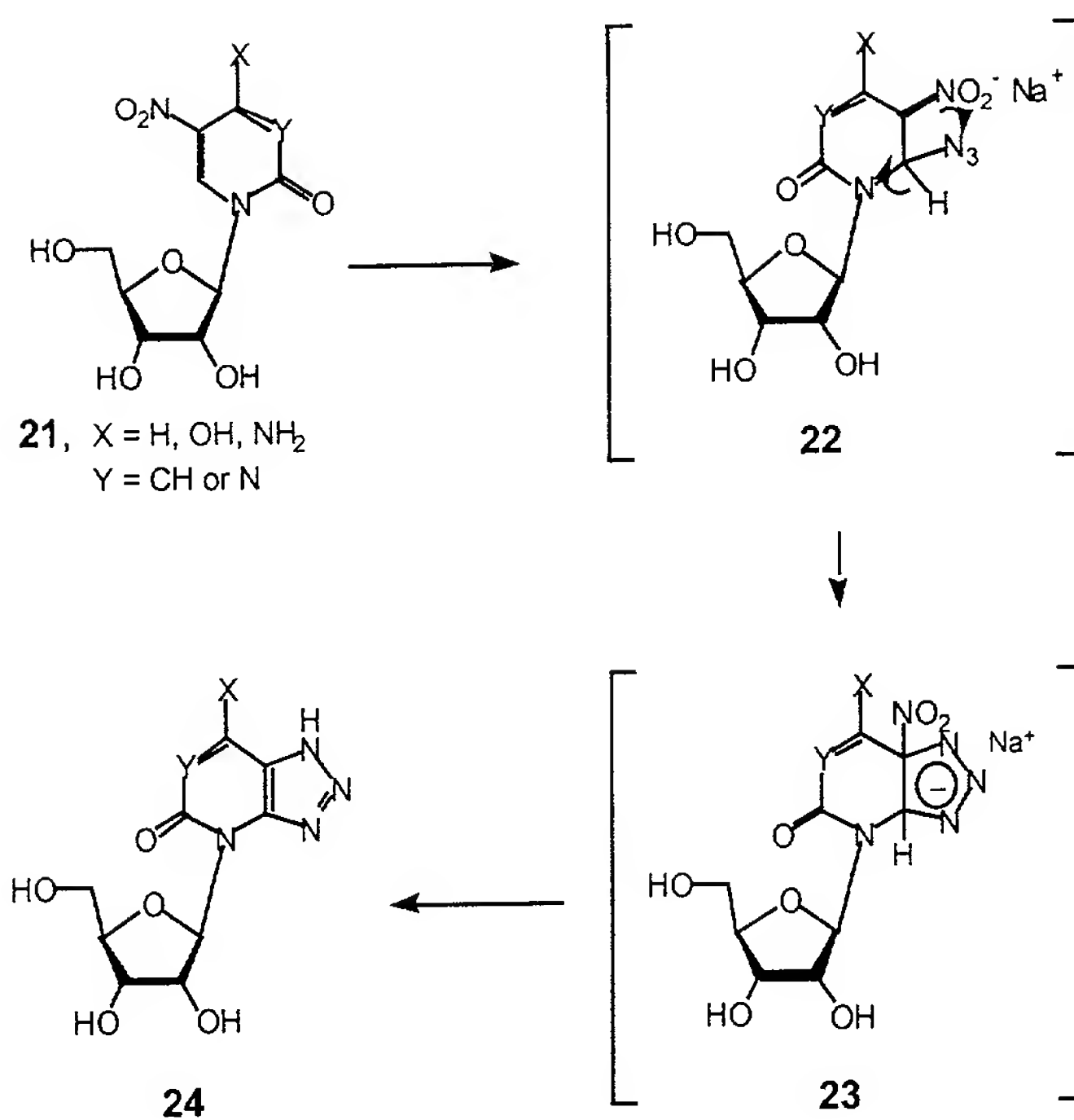
In a similar manner, starting from a purine L-ribonucleoside, the L-nucleoside counterpart of **20**, which belongs to **III-b**, can be synthesized.

Scheme 3



For the synthesis of a compound of formula **I-c**, the starting material is a 5-nitropyrimidine or pyridine nucleoside (**Scheme 4**). Treatment of 5-nitrouridine (**21**, vide supra) with azide ion in a solvent such as alcohol or dimethylformamide at a temperature range of from 20 °C to 100 °C, preferably from 25 °C to 80 °C. Nucleophilic attack of azide ion at C-6 of **21** results in the formation of *aci*-nitro salt **22** which cyclizes to **23**. Neutralization of **23** furnishes the bicyclic nucleoside **24**.

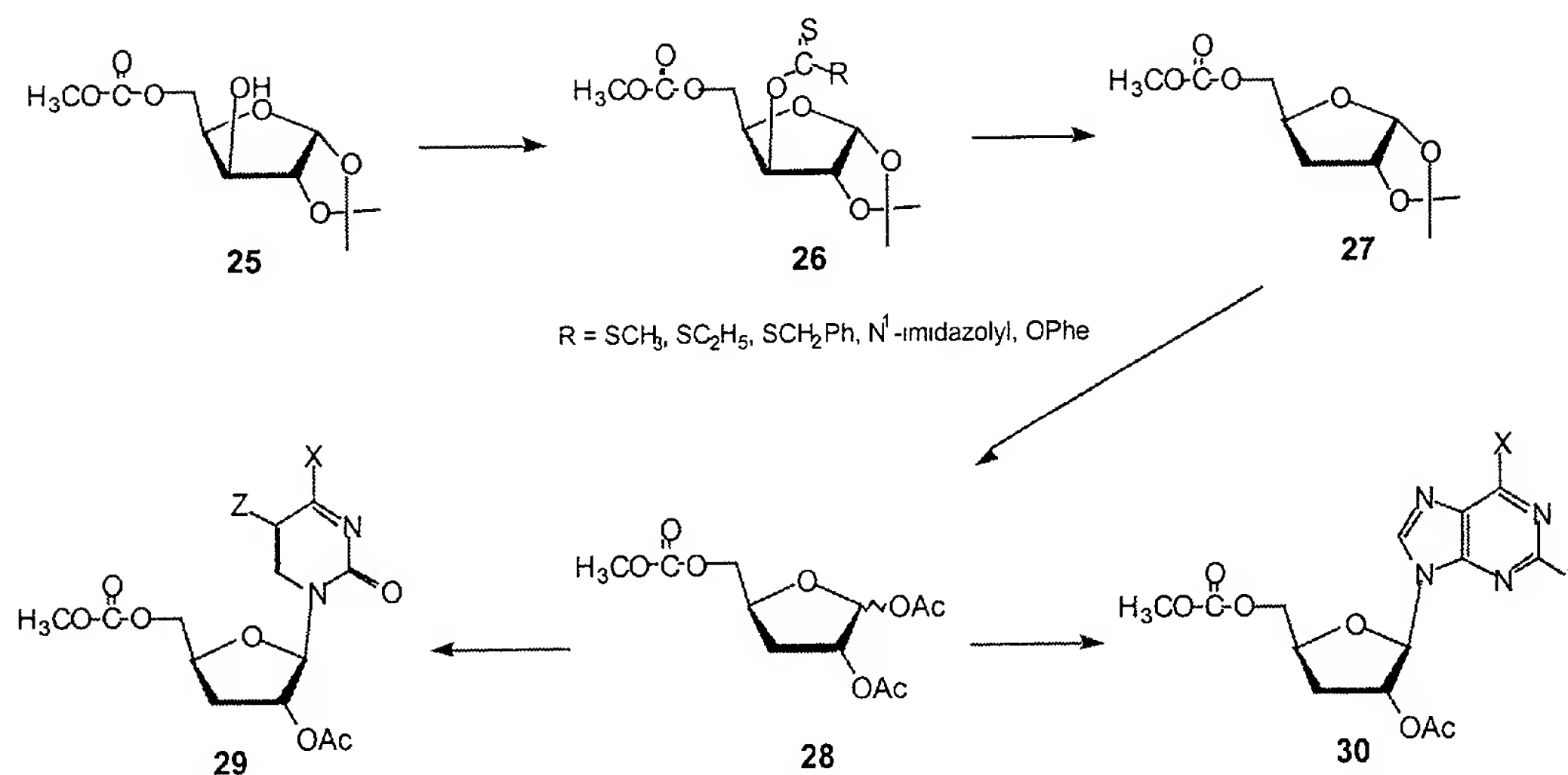
Scheme 4



(ii) Synthesis by condensation of an appropriate sugar with base.

The appropriate sugar derivatives must be prepared for condensation with the selected base. Though there are several methods for the synthesis of 3-deoxy-D-erythropentofuranose (3-deoxy-D-ribofuranose) derivatives (*see*: Lee, W. W. *et al.* J. Am. Chem. Soc., **1961**, *83*, 1906; Walton, E. *et al.* J. Am. Chem. Soc., **1964**, *86*, 2952; Lin, T.-S. *et al.* J. Med. Chem., **1991**, *34*, 693; Ozols, A. M. *et al.* Synthesis, **1980**, 557), new methods were developed for the present invention as shown in **Scheme 5**.

Scheme 5

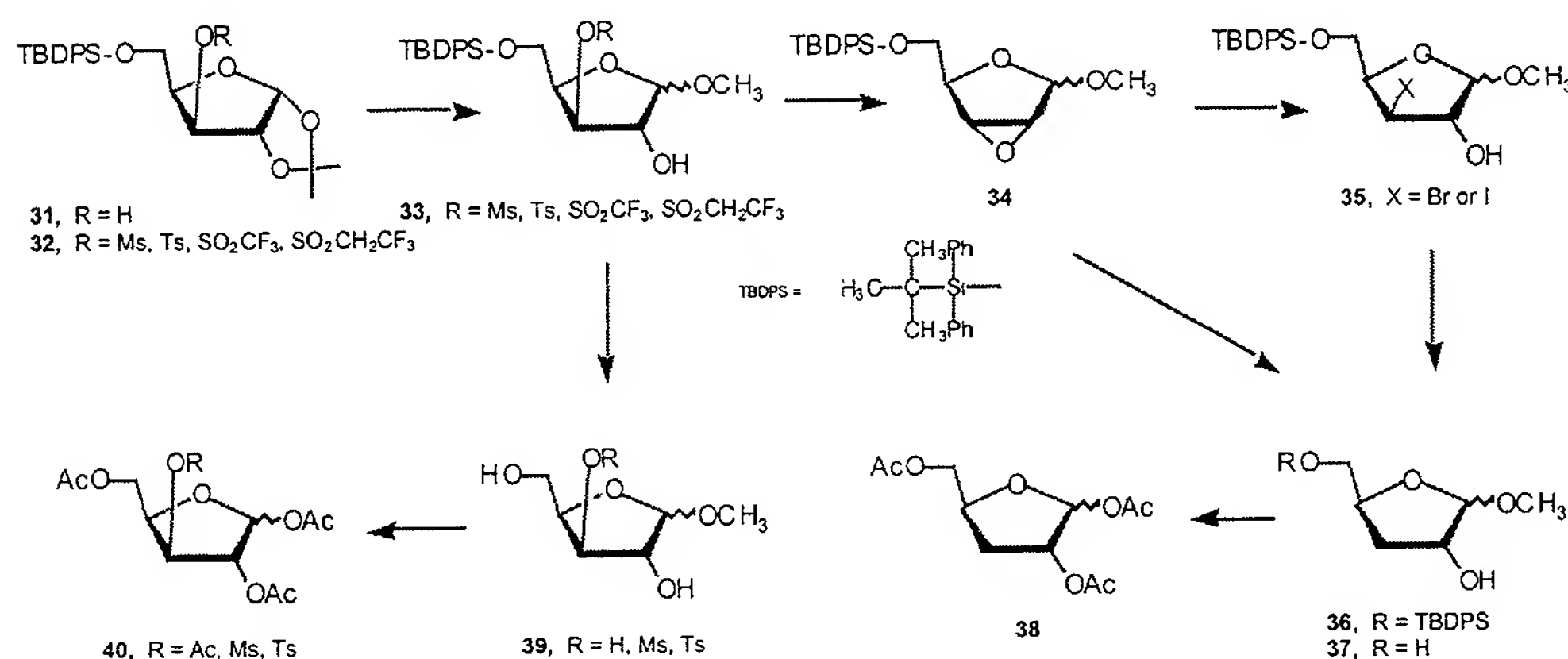


1,2-O-Isopropylidene-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- α -D-xylo-furanose (**25**) is converted into the corresponding 3-thiocarbonyl derivative **26**, followed by free radical deoxygenation using trialkyltin hydride in the presence of a radical initiator, such as 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile. The deoxygenated product **27** is acylated with a mixture of acetic acid, acetic anhydride and sulfuric acid to give **28**, which then is condensed with a silylated base using Vorbruggen's procedure (see: Niedballa, U. *et al.* *J. Org. Chem.*, **1976**, *41*, 2084; Vorbruggen, H. *et al.* *Chem. Ber.*, **1981**, *114*, 1234; Kazinierczuk, Z. *et al.* *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **1984**, *106*, 6379) to obtain the pyrimidine nucleoside **29** (Type I-a) or a related purine nucleoside (Type I-b). The 5-OH group can be alternatively protected with other acyl groups, such as benzoyls, *p*-nitrobenzoyls, *p*-chlorobenzoyls or *p*-methoxybenzoyls as well as other silyl groups, such as *t*-butyldimethylsilyl or *t*-butyldiphenyl groups. Similarly, L-xylose can be converted into the L-sugar counterpart of **25**, which can be further derivatized to attain the L-nucleoside of **30**.

Alternatively, as shown in Scheme 6, 1,2-O-isopropylidene-5-O-(*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl)- α -D-xylofuranose (**31**) can be sulfonylated with mesyl chloride, tosyl chloride or tresyl chloride in pyridine to obtain **32**. After methanolysis of **32**, the methyl xyloside **33** can be treated with a base, such as sodium methoxide in methanol, to afford the ribo-epoxide **34**. Opening of the epoxide **34** with lithium aluminum hydride stereoselectively produces 3-deoxy sugar **36**. Treatment of **34** with lithium bromide or sodium iodide in acetone or 2-butanone gives 3-halogeno-3-deoxy xyloside **35**.

Reductive dehalogenation of **35** affords **36**. Removal of the 5'-silyl protecting group with a fluoride ion source, such as tri-n-butylammonium fluoride in tetrahydrofuran or triethylammonium hydrogen fluoride gives **37**. Acylation of **37** with acetic anhydride and acetic acid in the presence of sulfuric acid gives tri-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-D-ribofuranose **38**. Also, fluoride treatment converts **33** into **39**, which, upon acetylation, affords **40**. These acetylated sugars **38** and **40** can be condensed with pertrimethylsilylated pyrimidine or purine bases using Vorbrueggen's procedure to give the 3'-modified nucleoside. The *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl protecting group can be replaced by *t*-butyldimethylsilyl group.

Scheme 6

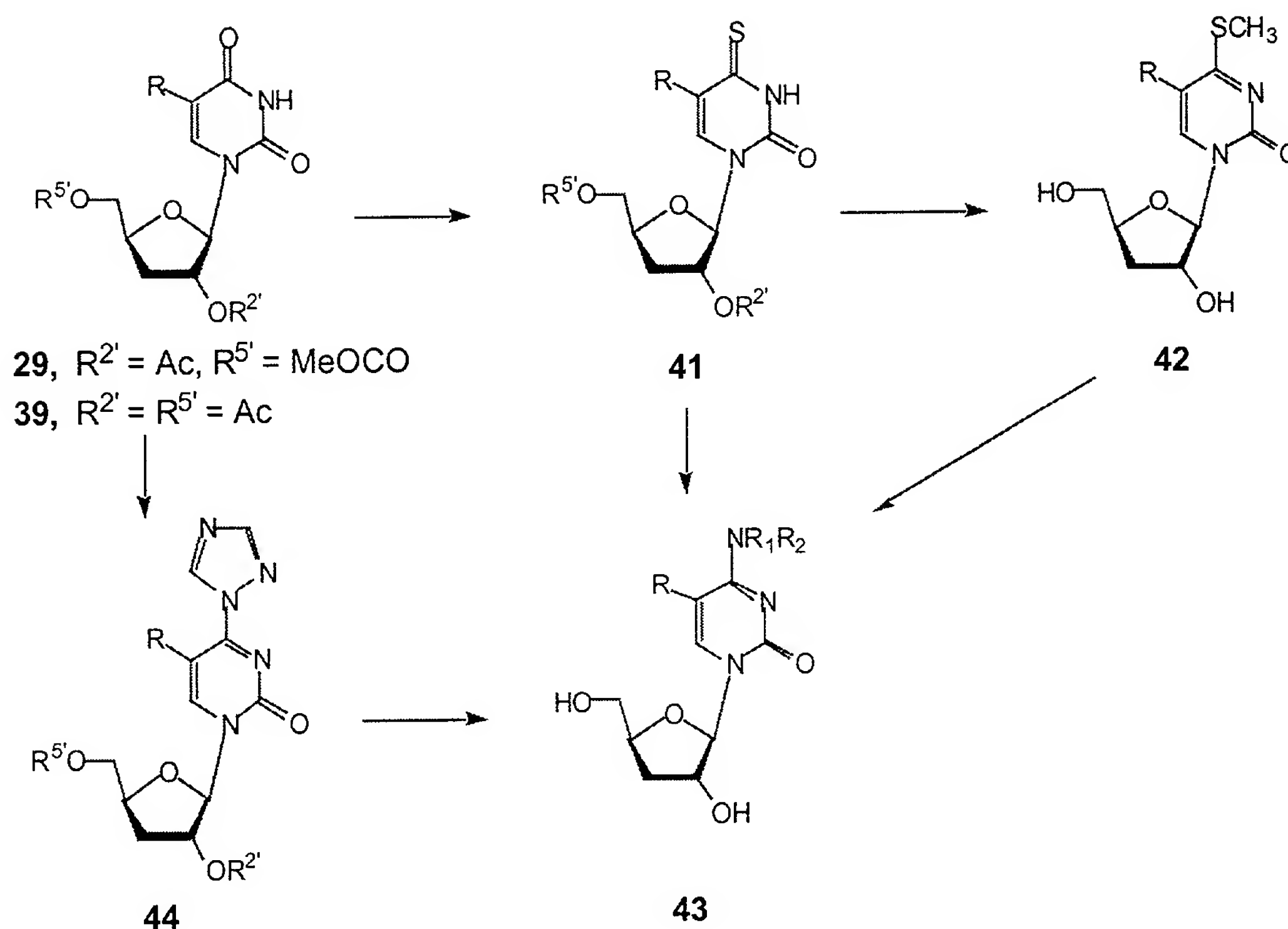


(iii) Post synthetic modifications (1-6)

(a) Modification at C-4 of pyrimidine nucleosides (I-a and III-a)

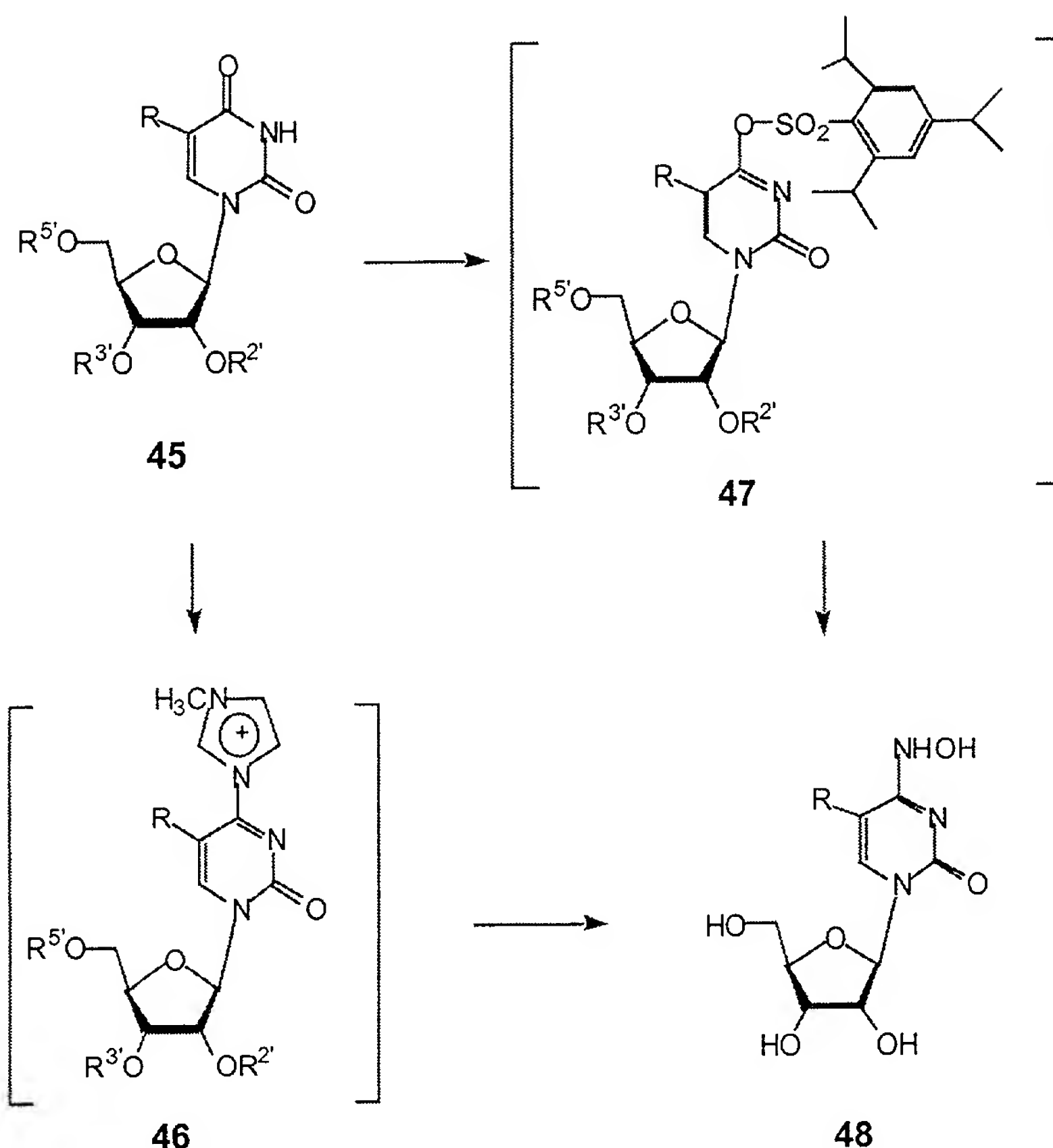
After condensation of **28** or **38** with uracil or 5-substituted uracil, the protected 3'-deoxyuridine derivative (**29**, R^{5'} = CH₃OCO, R^{2'} = Ac or R^{5'} = R^{2'} = Ac) is treated with phosphorus pentasulfide in pyridine or Lawesson's reagent in toluene to give 4-thiouracil nucleoside **41**, which, upon treatment with ammonia, is converted into 3'-deoxycytidine (**43**, R₁ = R₂ = H). Alternatively, methylation of **41** with methyl iodide or dimethyl sulfate in base gives the 4-S-methyl derivative **42**. Displacement of the 4-S-methyl group of **42** with various nucleophiles affords the corresponding N⁴-substituted 3'-deoxycytidines **43**. Also, **29** can be converted into the 4-(triazol-2-yl) derivative **44**, which can be reacted with ammonia or various amines to give **43**. Alternatively, treatment of **44** with various alcohols or phenols affords the corresponding 4-O-substituted-3'-deoxyuridines.

Scheme 7



Alternatively, a uracil nucleoside, such as a sugar-protected uridine **45** ($R = \text{H}$) is converted into the 4-(methylimidazolium) **46** (Scheme 8) or 4-O-(2,4,6-triisopropylbenzenesulfonyl) intermediate **47** and then treated with a nucleophile, such as hydroxylamine, to give the corresponding C-4 modified nucleoside, such as N^4 -hydroxycytidine (**48**, $R = \text{H}$).

Scheme 8



In similar manners starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-a** nucleosides are prepared.

5

(b) *Modification at C-5 of pyrimidine nucleosides (I-a and III-a)*

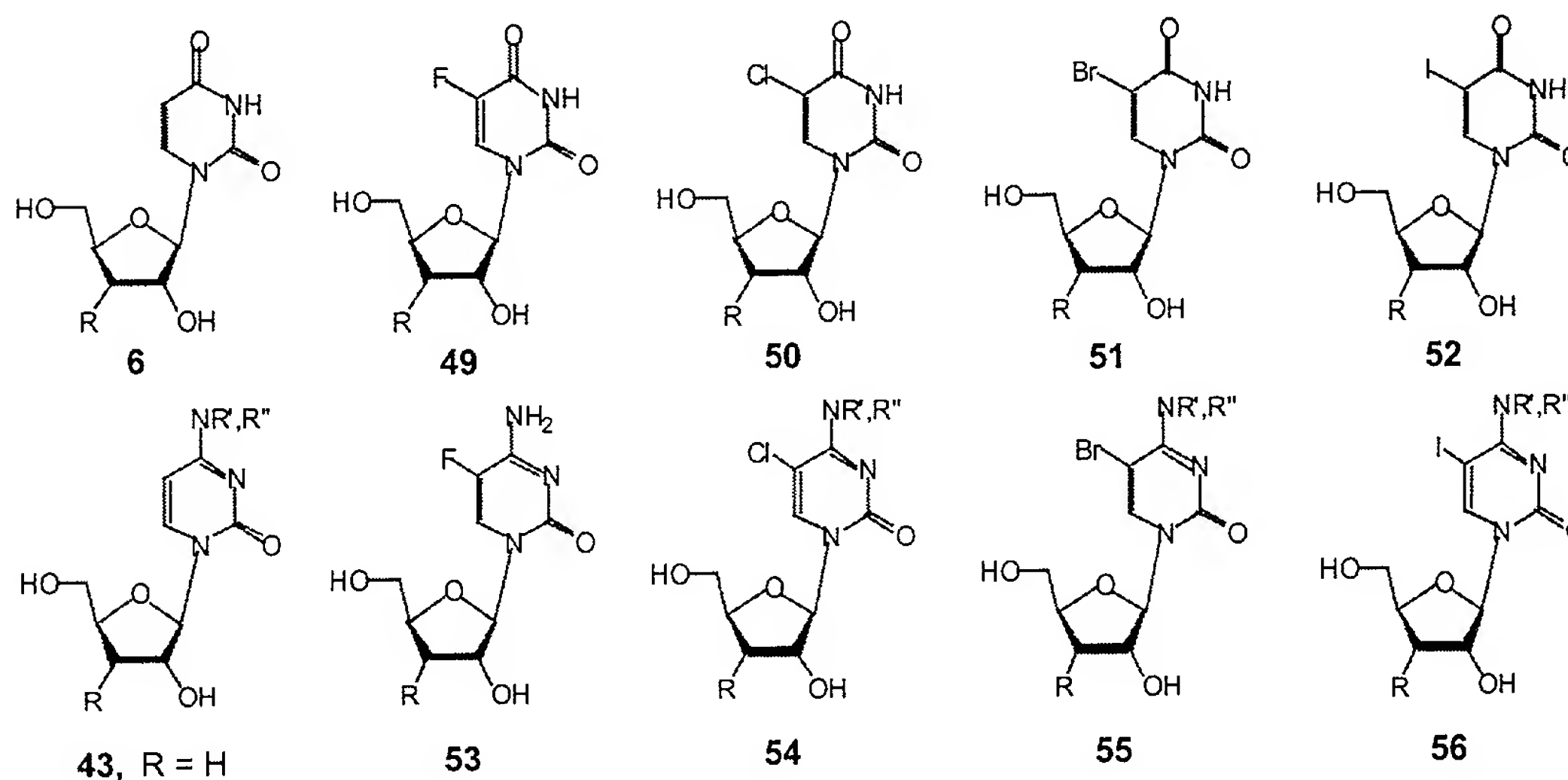
(i) Halogenation (Scheme 9)

3'-Deoxyuridine (**6**, R = H) can be fluorinated with fluorinating agents, some non-limiting examples include fluorine in acetic acid, selectfluor in an inert solvent or solvents such as tetrahydrofuran or cesium fluoroxisulfate in alcohol (see: Stovber, S. *et al.* J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun., **1983**, 563), to give 5-fluoro-3'-deoxyuridine (**49**). The 5-chloro, 5-bromo and 5-iodouridine derivatives (**50-52**) are obtained using the appropriate *N*-halogenosuccinimide. Treatment of **6** with bromine in water or iodine in acetic acid in the presence of an oxidizing agent such as nitric acid affords the 5-bromo- or 5-iodo-uracil nucleoside, respectively. The cytosine derivative **43** (R=H) also can be converted into the

15

corresponding 5-halogeno derivative (44-56). 5-Fluoro-3'-deoxycytidine (53, R = H) is prepared by condensing 28 or 38 with 5-fluorocytosine, followed by saponification.

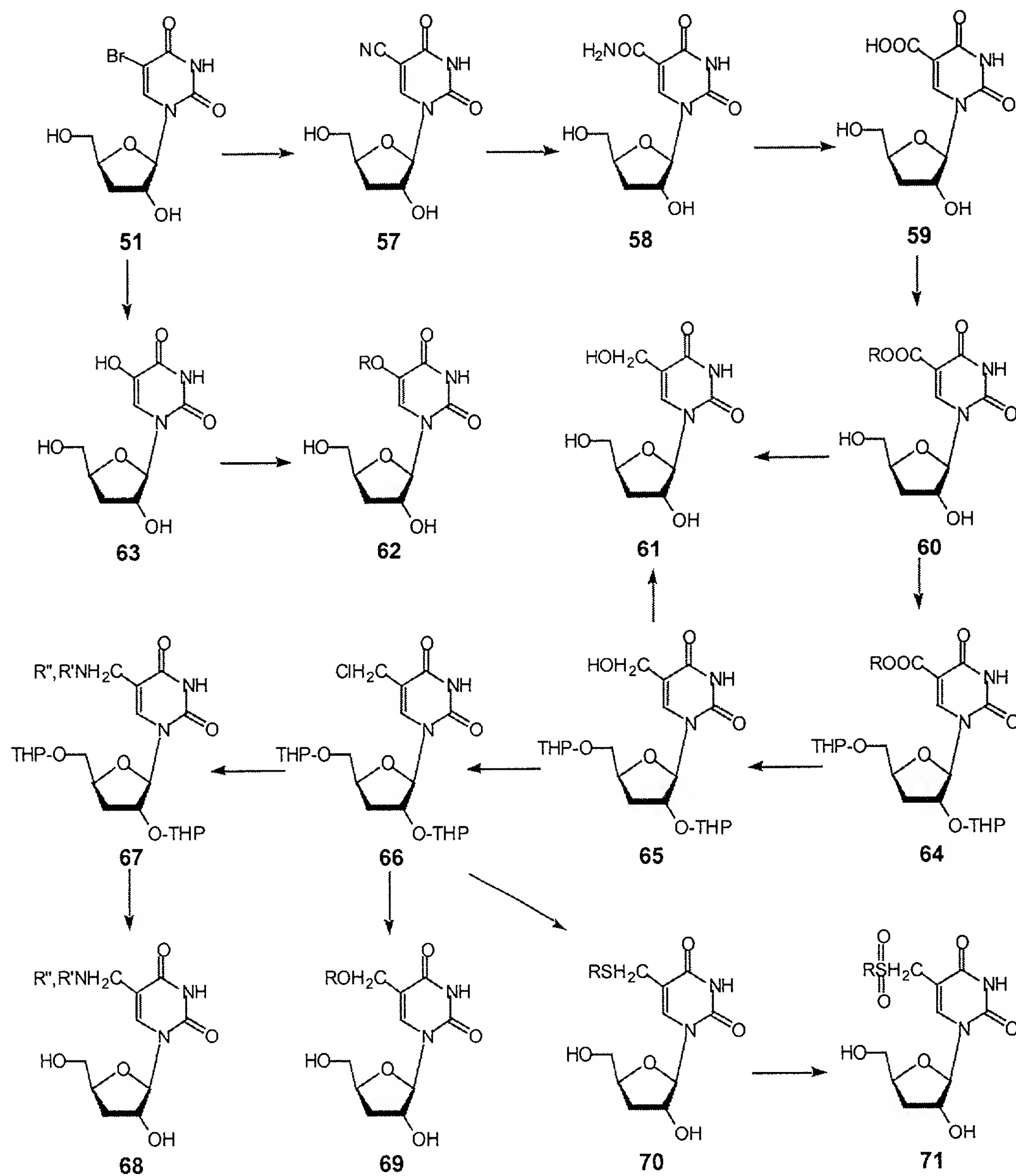
Scheme 9



In similar manners starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-a** nucleosides are prepared. **Scheme 10** depicts the conversion of the brominated compound **51** into 5-hydroxy-3'-deoxyuridine (**63**) by treatment with sodium bicarbonate solution. Alkylation of **55** with an alkyl iodide with base affords **62**. Prolonged reaction of **51** with an alkali metal cyanide gives the 5-cyano-uracil derivative **57**, which can be hydrated to 5-carboxamide **58** and 5-carboxylic acid **59**. Conversion of **59** into an alkyl ester **60**, followed by reduction with sodium borohydride yields the 5-hydroxymethyl derivative **61**. Compound **60** alternatively can be treated with dihydropyran and a catalytic amount of acid, such as hydrochloric, sulfuric or *p*-toluenesulfonic acid, to yield the 2',5'-di-O-protected nucleoside **64**. Sodium borohydride reduction of **64** affords **65**. Due to allylic nature of **65**, treatment with mesyl chloride or tosyl chloride gives the 5-chloromethyl-uracil derivative **66**. Alkoxide treatment of **66**, followed by deprotection gives the corresponding 5-alkoxymethyl-3'- deoxyuridine (**69**). Similarly, reaction of various amines with **66** affords **67**, which, upon mild acid hydrolysis, is converted into **68**. Reaction with **66** and thiourea gives mercaptomethyl derivative (**70**, R=H), while treatment with sodium mercaptide gives thioalkyl derivative **70** (R=alkyl), which can be oxidized with hydrogen peroxide to the corresponding sulfone (**71**). In similar manners

starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-a** nucleosides are prepared.

Scheme 10



5

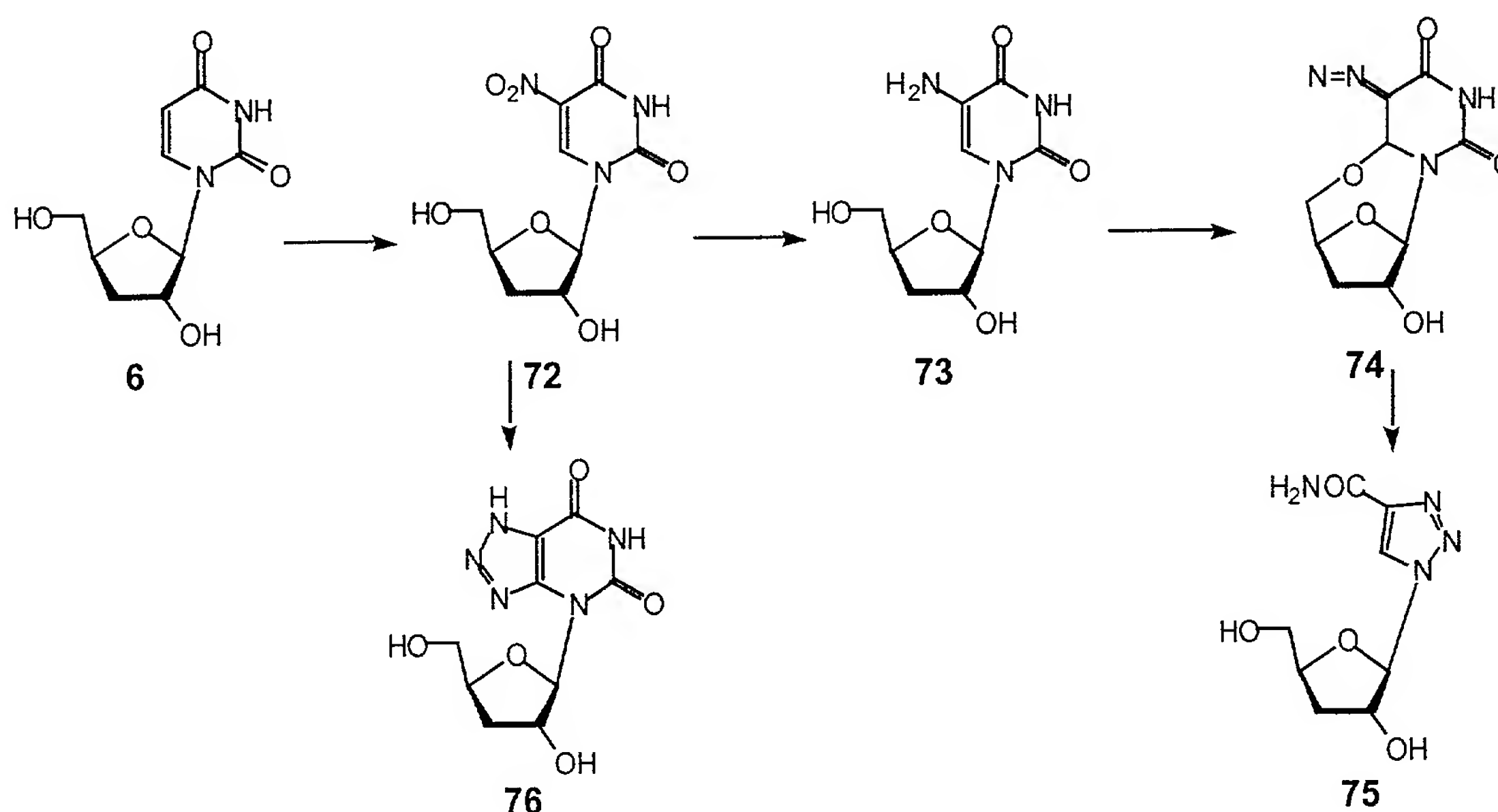
(ii) Nitration (Scheme 11)

Treatment of uridine **6** with nitronium tetrafluoroborate in sulfolane (*see*: Huang, G.-F. *et al.* J. Org. Chem., 1977, 42, 3821; Huang, G.-F. *et al.* J. Carbohyd. Nucleosides

Nucleotides, 1978, 5, 317) affords the corresponding 5-nitro derivative **72**. Catalytic hydrogenation of the nitro-nucleoside **72** gives the corresponding 5-amino derivative **73**. Diazotization of **73** with nitrous acid gives the 5-diazo-3'-deoxyuridine (**74**), which, upon hydrolysis, can be converted into the 1,2,3-triazole **75**. Similar conversions of 5-aminouridine into ribosyltriazole have been reported (*see*: Roberts, M. *et al.* *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1952, 74, 668; Thurber, T. C. *et al.* *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1973, 95, 3081; *J. Org. Chem.*, 1976, 41, 1041). Reaction of **72** with sodium azide in dimethylformamide affords the triazolopyrimidine (8-azapurine) nucleoside **76**.

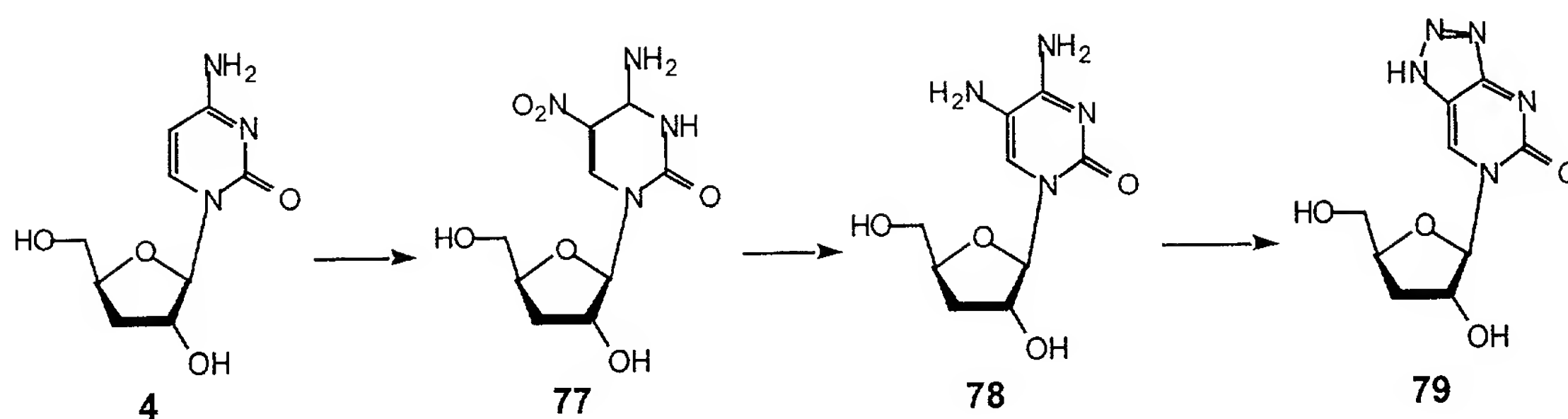
In similar manners starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-a** nucleosides are prepared.

Scheme 11



A similar sequence of reactions is shown in **Scheme 12**, starting from 3'-deoxycytidine **4** gives 5-nitro-3'-deoxycytidine (**77**), followed by 5-amino-3'-deoxycytidine (**78**). However, treatment of **78** with nitrous acid results in the formation of another 8-azapurine nucleoside **79**. The same sequence of reactions can be applied to the corresponding L-nucleosides **III-a**.

Scheme 12

(iii) Hydroxymethylation

5 Treatment of **6** ($R=H$, $R^{5'}=R^{3'}=R^{3''}=H$) with formaldehyde in base such as aqueous potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide gives 5-hydroxymethyl-3'-deoxyuridine (**80**) as shown in **Scheme 13**, which is converted into 5-ethoxymethyl-3'-deoxyuridine (**81**, $X = OCH_2CH_3$) by treatment with ethanolic hydrogen chloride. Compound **80** ($R^{5'}=R^{3'}=$

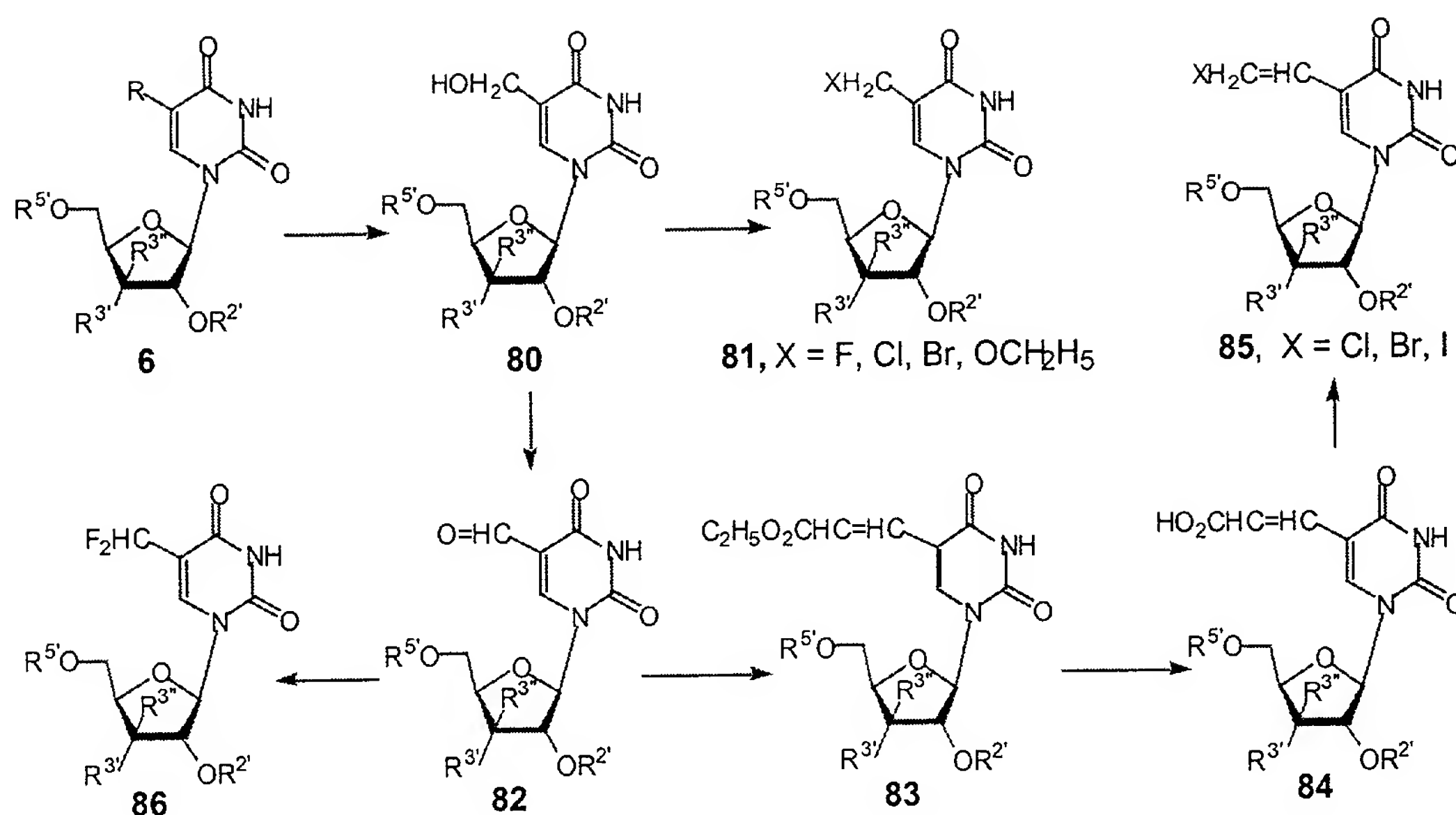
10 TBDPS) can also be prepared from the thymine derivative **6** ($R = CH_3$, $R^{5'}=R^{3'}=$ TBDPS) by photochemical bromination to **81** ($X = Br$), followed by hydrolysis (Matulic-Adamic, J. *et al.* Chem. Pharm. Bull., **1988**, *36*, 1554). Compound **80** is converted into 5-chloromethyl derivative (**81**, $X = Cl$) by action of hydrochloric acid or 5-fluoromethyl derivative (**81**, $X = F$) by treatment with diethylaminosulfur trifluoride (DAST).

15 Oxidation of **80** ($R^{5'}=R^{2'}=$ TBDPS, $R^{3''}=H$) with manganese dioxide affords the 5-formyl derivative **82**, which is a good substrate for various reactions including Wittig, Wittig-Horner, Grignard or Reformatsky reaction. For example, treatment of **82** with ethoxymethylene triphenylphosphorane $[EtOC(=O)CH=PPh_3]$ gives 5-(2-ethoxycarbonyl)ethylene-3'-deoxyuridine derivative (**83**), which can be converted into 5-ethylene-, 5-(2-chloroethylene)- or 5-(2-bromoethylene)-3'-deoxyuridine derivative (**85**)

20 by way of the 5-(ethylene-2-carboxylic acid) derivative **84**. 5-Difluoromethyl derivative **86** can be obtained by treatment of **82** with DAST. These synthetic pathways are shown in **Scheme 13**.

The same sequence of reactions can be applied to the corresponding L-nucleosides **III-a**.

Scheme 13



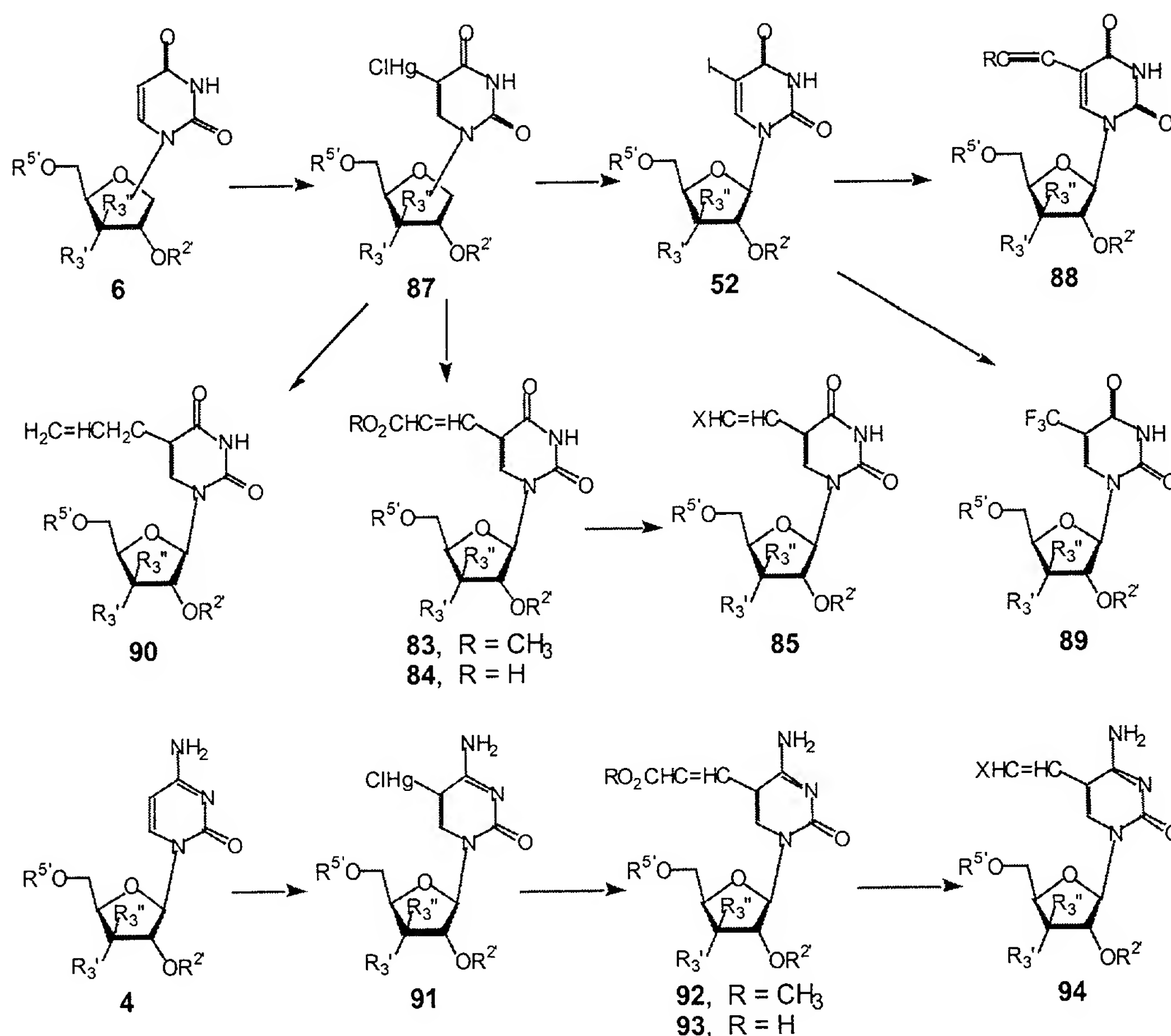
(iv) Metallation

5 In aqueous buffer, **6** or **4** can be treated with mercuric acetate, followed by sodium chloride, to give the corresponding 5-chloromercuri derivative **87** or **91**, respectively (Scheme 14), in quantitative yield. Reaction of **87** or **91** with iodine in ethanol gives the 5-iodo derivative **52** or **56**, respectively. Compound **52** can be converted to 5-ethynyl derivatives **88** by reaction with 1-alkynes and bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium chloride (Ph_3P)₂PdCl₂ in the presence of cuprous iodide and triethylamine. Treatment with trifluoroiodomethane and powdered copper, on the other hand, converts **52** into 5-trifluoromethyl-3'-deoxyuridine **89**. Treatment of **87** with lithium palladium chloride (Li_2PdCl_4) and allyl chloride affords 5-allyl-3'-deoxyuridine (**90**). Methyl acrylate reacts with **87** or **91** in the presence of Li_2PdCl_4 to give 5-(*E*)-(2-methoxy-carbonyl)vinyl-3'-deoxyuridine (**83**) or -cytidine (**92**), respectively. Saponification of **83** to **84**, followed by *N*-halogenosuccinimide yields 5-(*E*)-halogenovinyluracil nucleoside **85** (X=Cl, Br or I). Thermal decarboxylation of **84** gives 5-vinyluracil derivative **85** (X=H). Compound **85** (X = H) can also be prepared by treatment of **52** with vinyl acetate in the presence of palladium acetate-triphenylphosphine complex. Similarly, **91** can be converted into the corresponding acrylate derivative **92**, which, after hydrolysis to **93**, is reacted with *N*-halogenosuccinimide to give 5-(*E*)-(2-halogenovinyl)-3'-deoxycytidines (**94**). It should

be noted that catalytic hydrogenation of 5-vinyl derivatives gives the corresponding 5-ethyl-pyrimidine nucleosides. Hydration of 5-ethynyl-3'-deoxyuridine (88, R = H) with diluted sulfuric acid gives 5-acetyl-3'-deoxyuridine in high yield.

In a similar manner but starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-a** nucleosides are prepared.

Scheme 14

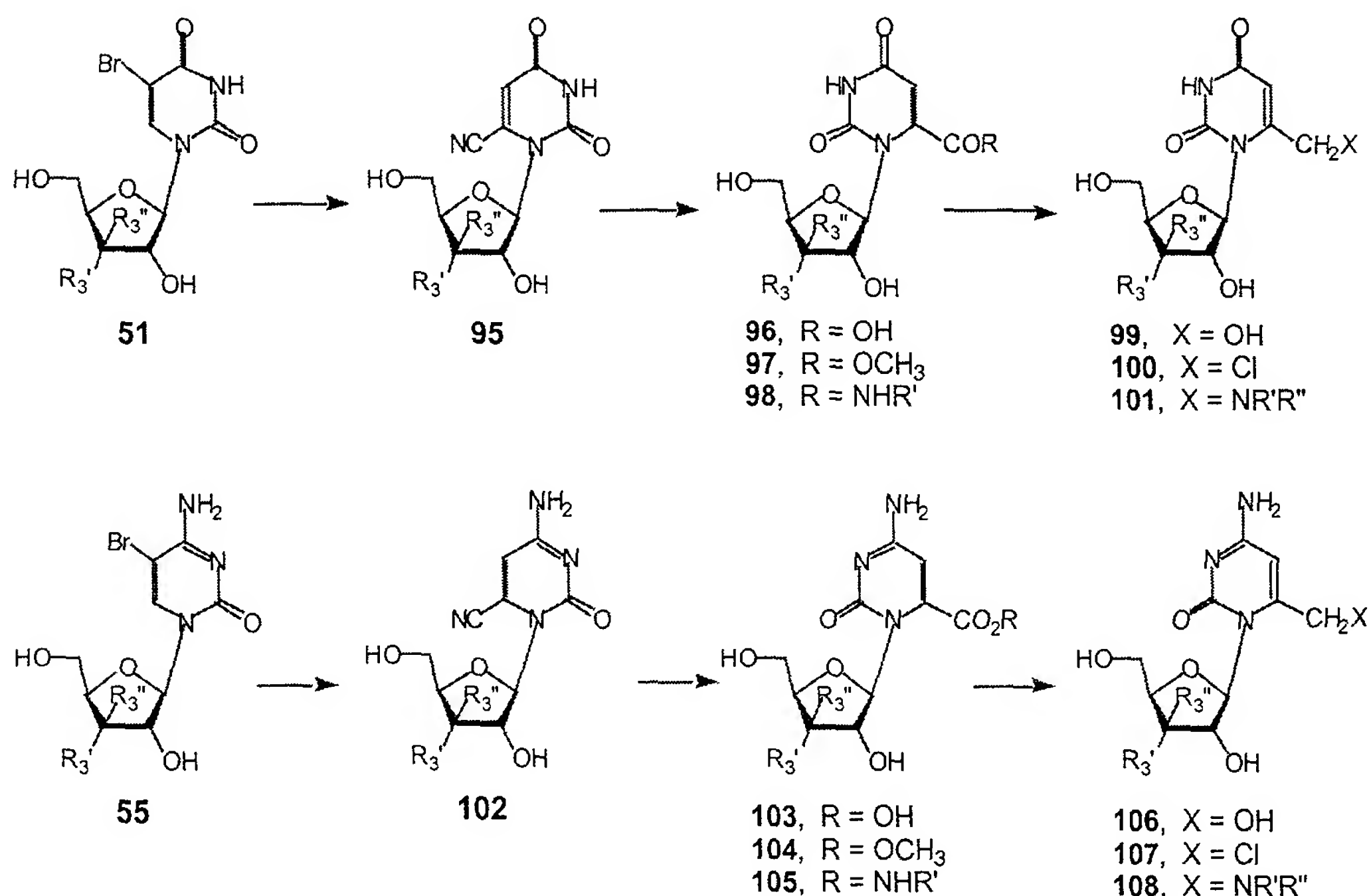


(c) Modification at C-6 of pyrimidine nucleosides (**I-a** and **III-a**)

Treatment of 5-bromo-3'-deoxyuridine (**51**, Scheme 15) with sodium or potassium cyanide in dimethylformamide at room temperature affords 6-cyano-3'-deoxyuridine (**95**) in high yield. Further treatment at elevated temperature converts **95** into the 5-cyano isomer **59**. Hydrolysis of **95** furnishes 3'-deoxyorotidine **96**. Methanolysis of **95** gives the

methyl ester **97**, which, upon aminolysis, is converted into **98**, wherein R' is lower alkyl
 of from C₁ to C₆ or benzyl or phenyl group. Reduction of **97** with sodium borohydride
 affords 6-hydroxymethyl derivative **99**, which is converted into 6-chloromethyluracil
 nucleoside **100** by action of hydrochloric acid. Reaction with various amines, **100** is
 converted into the corresponding 6-aminomethyl-3'-deoxyuridine (**101**). A similar
 sequence of reactions starting from 3'-deoxycytidine (**55**) gives 3'-deoxycytidin-6-yl-
 carboxylic acid (**103**) or its methyl ester **104** via the 6-cyano intermediate **102**. Various 6-
 carbox-amidocytosine nucleosides **105** can be obtained by treatment of **104** with the
 corresponding amines. Borohydride reduction of **104** affords 6-hydroxymethyl derivative
104 which can be converted into 6-chloromethyl-3'-deoxycytidine **107** by action of
 hydrochloric acid. Compound **107** can be converted into the corresponding 6-
 aminomethyl-3'-deoxycytidine (**108**) by reaction with various amines. The same sequence
 of reactions can be applied to the corresponding L-nucleosides **III-a**.

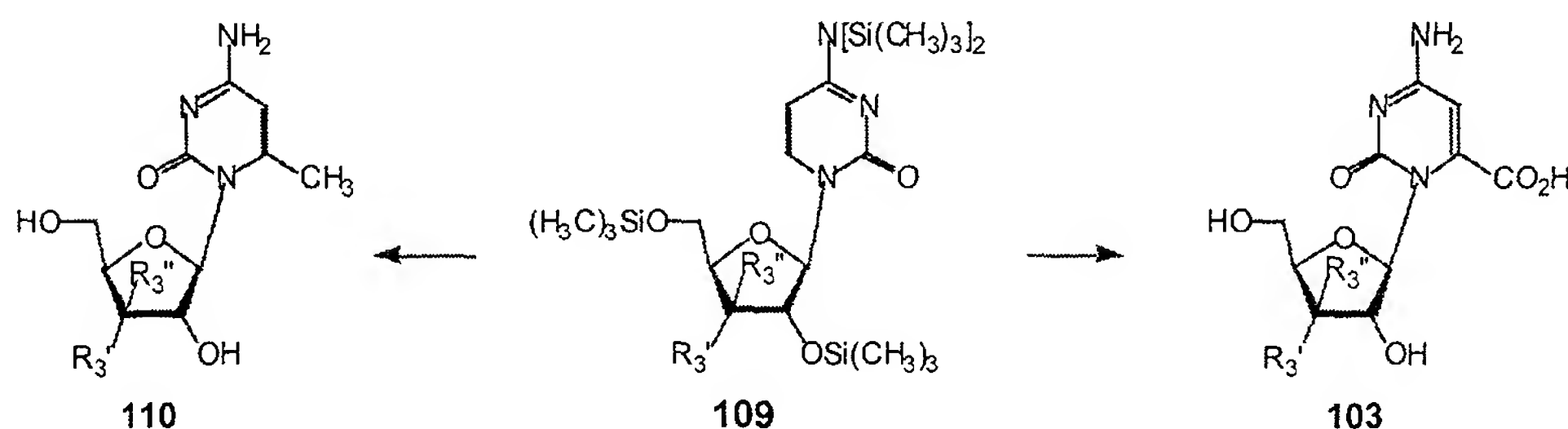
Scheme 15



Further derivatization is shown in **Scheme 16**. Lithiation of uracil and cytosine
 nucleosides occurs at C-6. (see: Tanaka, H. *et al.* Tetrahedron Lett., 1979, 4755;

Sergueeva, Z. A. *et al.* Nucleosides Nucleotides Nucleic Acids, 2000, 19, 275) Thus, treatment of fully trimethylsilylated 3'-deoxycytidine (109, $R^{3'} = R^{3''} = H$) with *n*-butyllithium at -45 °C, followed by treatment with methyl iodide or carbon dioxide, gives 6-methyl-3'-deoxycytidine (110) or 3'-deoxycytidine-6-carboxylic acid (103), respectively. In a similar manner but starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-a** nucleosides are prepared.

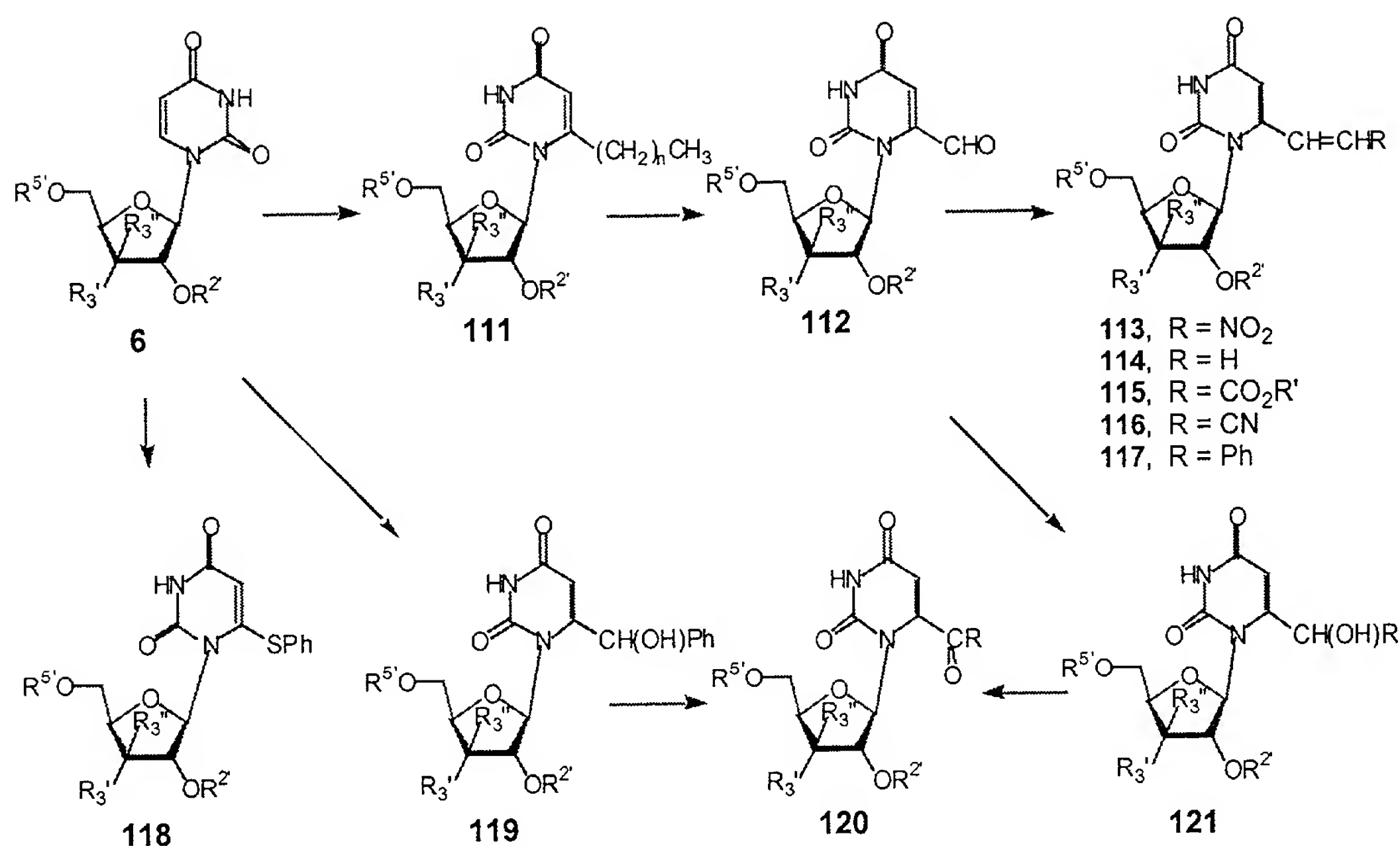
Scheme 16



Treatment of 2',5'-di-O-(tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-3'-deoxyuridine (6, $R^{2'} = R^{5'} = THP$, $R^{3'} = R^{3''} = H$) with lithium diisopropylamide in tetrahydrofuran at -78 °C and subsequent reaction with alkyl halide result in the formation of 6-alkyl-3'-deoxyuridines (111). Oxidation of 111 ($n = 0$) with selenium dioxide gives 3'-deoxyuridine-6-carboxaldehyde (112), which, upon treatment with nitromethane in the presence of base gives the nitroalkene 113. Compound 112 reacts with various Wittig reagents to give the corresponding olefins 114-117. Also, Grignard treatment of 112 gives 6-hydroxyalkyl derivatives 121. Oxidation of 121 affords the corresponding 6-acyl derivatives 120 ($R = alkyl$). On the other hand lithiated 6 ($R^{5'} = R^{2'} = THP$, $R^{3'} = R^{3''} = H$) with benzaldehyde produces 6-hydroxybenzyl derivative 119 which is converted into 6-benzoyl-3'-deoxyuridine (120, $R=Ph$) by mild oxidation. Also, reaction of lithiated 6 with diphenyldisulfide affords 6-phenylthio-3'-deoxyuridine 118, as shown in Scheme 17.

In a similar manner but starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-a** nucleosides are prepared.

Scheme 17

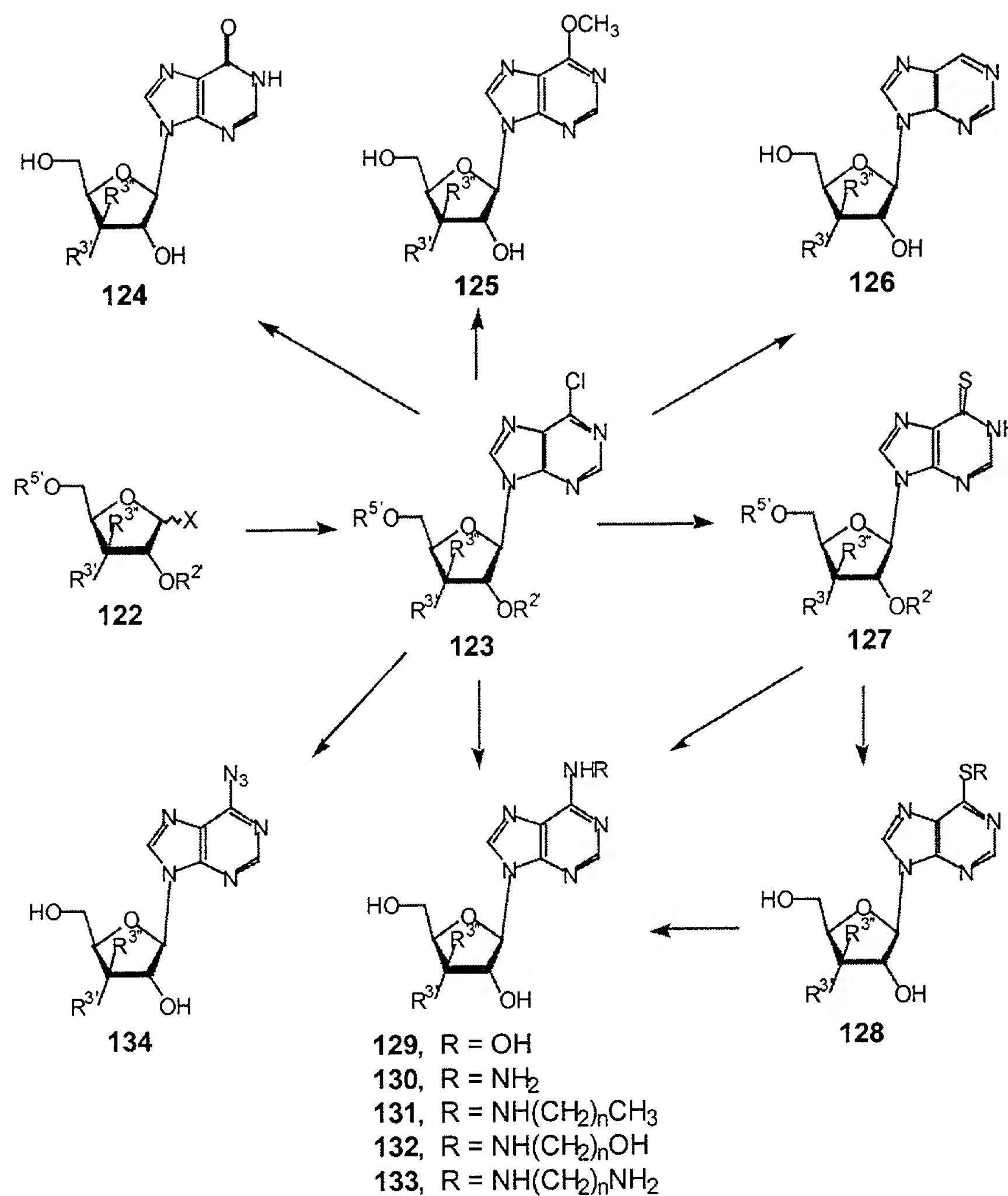


(d) Modification at C-6 of purine nucleosides (I-b and III-b)

Compound 28 or 38 is converted into halogenase 122 (Scheme 18) by treatment with hydrogen chloride or hydrogen bromide in acetic acid or hydrogen bromide in dichloromethane and condensed with 6-chloropurine by the sodio procedure in acetonitrile affords 3'-deoxynucleoside 123. Aqueous sodium or potassium hydroxide treatment of 123 gives 3'-deoxyinosine (124). Treatment of 123 with sodium methoxide in methanol affords 6-O-methyl-3'-deoxyinosine (125). Mild saponification, followed by catalytic hydrogenolysis of 123 results in the production of 3'-deoxynebularine (126). Thiourea reacts with 123 to give 6-thiopurine nucleoside 127, which is S-alkylated to 128. Compounds 123, 127 and 128 readily react with various amines, hydroxylamine, hydrazine and aminoalcohols to give 3'-deoxyadenosine analogues 129-133. Treatment of 123 with sodium azide gives 6-azidopurine nucleoside 134.

The same sequence of reactions can be applied to the corresponding L-nucleosides III-b.

Scheme 18

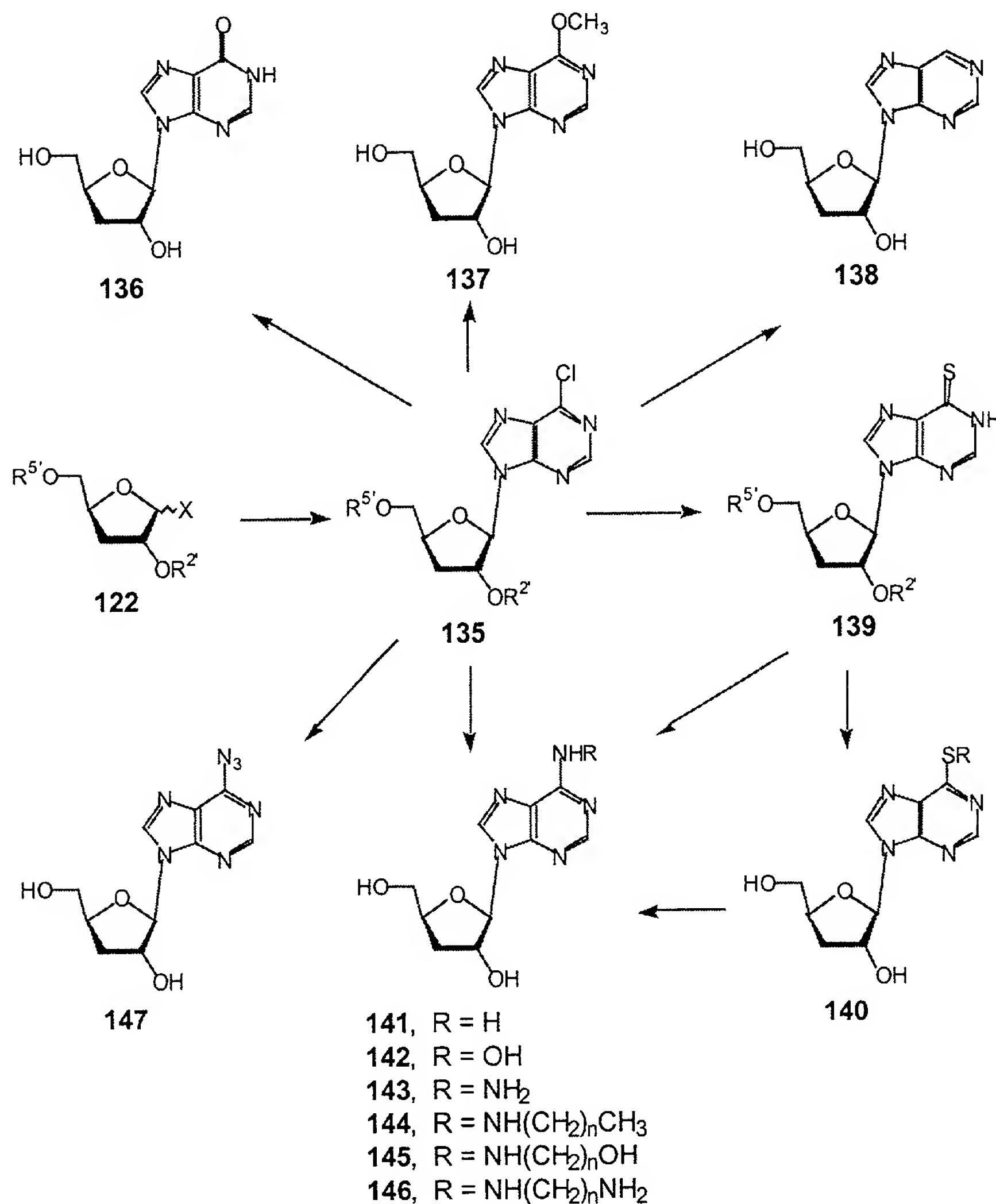


These compounds can also be synthesized by nitrous acid treatment of 6-hydrazidopurine nucleoside **130**. Reduction of **129**, **130** or **134** gives 3'-deoxyadenosine (i.e., cordycepin). Compound **125** or cordycepin are expected to be converted in vivo into **124** by action of adenosine deaminase. 6-Unsubstituted purine nucleoside **126** may be oxidized in vivo to **124**.

Condensation of **122** with 2-substituted-6-chloropurine gives the 2-substituted analogue of **123**. The 6-chloro functionality can be converted into various functional groups by nucleophilic substitution reactions. Thus, 2-amino-6-chloropurine is converted into **135** (Scheme 19), which can be converted various 2-aminopurine nucleosides (**136-147**). It should be noted that the 2,6-diamino- (**141**) and 2-amino-purine (**138**) nucleosides

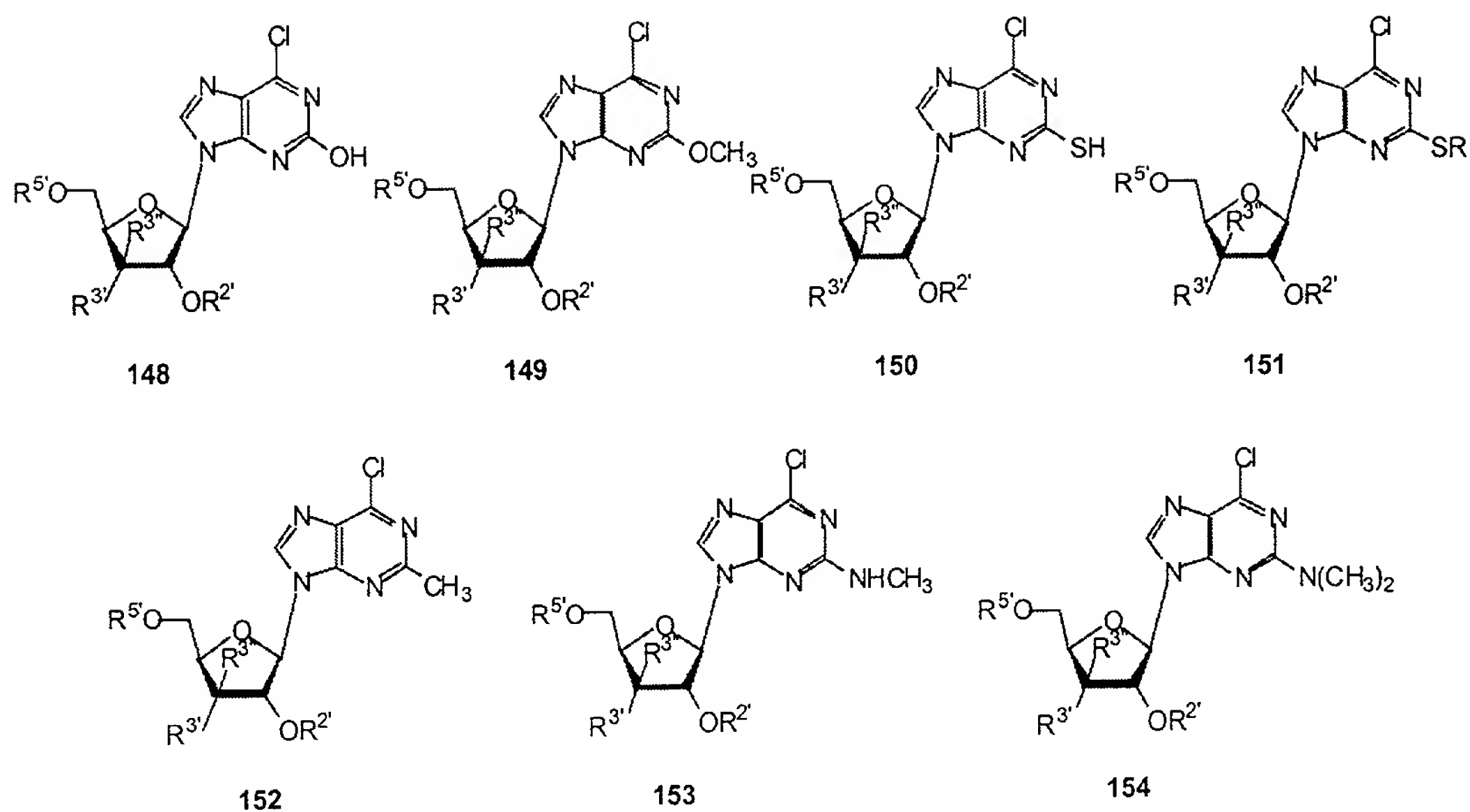
are potential precursors for 3'-deoxy-guanosine (136). In a similar manner but starting from the L-nucleoside counterparts, the corresponding **III-b** nucleosides are prepared.

Scheme 19



5 In a similar manner, 2-oxo-, 2-methoxy-, 2-thio-, 2-alkylmercapto-, 2-methyl-, 2-methyl-amino- or 2-dimethylamino-purine nucleosides (148-154) are synthesized (Scheme 20). Also, in a similar manner but using the corresponding L-nucleosides, compounds of **III-b** type are prepared.

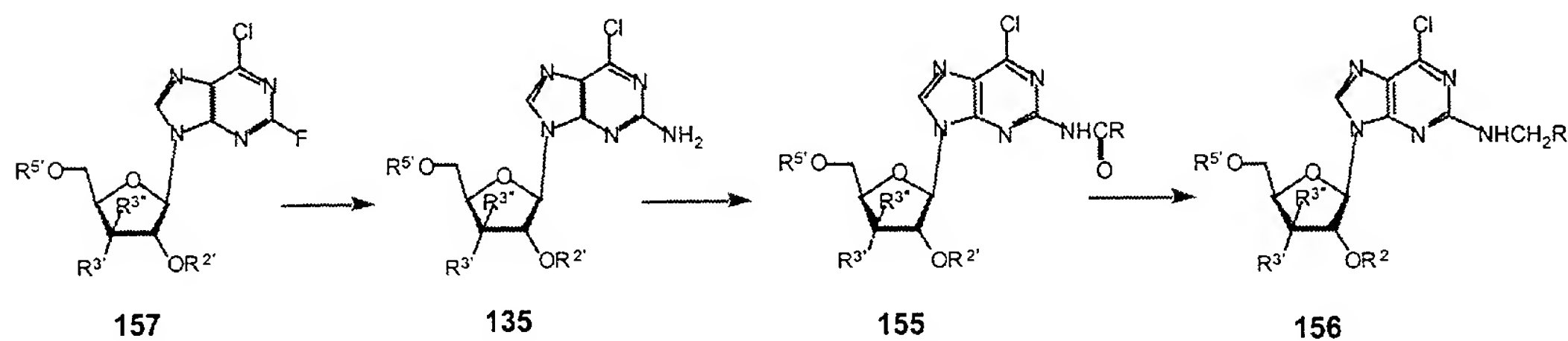
Scheme 20



(e) Modification at C-2 of purine nucleosides (*I-b* and *III-b*.)

The 2-amino group of 135-147 can be modified to obtain 155 (Scheme 21) by acylation with various alkanoyl or aroyl halides. Then, 155 can further be derivatized into the corresponding 2-alkylamino or 2-arylamino derivative 156 by reduction with a borane-amine complex (Sergueeva, Z. A. *et al.* Nucleosides Nucleotides Nucleic Acids, 2000, 19, 275). Alternatively, the 2-amino group of compound 135 can be substituted by undergoing a Schiemann reaction, diazotizing in the presence of fluoroborate, followed by thermal decomposition, to give 2-fluoro-6-chloropurine nucleoside 157. Furthermore, the 6-chloro substituent of these nucleosides can be displaced with various nucleophilic reagents as described above. It should be noted that the presence of 2-fluoro substituent protects the 6-amino group from adenosine deaminase attack.

Scheme 21

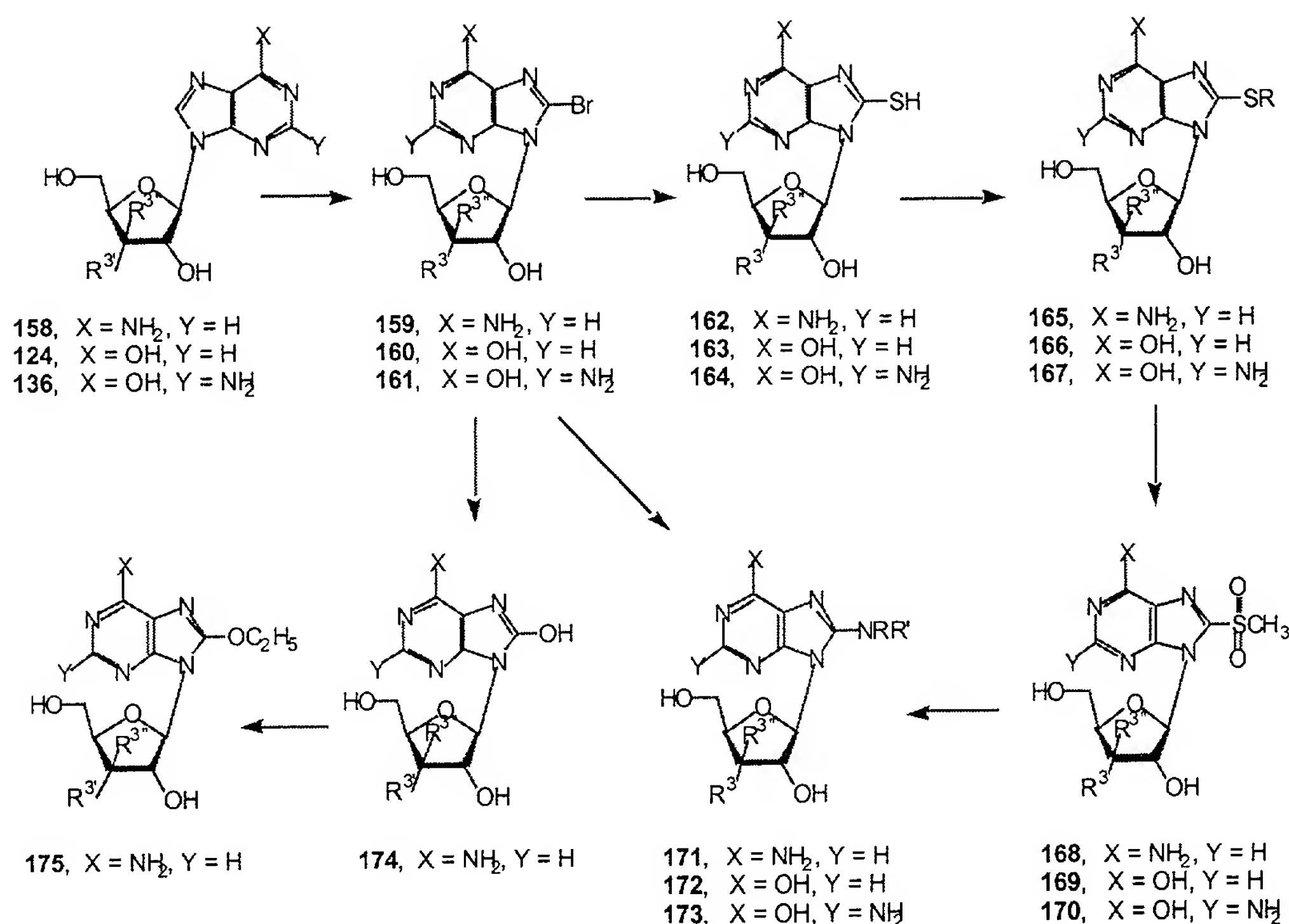


(f) *Modification at C-8 of purine nucleosides (I-b)*

It should be noted that modification of the 8-position of purine nucleosides is important as the substitution at this position alters the preferred conformation of the nucleosides to be *syn*.

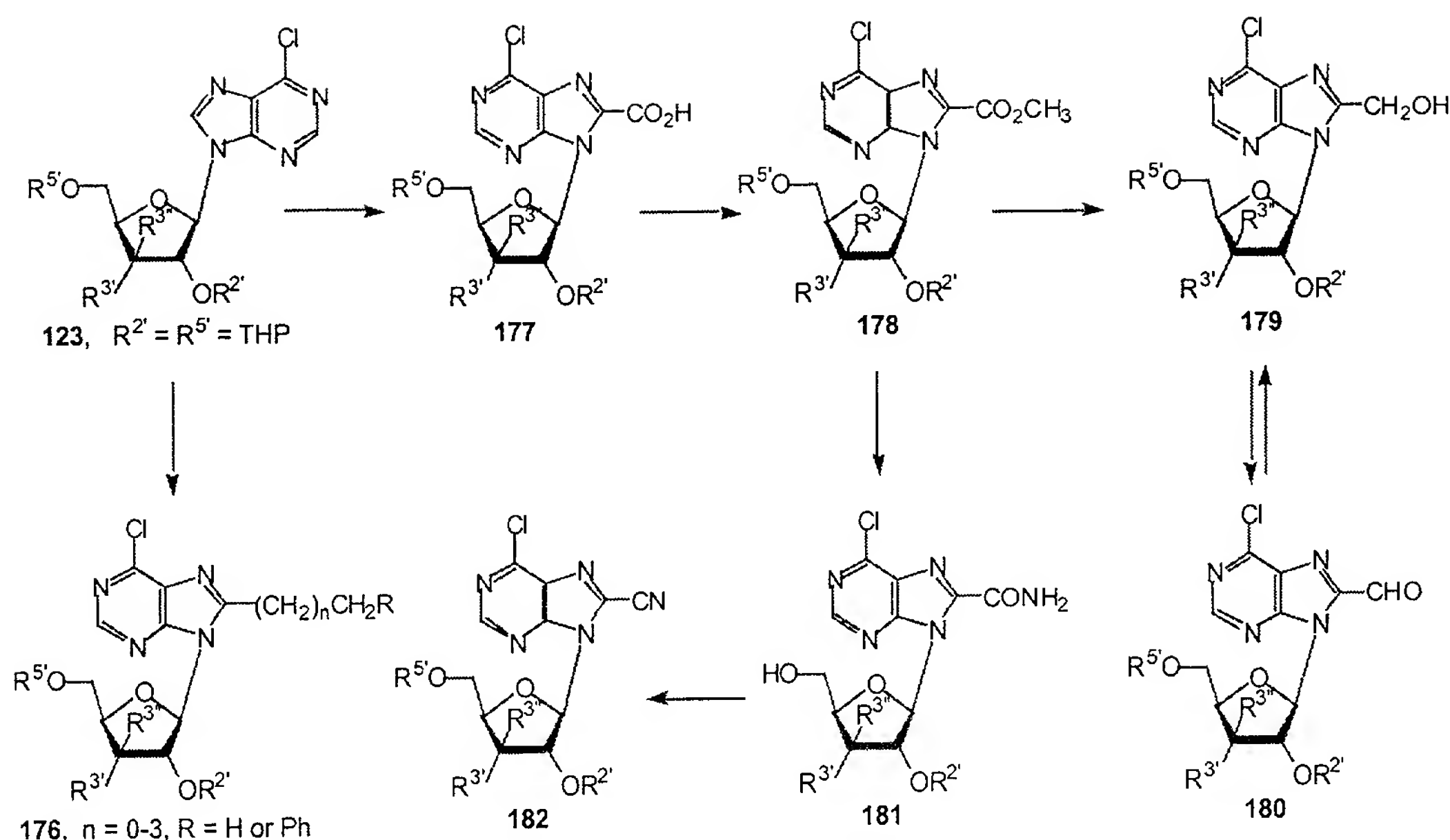
5 Cordycepin (**158**, $R^{3'} = R^{3''} = H$), 3'-deoxyinosine (**124**, $R^{3'} = R^{3''} = H$) and 3'-
deoxyguanosine (**136**, $R^{3'} = R^{3''} = H$) can be brominated at the C-8 position by treatment
with bromine in acetic acid in the presence of sodium acetate to **159-161** (Scheme 22).
The C-8 bromine substituent in **159-161** can be replaced with sulfur by the action of
thiourea to obtain **162-164**, which can be alkylated or aralkylated with alkyl or aralkyl
10 halide in a polar solvent, such as water, alcohol or dimethylformamide, in the presence of
base, such as sodium or potassium carbonate, to give **165-167**. The methylmercapto
derivative **165-167** ($R = \text{methyl}$) can be oxidized to the corresponding sulfone **168-170**.
Upon treatment of these sulfones with various amines, the corresponding 8-amino
derivatives **171-173** are obtained. Many of the 8-amino derivatives can be obtained
15 directly from **159-161** by treatment with amines. Also, **159** can be converted into the 8-
oxo derivative **174** by treatment with sodium acetate in acetic anhydride, followed by
hydrolysis. O-Alkylation of **174** with triethyloxonium fluoroborate gives 8-
ethoxycordycepin **175**.

Scheme 22



8-Alkyl derivatives **176** (Scheme 23) are prepared from **123** ($R^5 = R^2 = \text{THP}$) by treatment with lithium diisopropylamide in tetrahydrofuran below -70°C , followed by alkyl halide treatment. This method was successfully used in other ribonucleosides (Tanaka, H. *et al.* *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, 1983, 31, 787) but never been applied to 3'-deoxynucleosides. When carbon dioxide is used instead of alkyl halide, purine nucleoside 8-carboxylic acid **177** is obtained. Esterification to **178**, followed by ammonolysis gives amide **181**, which is dehydrated to 8-cyanopurine nucleoside **182**. Reduction of **178** with borane-dimethylsulfide affords the alcohol **179**. Mild oxidation with dimethylsulfoxide and oxalic chloride affords aldehyde **180**. Compounds **179** and **180** are versatile intermediates for various modifications.

Scheme 23



B. Compounds of Types IIa-c and IVa-c.

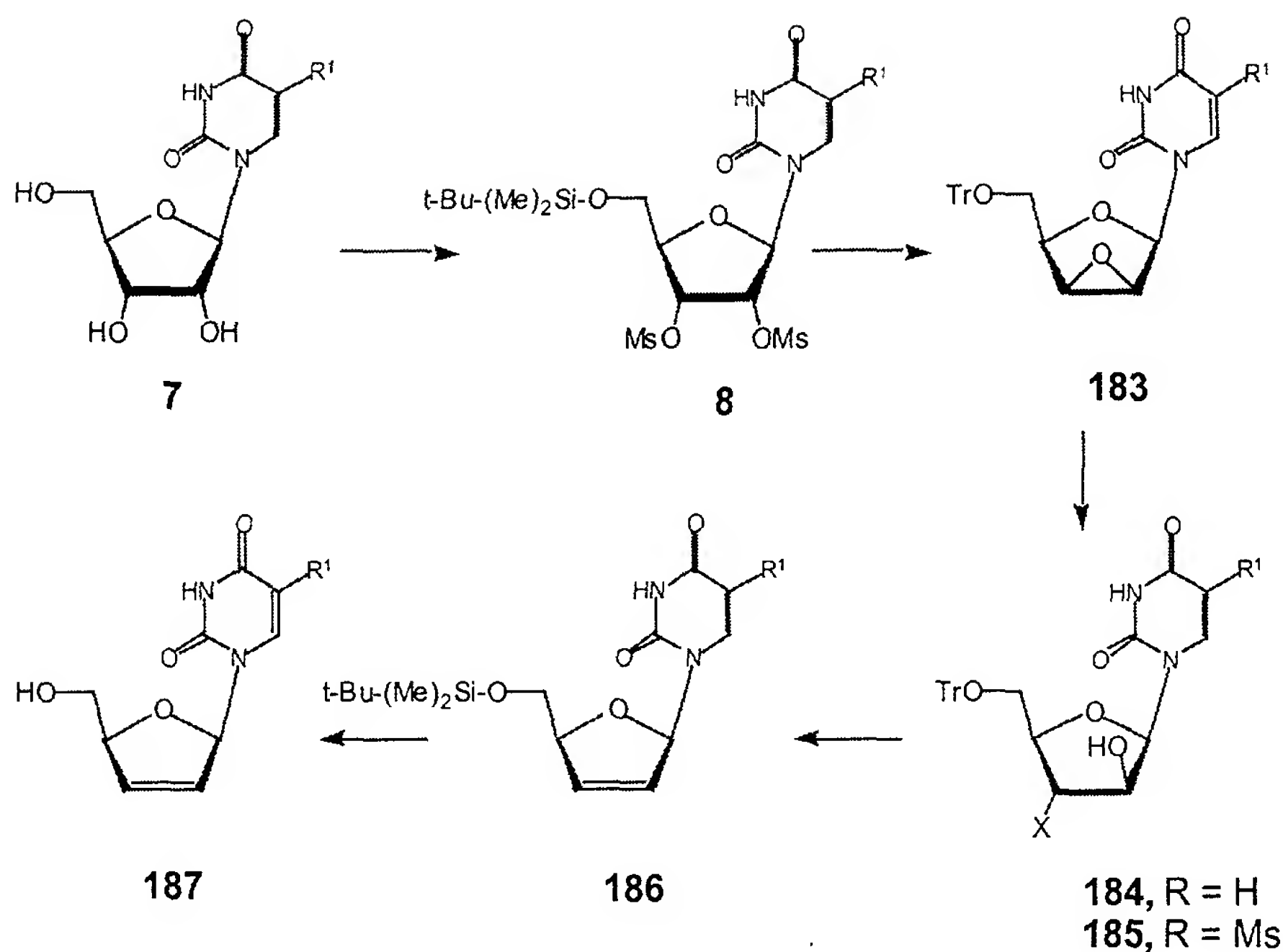
5 (i) Synthesis from pre-formed nucleosides:

Several methods are available to introduce a 2',3'-unsaturation into a preformed nucleosides. An example is shown in **Scheme 24**.

10 Selective O-silylation of nucleoside 7, preferably with *t*-butyldimethylsilyl halide or *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl halide, in base, preferably in pyridine at from 0 °C to 80 °C, preferably at room temperature, followed by sulfonylation, preferably with mesyl chloride or tosyl chloride in base, preferably in pyridine at from 0 °C to 80 °C, preferably at room temperature, gives 8 in high yield, which can be readily converted into the lyxo-epoxide 183 by treatment with base. Reaction of 183 with halide ion, preferably iodide ion, such as treatment with sodium iodide in acetone or methylethylketone gives exclusively the trans-iodohydrin 184, X = I). Mesylation of 184 gives in high yield of the olifin 186 via 185. Compound 185 can be isolated in poor yield after short reaction time. De-O-silylation of 186 with fluoride, such as tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride affords the desired olefin 187, type II-a nucleoside, in high yield.

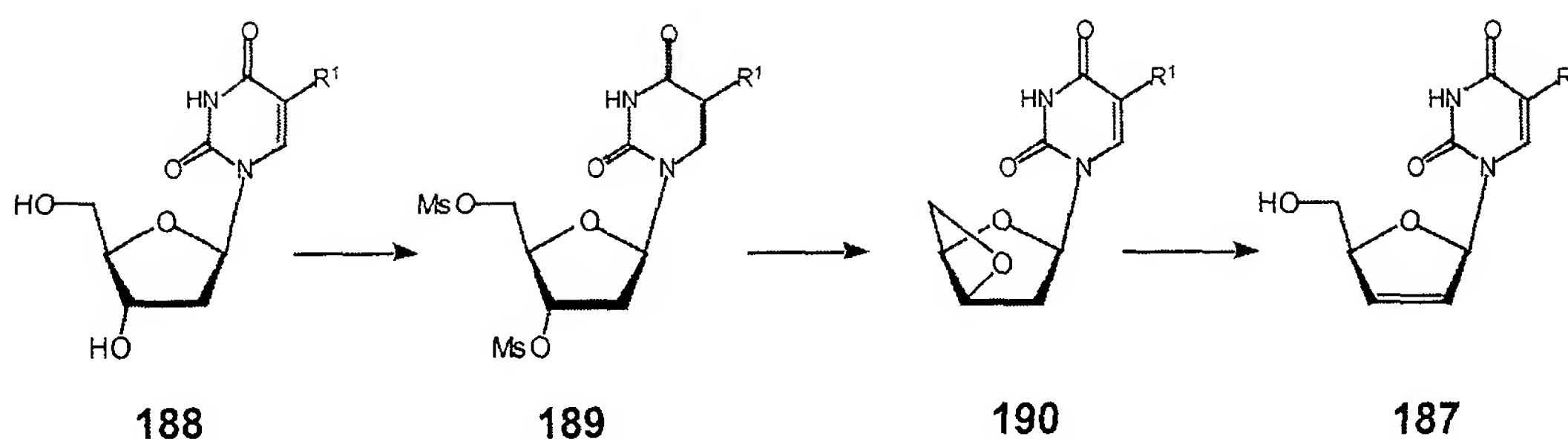
15

Scheme 24



Starting from 2'-deoxy nucleosides, e.g., **188** (Scheme 25), the type II-a olefinic sugar nucleoside also can be prepared. Sulfonation of **188**, preferably with mesyl chloride in pyridine at temperature range from $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $80\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, preferably at room temperature, gives the di-O-mesylate **189**, which, upon treatment with aqueous base such as sodium hydroxide solution gives 3',5'-anhydrosugar nucleoside **190**. The latter nucleoside can be readily converted into the desired **187** in high yield by treatment with strong, anhydrous base, such as with potassium *tert*-butoxide in dimethylsulfoxide at temperature range of from $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $80\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, preferably at room temperature for 10 minutes to overnight, preferably 1.5 to 3 hours.

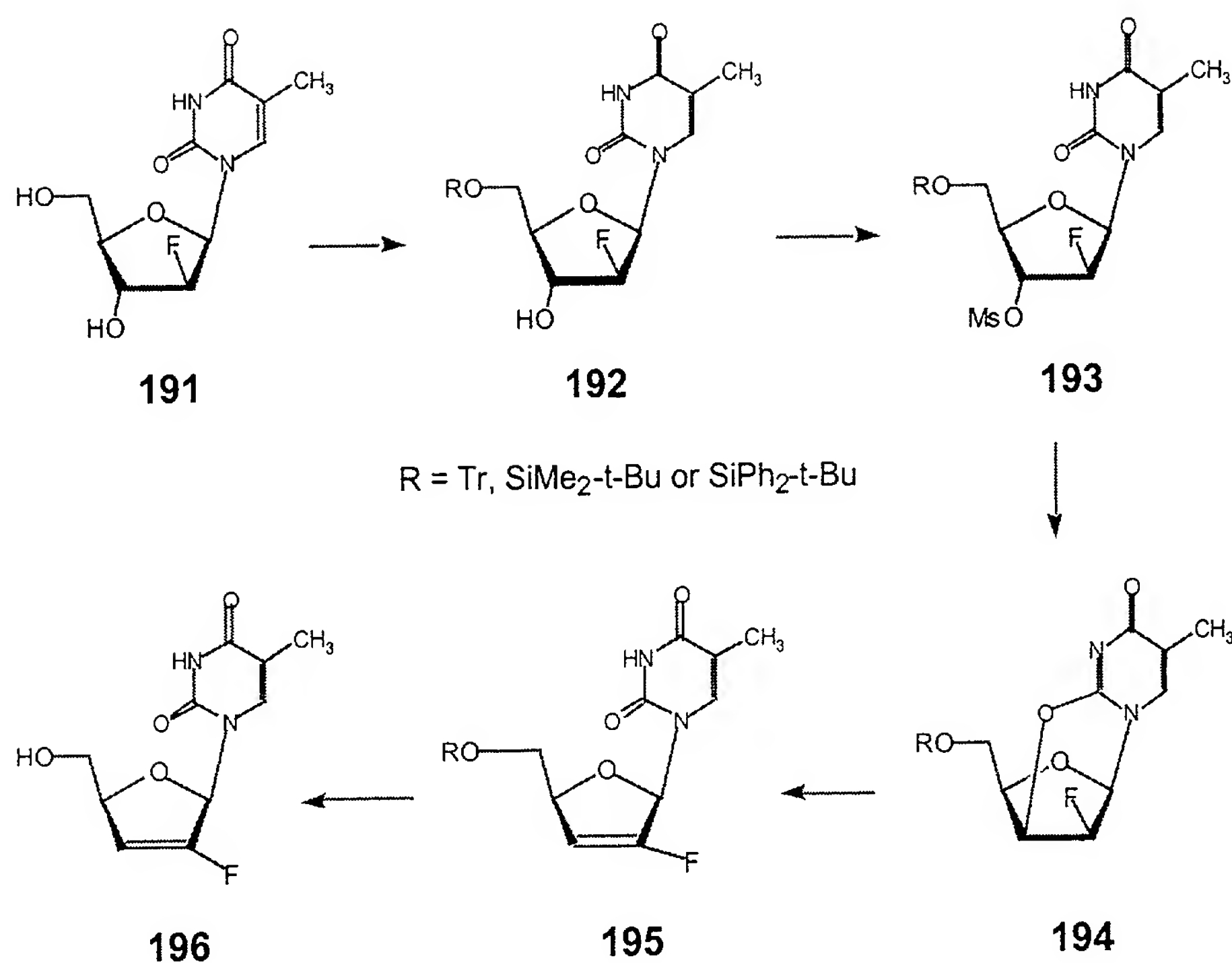
Scheme 25



5 An example for preparation of 2'-substituted olefinic sugar nucleoside of type **II-a** is given in **Scheme 26**. 1-(2'-Deoxy-2'-fluoro-β-D-arabinofuranosyl)thymine (**191**) is selectively protected, preferably with trityl chloride or *t*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride or *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl chloride, in pyridine to give **192**. Sulfonylation of **192**, preferably with mesyl chloride in pyridine, gives the mesylate **193**, which, upon treatment with non-nucleophilic base, such as DBU or DBN in anhydrous inert solvent, such as methylene chloride, affords 2,3'-anhydro nucleoside **194**. This compound is readily converted into 2'-fluoro-olefinic sugar nucleoside **195** upon treatment with potassium *t*-butoxide in dimethylsulfoxide. De-protection of **195** gives the desired 2'-fluorinated **II-a** type nucleoside **196**. 5'-O-Silyl protection gives better overall yield than trityl protection.

10

Scheme 26

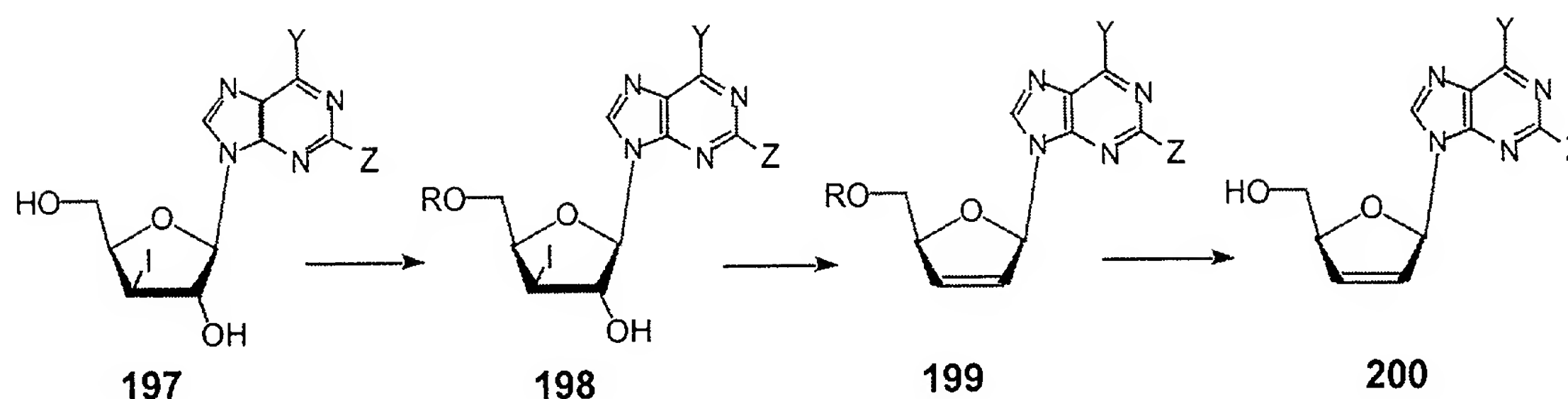


All these reactions can be applied to the corresponding pyrimidine L-nucleosides for the preparation of **IV-a** type nucleosides.

Nucleosides of type **II-b** can be prepared readily from **197** (Scheme 27). Selective protection of **197** at the 5'-position, *e.g.*, with *t*-butyldimethylsilyl or *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl group affords **198**. Sulfonylation with tosyl halide or mesyl halide in base such as in pyridine affords the protected olefinic nucleoside **199**. De-O-silylation of **199** with fluoride, such as tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride affords the desired olefin **200**, type **II-b** nucleoside, in high yield.

Alternatively, treatment of **15** (see Scheme 3) with chromous acetate gives, after deprotection with base **200** in good yield.

Scheme 27

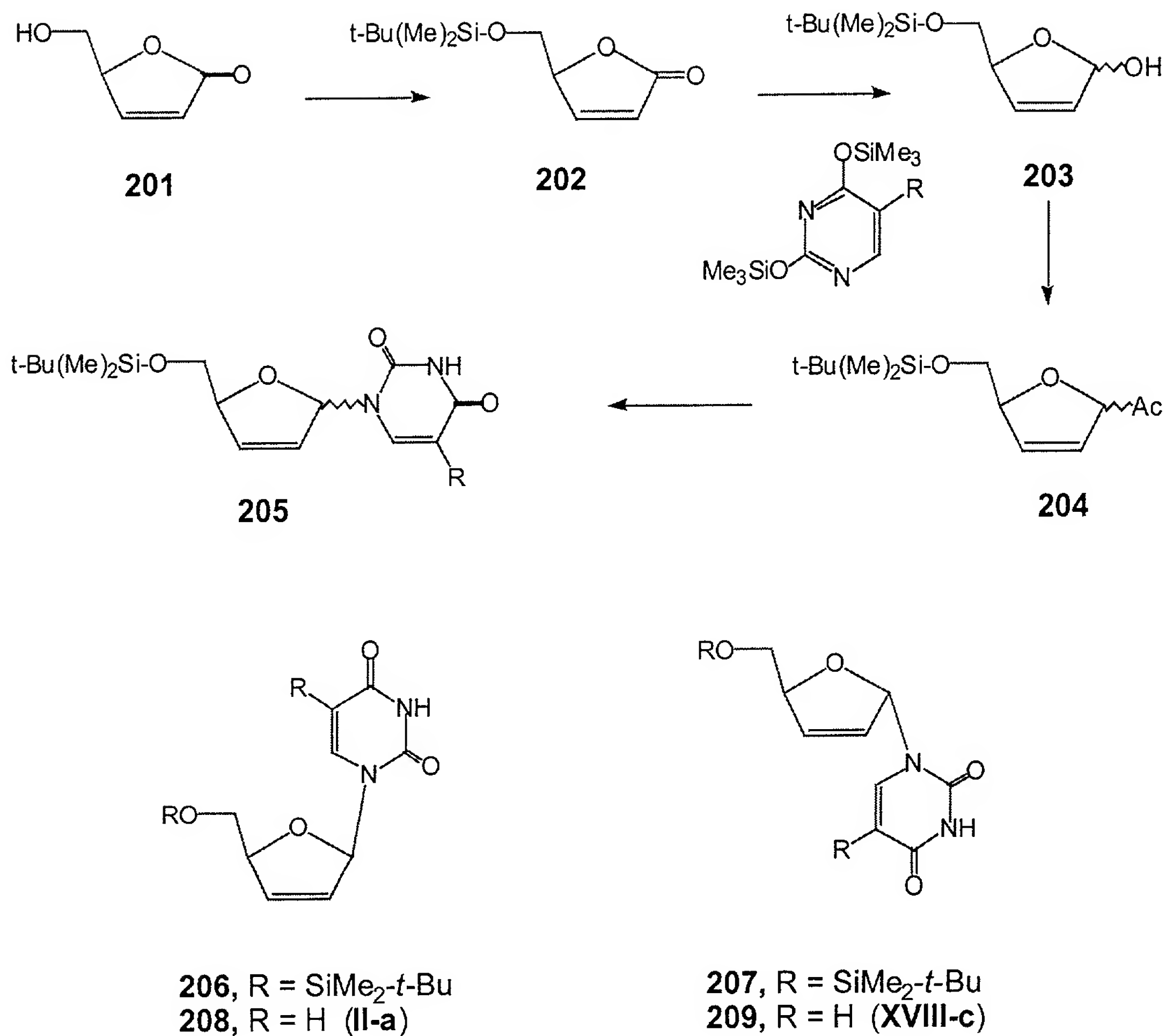


5 By the same procedure but using purine L-nucleosides, the corresponding olefinic sugar L-nucleosides of type **IV-b** can be obtained.

(ii) Synthesis by condensation of base and unsaturated sugar derivative

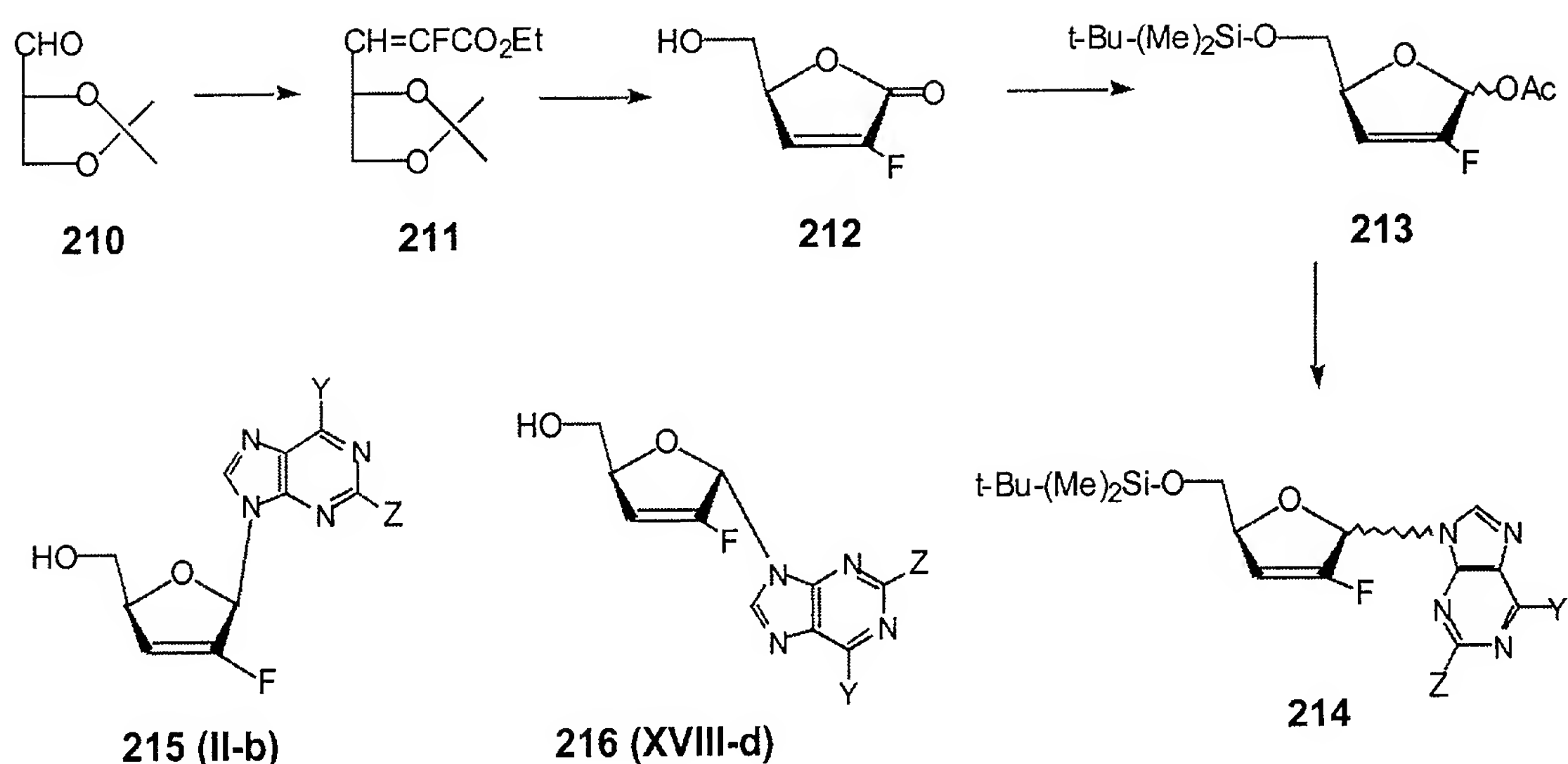
10 Commercially available 4-hydroxymethyl-2-pentenone (**201**, Scheme 28) is silylated, preferably with *t*-butyldimethylsilyl halide in base, preferably in pyridine, to give **202**, which is reduced with borohydride to **203**. After acetylation, the product **204** is condensed with silylated base, *e.g.*, 5-substituted uracil. A complicated mixture is obtained in which the anomeric nucleosides (**205**) are the major components. After chromatographic separation of the anomers **206** and **207**, followed by desilylation of each anomer affords the β -nucleoside **208** (type **II-a**) and α -nucleoside **209** (type **XVIII-c**), respectively.

Scheme 28



Another example is shown in Scheme 29. 2-Fluoro-lactone **212** can be prepared by Wittig condensation of aldehyde **210** with Ph₃P=CFCO₂Et. Silyl protection and DIBAH reduction, followed by acetylation of the product affords **213**. Condensation of **213** with silylated purine, such as 6-chloropurine, in the presence of Lewis acid, such as trimethylsilyl triflate or tin tetrachloride, in an inert solvent, such as methylene or ethylene chloride gives anomeric mixture **214**. These anomers are separated on a silica gel column. After desilylation of each component, the corresponding β-nucleoside **215** (type II-b) and α-nucleoside **216** (type XVIII-d) can be obtained.

Scheme 29



C. Synthesis of *carba*-Sugar Nucleosides (V – X)

Only *carba*-nucleosides so far found in nature are adenine nucleosides, *i.e.*, aristeromycin and neplanocins, and they are either extremely expensive or commercially not available. Thus, these types of nucleosides are chemically synthesized from scratch. The *carba*-sugar derivative is prepared first and then the heterocyclic aglycon is constructed on the sugar to prepare *carba*-sugar nucleosides or in the case of purine nucleoside, the base is directly condensed with the *carba*-sugar.

Scheme 30 illustrates the synthesis of 5-fluoro-*carba*-cytidine (**227**, Type V-a). The *carba*-sugar intermediate **219** can be synthesized by any means known in the art. It is disclosed by Ali *et al.* (*Tetrahedron Letters*, **1990**, *31*, 1509) that D-ribonolactone **217** is converted into the pentanone intermediate **218**. The ketone **218** can then be reduced by any known reducing agent, preferably sodium borohydride in methanol at 0 °C for 1 hour to afford alcohol **219**. Sulfonylation of **219**, preferably with mesyl chloride in methylene chloride in the presence of triethylamine at 0 °C for 2 hours gives **220**, which is then treated with sodium azide in DMF at 140 °C overnight to give **221**. The azide **221** can readily be reduced with any known reducing agent, *e.g.*, Ph₃P (Staudinger procedure) or catalytic hydrogenolysis, preferably over palladium on carbon. The resulting amine **222** is subjected to Warrener-Shaw reaction with β-methoxyacryloylisocyanate in DMF,

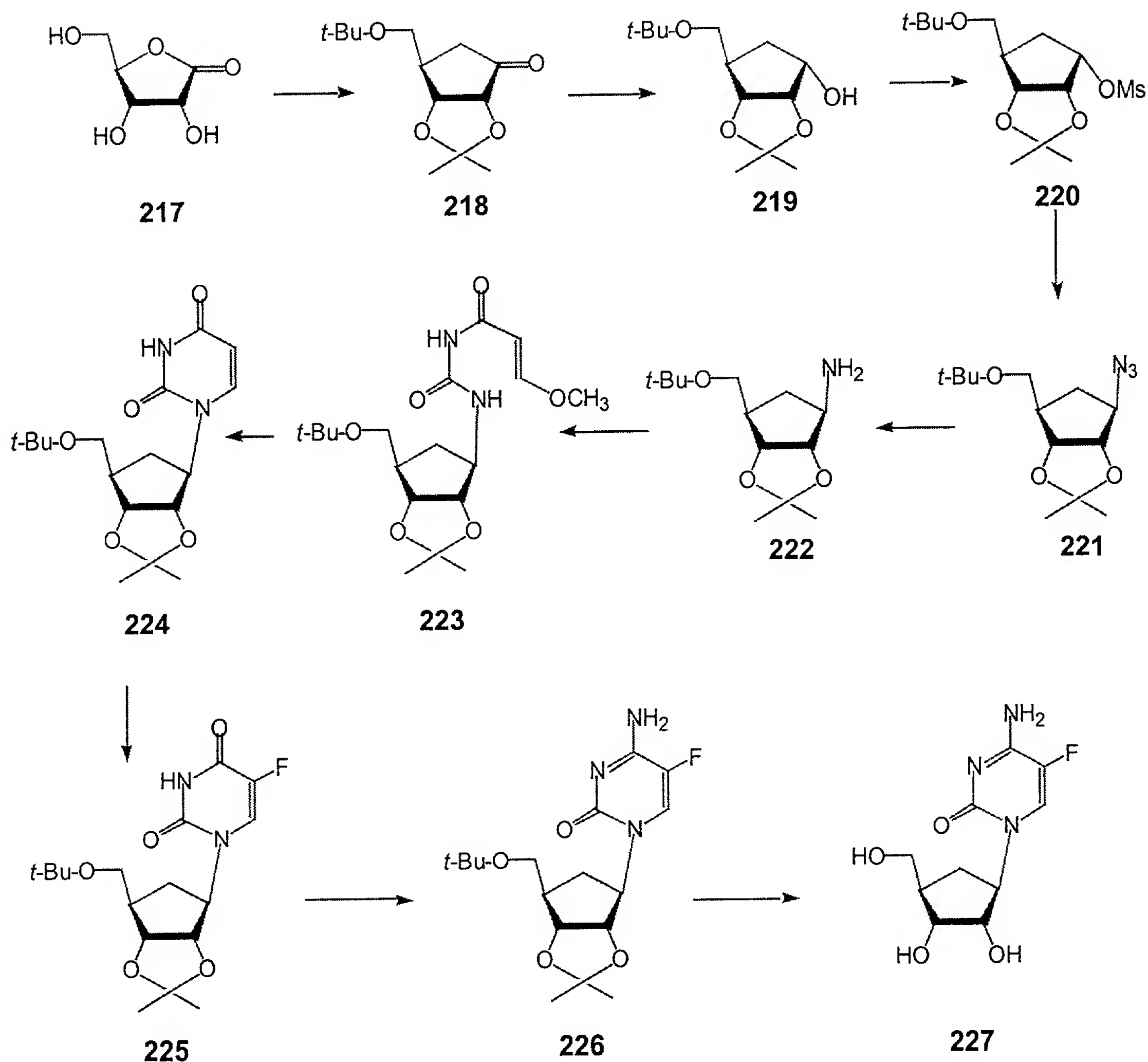
followed by ammonium hydroxide treatment to form protected *carba*-uridine **224** via the linear intermediate **223**. Protected 5-fluoro-*carba*-uridine (**225**) can be obtained by fluorination of **224** with any fluorinating agent. Preferably, the fluorinating agent is fluorine in acetic acid. After quenching the reaction with base, preferably triethylamine.

5 Conversion of uracil nucleoside **225** into protected *carba*-5-fluorocytidine (**226**) can be achieved in a similar manner as described with **Scheme 7**. The protecting groups of **226** are removed with acid, preferably with trifluoroacetic acid/water (2:1 v/v) at 50 °C for 3 hours, to give **227**.

10 Sulfonylation of **219** with triflyl chloride in methylene chloride in the presence of triethylamine gives triflate, which, upon reaction with purine base, such as adenine, and sodium hydride in an inert solvent, such as acetonitrile or DMF directly affords the corresponding purine nucleoside (**V-b** type).

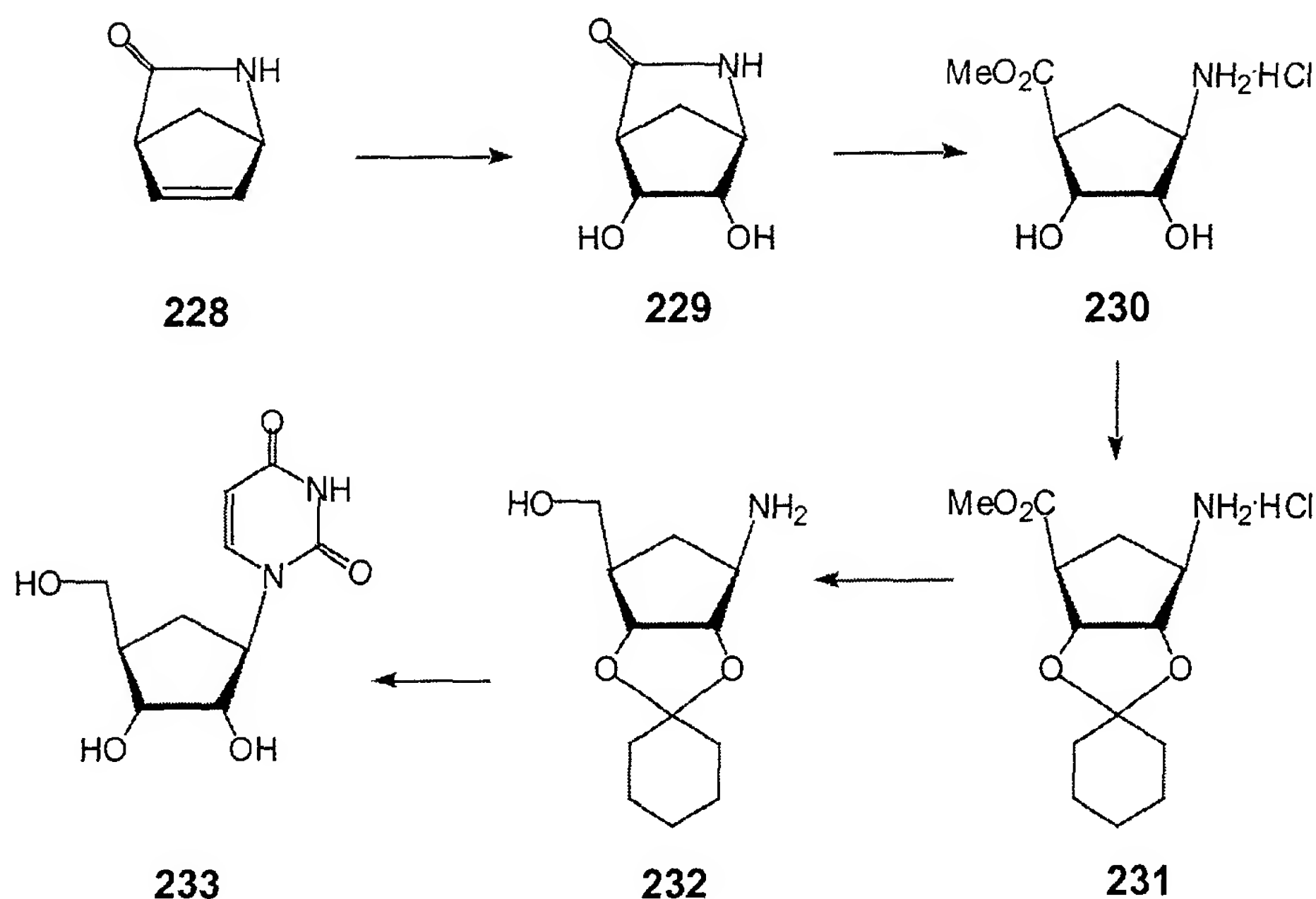
By using the same procedure but starting from L-ribonolactone, the corresponding L-nucleosides counterparts (type **VIII** nucleosides) can be obtained.

Scheme 30



Alternatively, commercially available (1R)-(-)-azabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-3-one (228, Scheme 31) is converted into 2,3-dihydroxy-lactam 229 by osmium tetroxide oxidation. After methanolysis of 229 with methanolic hydrogen chloride, the product 230 is treated with 2,2-dimethoxypropane in acetone or 1,1-dimethoxycyclohexane in cyclohexanol to give a ketal, e.g., 231, which is reduced to 232 with sodium borohydride. The aminoalcohol 232 is converted into 2',3'-O-cyclohexylidene-*carba*-uridine by reaction with β -methoxyacryloylisocyanate, followed by ammonia treatment. Acid treatment, preferably with trifluoroacetic acid in methanol, gives *carba*-uridine (233). *carba*-5-Fluorocytidine (227) can be obtained readily from 233 by the well-known means in the art.

Scheme 31

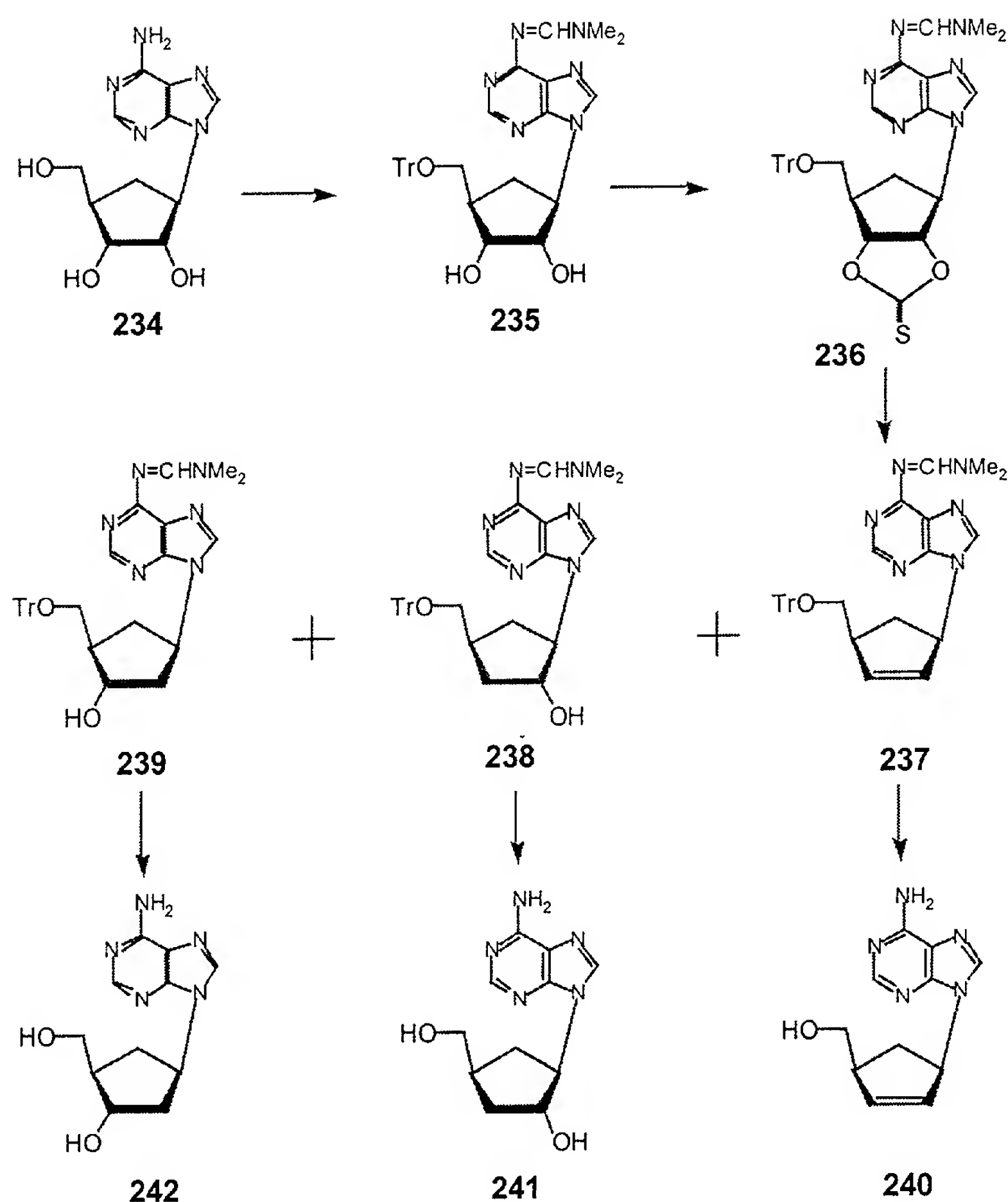


In a similar sequence of reactions but starting from the other optical isomer, (1R)-(+)-azabicyclo[2.2.1]hept-5-en-3-one, the corresponding L-nucleoside analogue (type VIII) can be obtained.

Nucleoside of type VI is prepared from nucleoside of type V. An example is shown in Scheme 32. Aristeromycin (234) or any *carba*-ribonucleoside is converted into the corresponding N-[(dimethylamino)methylene]-5'-O-trityl derivative 235 by treatment with dimethylformamide dimethylacetal in DMF, followed by tritylation. Reaction of 235 with thiocarbonyldiimidazole gives 2',3'-O-thiocarbonate 236, which, upon radical reduction with tri-*n*-butyltin hydride in the presence of 2,2'-azobis(2-methylpropionitrile) affords olefin 237 along with 3'-deoxy- and 2'-deoxy-aristeromycine derivatives 238 and 239, respectively. These products can be readily separated on a silica gel column. Each of these produces the corresponding free nucleoside, 240, 241 and 242, respectively, upon acid treatment. This procedure is particularly suited for preparation of small amounts of several nucleosides in short time for screening.

By the same procedure but using type VIII nucleosides instead of type V, the corresponding L-nucleosides of type IX can be obtained.

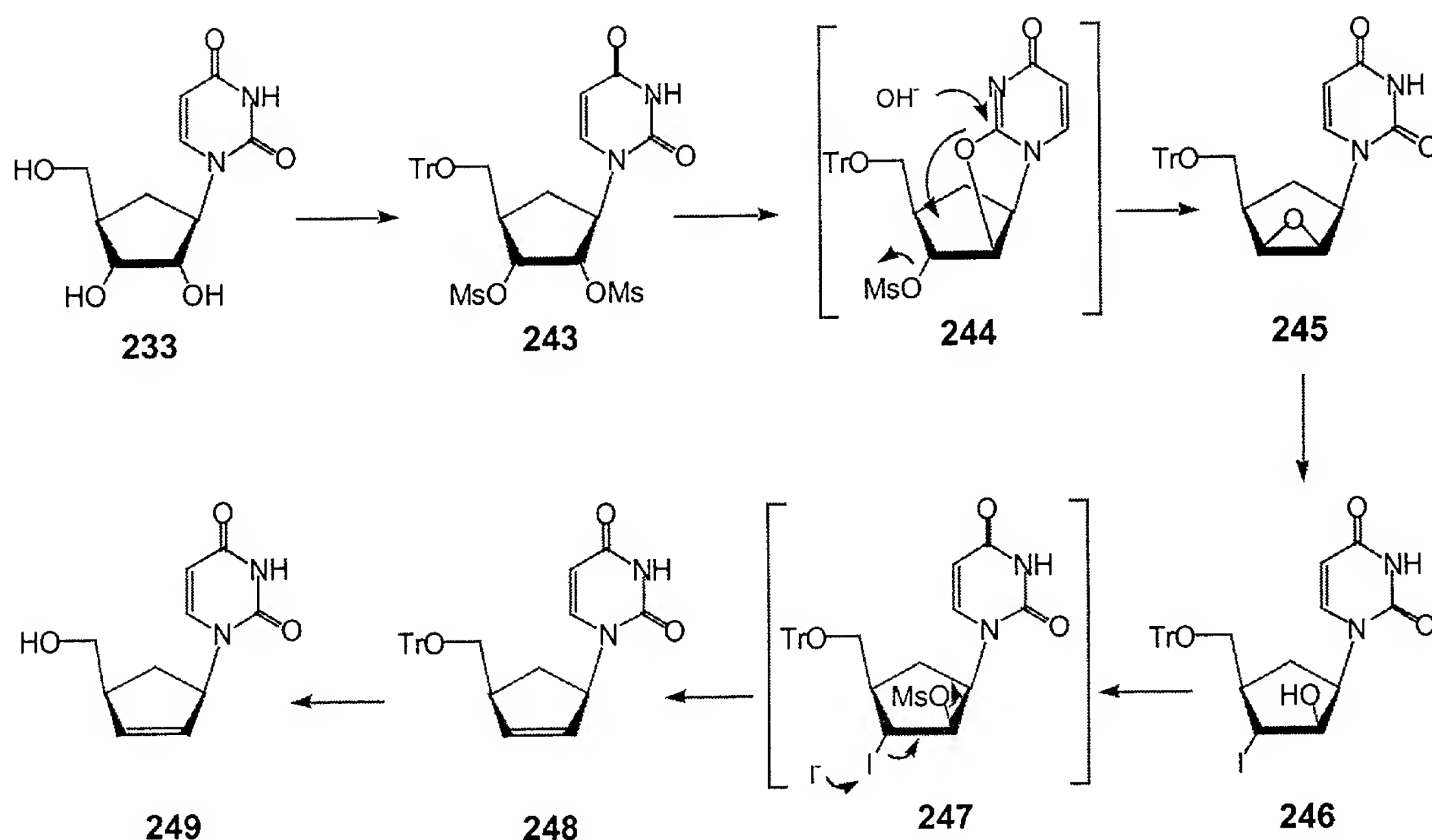
Scheme 32



5 Stereoselective conversion of type V to type VI is also possible as shown in **Scheme 33**. 5-Fluoro-carba-uridine (233) is converted into the 5'-O-trityl-2',3'-di-O-mesyl derivative 243. Aqueous base treatment of 243 affords lyxo epoxide 245 via 2,2'-anhydro nucleoside intermediate 244. Epoxide ring-opening with sodium iodide in acetone or butanone gives *trans* iodohydrin 246, which, upon mesylation affords the olefin 248 via 247. De-O-tritylation of 247 furnishes 249. Instead of 5'-O-trityl protection, silyl protection with *t*-butyldimethylsilyl or *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl protection can also be used. Also, instead of mesylation, other sulfonylation using an agent, such as tosyl chloride, triflyl chloride or triflyl anhydride can be used.

By using the same procedure but using type VIII nucleosides instead of type V, the corresponding L-nucleosides of type IX can be obtained.

Scheme 33

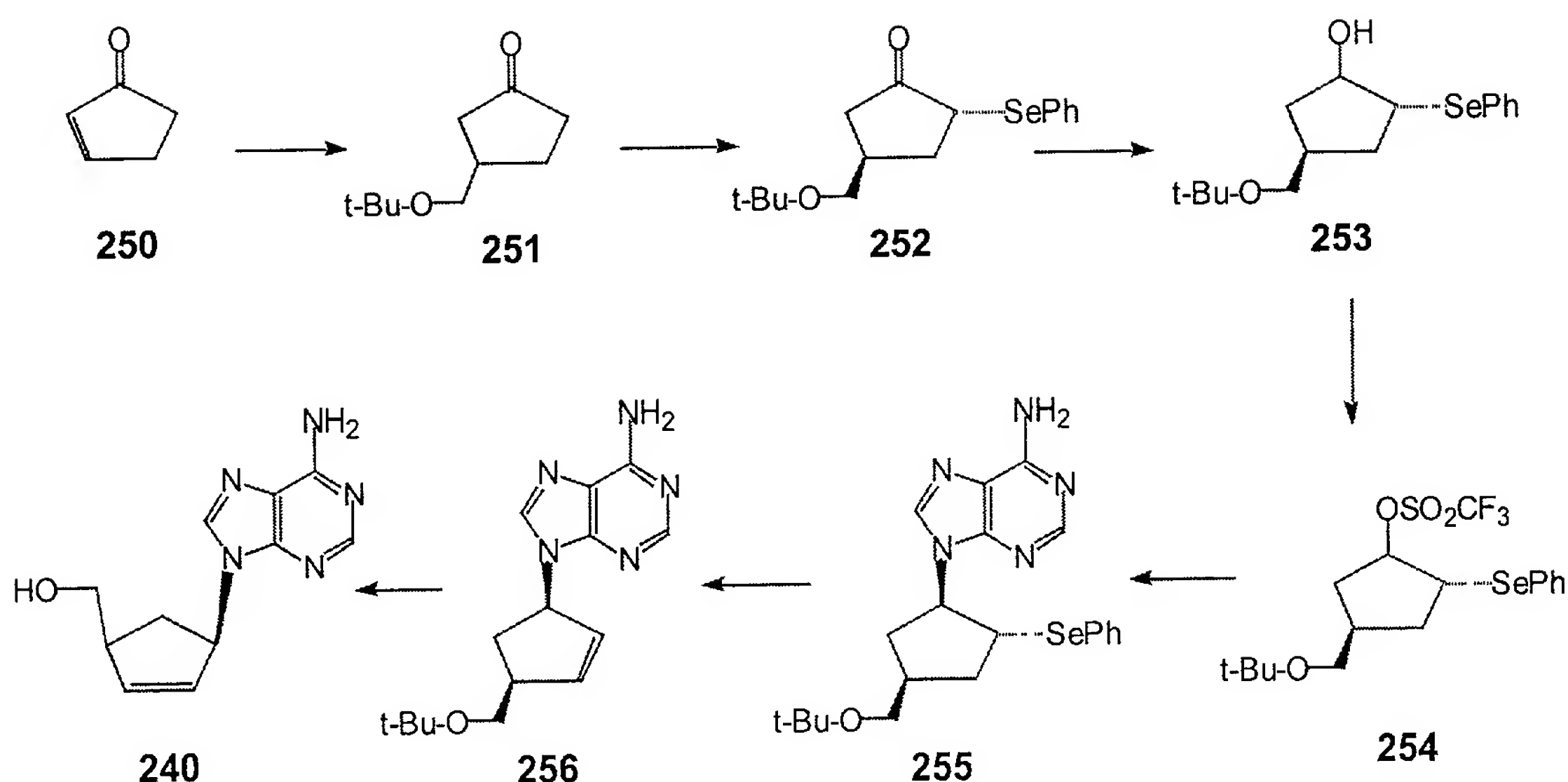


Also, nucleosides of type **VI-b** can be synthesized starting from 2-cyclopenten-1-one (**250**, **Scheme 34**). Michael addition of *t*-butoxymethylithiumcuprate [*t*-BuOCH₂)₂CuLi] to **250** yields the adduct **251**. Phenylselenation of **251** according to Wilson *et al.* (*Synthesis*, 1995, 1465) mainly occurs *trans* to *t*-butoxymethyl group to give **252**. DIBAH reduction reduces the carbonyl group to hydroxyl group in a stereoselective manner to give **253**. Sulfonylation, preferably with triflyl chloride or triflic anhydride in base, to **254**, followed by condensation with sodio-purine, produced, *e.g.*, adenine and NaH, in an inert solvent such as acetonitrile affords **255** in a stereoselective manner. Oxidation of the selenide **255** with hydrogen peroxide in pyridine smoothly converts **255** into the olefin **256**. Mild acid treatment of **256** gives free nucleoside **240**.

Alternatively, acetylation of **253**, followed by condensation with silylated pyrimidine, such as tris(trimethylsilyl)-5-fluorocytosine in the presence of trimethylsilyl trifluoromethylsulfonate gives high yield of the corresponding pyrimidine nucleoside, from which **VI-a** type nucleoside can readily prepared by oxidation and acid removal of *t*-butyl group of the product.

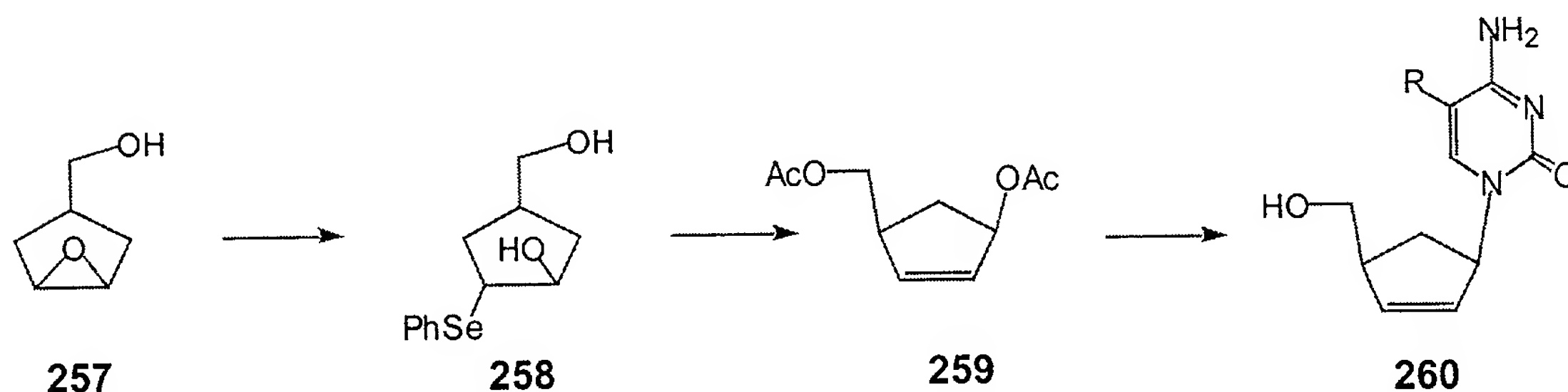
By using the same procedure but using type **VIII** nucleosides instead of type **V**, the corresponding L-nucleosides of type **IX** can be obtained.

Scheme 34



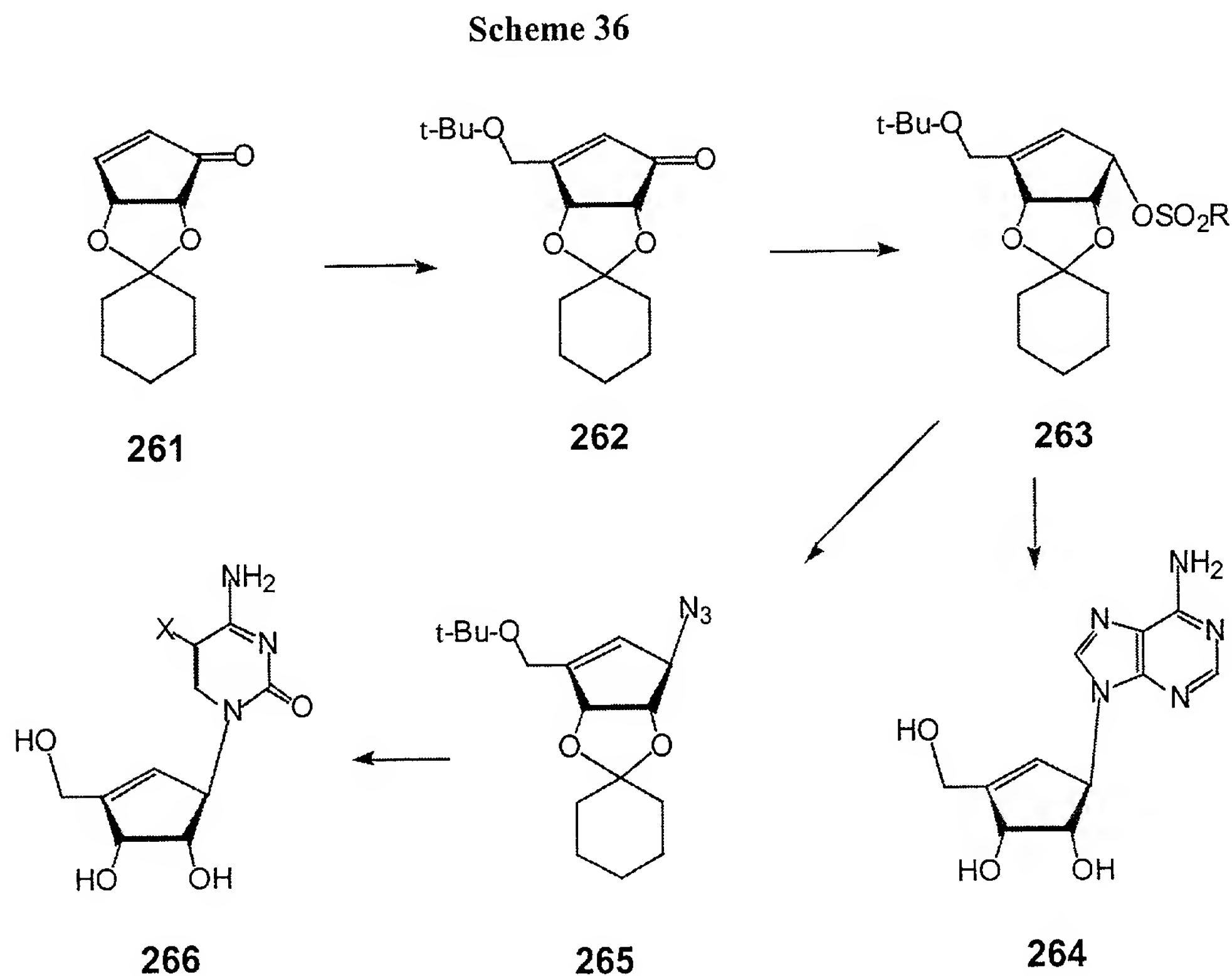
Furthermore, racemic *carba* analogues of 2',3'-unsaturated nucleosides can be prepared by the procedure of Shi *et al.* (*J. Med. Chem.*, 1999, 42, 859) who achieved multi-step preparation of racemic *cis*-3,4-epoxy-cyclopentanemethanol **257** (Scheme 35) from ethyl cyclopentene-4-carboxylate. Opening of the epoxide with diphenyldiselenide affords **258**, which, after acetylation followed by peroxide treatment, gives diacetate **259**. Treatment of **259** with sodiopyrimidine, prepared by reaction of uracil or cytosine derivative with NaH in dimethylsulfoxide, in the presence of $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$ in an inert solvent, *e.g.*, tetrahydrofuran, gives **260** in 10-70% yield after deacetylation of the product.

Scheme 35



Scheme 36 shows the synthesis of 3,4-unsaturated carba nucleoside of type **VII** Wolfe *et al* (J. Org. Chem., 1990, 55, 4712) prepared **261** from D-ribonolactone. Quenching the Michael addition of *t*-butoxymethyl group to (**261**, **Scheme 36**) with sulfinyl chloride, followed by heating the product with calcium carbonate gives cyclopentenone **262**. Reduction of **262** with DIBAH followed by sulfonylation affords **263**. Condensation of **263** (preferably R = CF₃) with purine base with NaH as described earlier gives purine nucleoside **VII-b**, *e.g.*, neplanocin A (**264**). Treatment of **263** (preferably R = Me) with NaN₃ gives **265** which can be readily converted into various pyrimidine nucleosides (**VII-a**) including **266** by the procedure already described with **Scheme 30**.

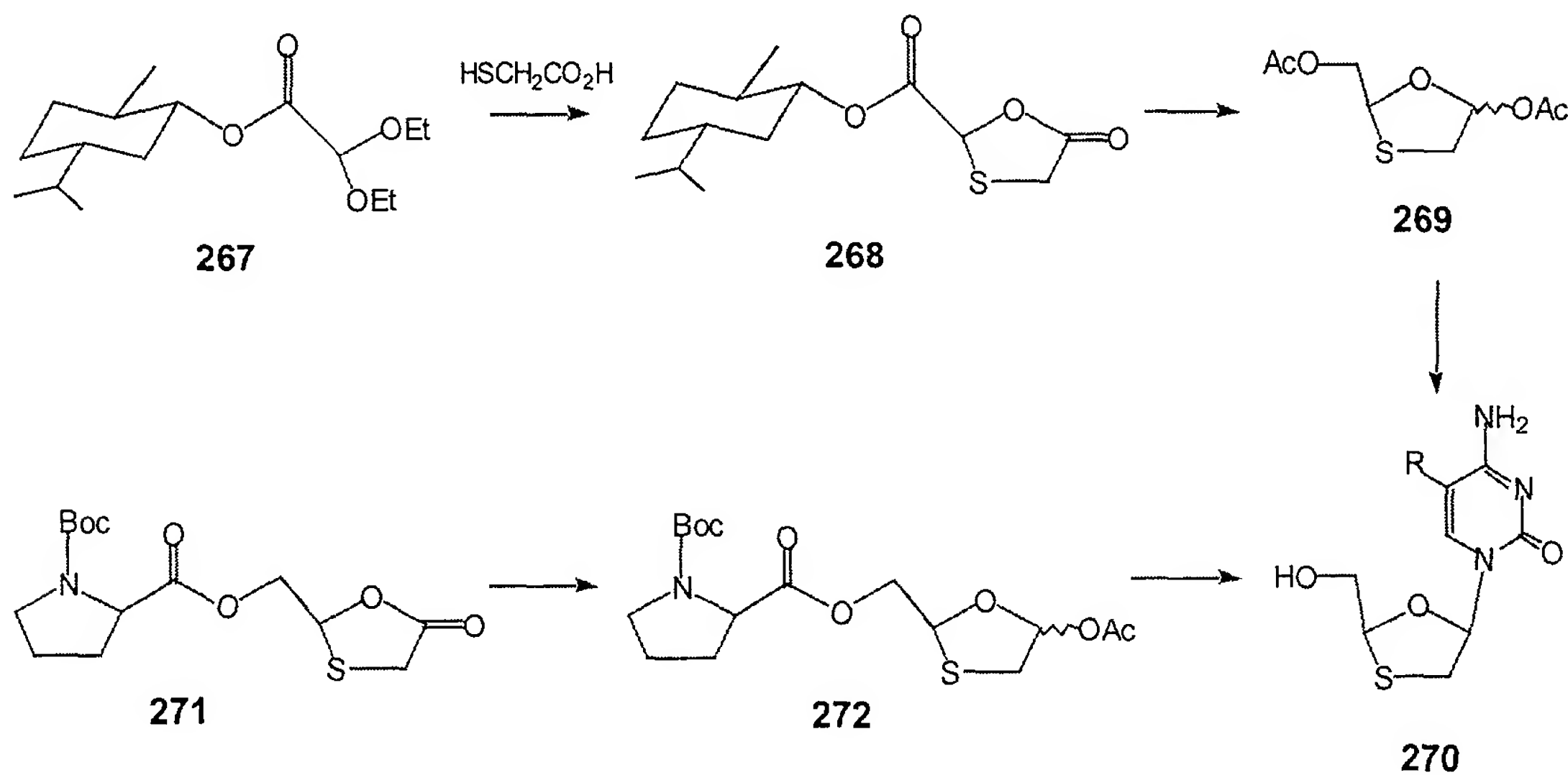
Starting from L-ribonolactone, the corresponding L-nucleoside counterparts (**X-a** and **X-b**) can be readily prepared.



D. Synthesis of nucleosides of types XI and XII.

There are several methods available for the synthesis of these types of nucleosides. Some nucleosides used in the present invention are prepared mainly in the following manner. 1-Mentylester of 2,2-dimethoxyacetic acid (**267**, **Scheme 37**) is condensed with thioglycolic acid to give a diastereomeric mixture **268**, which can readily be separated on a silica gel column. Reduction of **268** with NaBH₄ in ethanol, followed by acetylation affords **269**, which is condensed with silylated base in the presence of tin tetrachloride. Mainly the desired protected β -nucleoside is obtained and is purified by chromatography. De-O-acetylation affords the corresponding unprotected nucleoside **270**. Also, **270** is obtained starting from 2,2-dimethoxyethyl ester of N-t-Boc-L-proline. This compound is treated with 3 equivalents of thioglycolic acid in methylene chloride in the presence of MgSO₄ and CAS to give **271** as a diastereomeric mixture, which is separated chromatographically. Reduction of each diastereomer of **271** with Li(t-BuO)₃AlH in tetrahydrofuran and subsequent acetylation affords **272**, which is condensed with silylated base, followed by deprotection of the product to give **270**.

Scheme 37

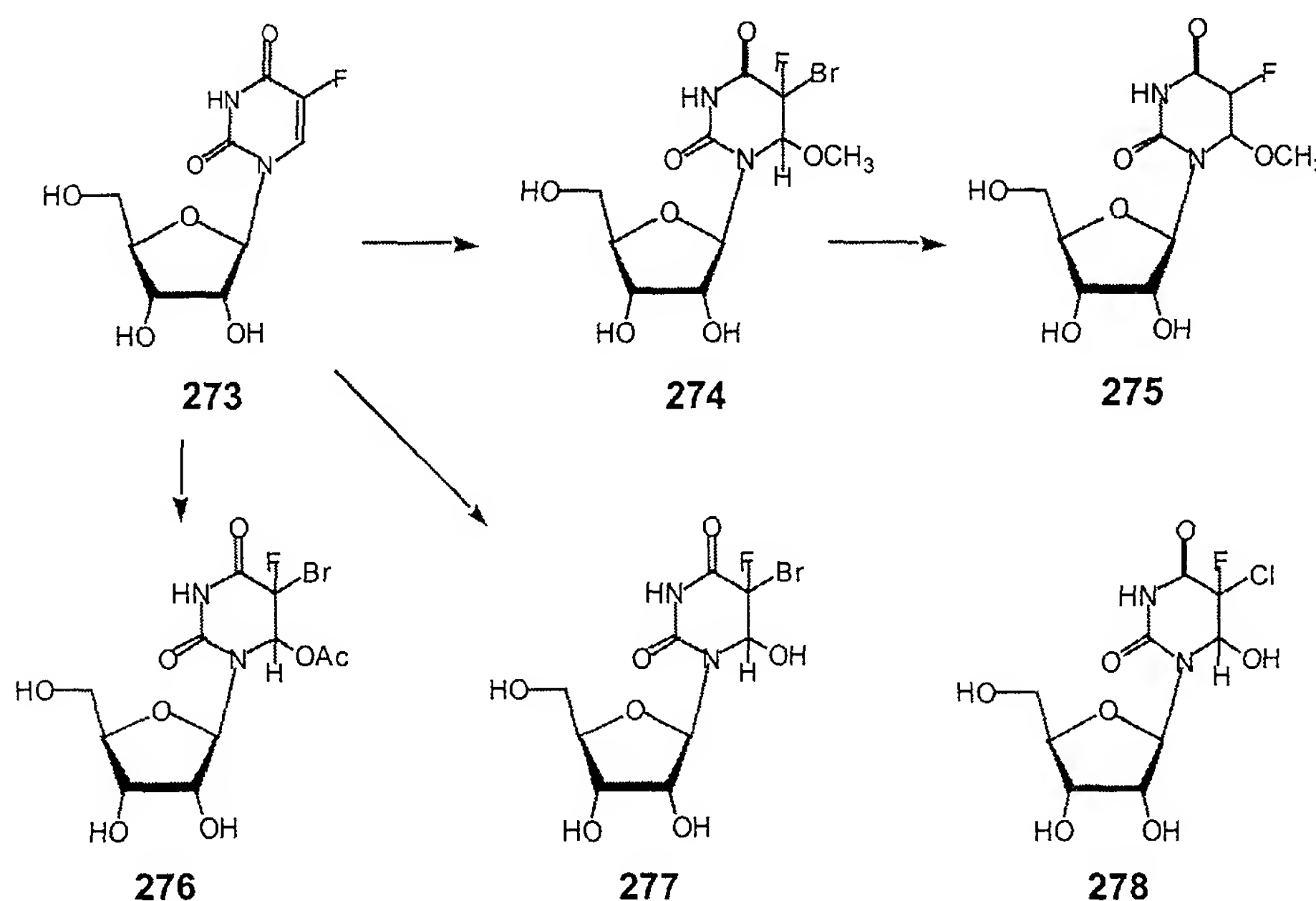


Nucleosides of type **XIII** used in this invention are prepared by using means known in the art. In a preferred embodiment, **XIII-a** type nucleosides are prepared in one or two-step synthesis reported (Nucleic Acid Chem., 1978, 1, 272 and 343) by activating

the 5'-OH by sulfonylation followed by base treatment or direct treatment of unprotected nucleosides with Ph₃P and diethyl diazocarbonylate.

Preparation of nucleosides of type XIV used in the present invention are synthesized by methods somewhat analogous to those utilized for the synthesis of the corresponding 5-fluorodeoxyuridine adducts by Duschinsky *et al.* (*J. Med. Chem.*, 1967, 10, 47). Some examples are shown in **Scheme 38** using 5-fluorouridine (273). Any pyrimidine nucleoside containing a strongly electron-withdrawing substituent at C-5 undergoes similar adduct formation. Treatment of 273 with bromine in methanol gives adduct 274 which can be reduced to 275 by catalytic hydrogenation. Treatment in water gives the bromohydrin 277 while action of bromine in acetic acid in the presence of acetic anhydride affords 276. The corresponding other adducts can be prepared by using other hypohalites, *e.g.*, hypochlorite gives 278. Each of these adducts are diastereomeric mixture and are used for screening as such.

Scheme 38



E. Nucleosides of Type XV- XVIII.

Nucleosides used in this invention are prepared by oxidation of 4-thiouridine and 6-thioinosine derivatives according to the well-known means in the art. Type XVI compounds are C-nucleosides. XVI-a nucleosides are synthesized from ψ -uridine by methods known in the art (Watanabe, "The Chemistry of C-Nucleosides", Townsend, L. B., Ed., In "Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides", Plenum, Publ., New York, Vol., 3, 421, 1994), or condensation of an aromatic compound to protected ribonolactone, followed by manipulation of the products (e.g., Kabat *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1987, 30, 924). Nucleosides XVI-b and XVI-c are prepared according to a modified procedure developed by Pankiewicz *et al.*, (*Carbohydr. Res.*, 1984, 127, 227; *Nucleosides Nucleotides*, 1991, 10, 1333). The purine-type XVI-d C-nucleosides are synthesized according to the method reported by Chu *et al.*, (*J. Heterocycl. Chem.*, 1980, 17, 1435). Nucleosides of type XVII used in this invention are synthesized either by cross-aldol reaction of 4'-formyl nucleosides with formaldehyde or condensation of preformed sugar with a base. Preparation of some of the type XVIII nucleosides have already discussed earlier.

The following working examples provide a further understanding of the method of the present invention. These examples are of illustrative purposes, and are not meant to limit the scope of the invention. Equivalent, similar or suitable solvents, reagents or reaction conditions may be substituted for those particular solvents, reagents or reaction conditions described without departing from the general scope of the method.

EXAMPLES

Melting points were determined in open capillary tubes on an Electrothermal digit melting point apparatus and are uncorrected. The UV absorption spectra were recorded on an Uvikon 931 (KONTRON) spectrophotometer in ethanol. ^1H -NMR spectra were run at room temperature with a Varian Unity Plus 400 spectrometer. Chemical shifts are given in ppm downfield from internal tetramethylsilane as reference. Deuterium exchange, decoupling experiments or 2D-COSY were performed in order to confirm proton assignments. Signal multiplicities are represented by s (singlet), d (doublet), dd (doublet of doublets), t (triplet), q (quadruplet), br (broad), m (multiplet). All J-values are in Hz.

FAB mass spectra were recorded in the positive- (FAB>0) or negative- (FAB<0) ion mode on a JEOL DX 300 mass spectrometer. The matrix was 3-nitrobenzyl alcohol (NBA) or a mixture (50:50, v/v) of glycerol and thioglycerol (GT). Specific rotations were measured on a Perkin-Elmer 241 spectropolarimeter (path length 1 cm) and are given in units of 10^{-1} deg cm² g⁻¹. Elemental analyses were performed by Atlantic Microlab Inc. (Norcross, GA). Analyses indicated by the symbols of the elements or functions were within $\pm 0.4\%$ of theoretical values. Thin layer chromatography was performed on Whatman PK5F silica gel plates, visualization of products being accomplished by UV absorbency followed by charring with 10% ethanolic sulfuric acid and heating. Column chromatography was carried out on Silica Gel (Fisher, S733-1) at atmospheric pressure.

Example 1

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine (2, R = H).

To a suspension of N⁴-acetylcytidine (5.7 g, 0.02 mol) in acetonitrile (300 mL) is added acetyl bromide (15 mL, 0.2 mol) over 30 minutes under reflux. The mixture is refluxed for 4 hours, and then concentrated *in vacuo* to dryness. The residue is dissolved in methylene chloride (150 mL) and washed with water (150 mL). The organic layer is dried (Na₂SO₄), evaporated, and the residue crystallized from ethanol to give 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine (2, R = H, 3.4 g, 40%), mp 179-180 °C. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 10.2 (bs, 1H, NHAc), 8.1 (d, 1H, H-6, J_{5,6} = 7.5 Hz), 7.5 (d, 1H, H-5, J_{5,6} = 7.5 Hz), 6.0 (d, 1H, H-1', J_{1',2'} < 1 Hz), 5.5 (d, 1H, H-2', J_{1',2'} < 1, J_{2',3'} = 0 Hz), 4.2 – 4.7 (m, 4H, H-3', 4', 5', 5''), 2.0-2.4 (3s, 9H, 3Ac).

In a similar manner but using the corresponding N-acylated cytidine, the following nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-fluorocytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-chlororocytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-bromocytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-iodocytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-methylcytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-ethylcytosine,

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-vinylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonyl-vinyl)-cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonyl-vinyl)-cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-phenylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetyl-5-benzylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-fluorocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-chlororocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-bromocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-iodocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-methylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-ethylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-vinylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonyl-vinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonyl-vinyl)cytosine,

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-phenylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-benzylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-fluorocytosine,
 5 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-chlororocytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-bromocytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-iodocytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-methylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-ethylcytosine,
 10 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-vinylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
 15 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
 20 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-cytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonyl-vinyl)-cytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-phenylcytosine,
 and
 25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-benzylcytosine.

Example 2

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine.

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine (2.15 g, 5 mmol) in 50% aqueous methanol (100 mL) is hydrogenated in a Parr apparatus in the presence of powdered calcium carbonate (1 g) and Pd-BaSO₄ catalyst (0.5 g) at the initial pressure of 45 psi. The catalyst is removed by filtration, and the filtrate is concentrated in

vacuo. The residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 1-(2,5-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine (**3**, R = H, 1.06 g, 60%), mp 174-177 °C. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 10.30 (bs, 1H, NHAc), 8.05 (d, 1H, H-6, J_{5,6} = 7.5 Hz), 7.43 (d, 1H, H-5, J_{5,6} = 7.5 Hz), 5.90 (d, 1H, H-1', J_{1',2'} = 1.0 Hz), 5.46 (m, 1H, H-2'), 4.30-4.80 (3H, m, H-4',5',5''), 2.10, 2.27 (2s, 9H, 3Ac), 1.60-2.00 (m, 2H, H-3',3'').

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 3'-bromo-xylo nucleosides, the following nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-methylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-ethylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-phenylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-benzoyl-5-benzylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-methylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-ethylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-phenylcytosine and
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-anisoyl-5-benzylcytosine.

Example 3

1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)cytosine (3, R = H).

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine (4.31 g, 0.01 mol) is treated with saturated methanolic ammonia (100 mL) at 0 °C for 30 minutes, and then concentrated in vacuo below 35 °C. The residue is crystallized from methanol to give 1-(3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)cytosine (**3**, R = H). The UV and ¹H NMR (D₂O) are consistent with the xylo-structure

In a similar manner but using the corresponding N-acylated cytidines, the following nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 5 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorocytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlororocytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromocytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
10 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
15 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-aminocarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenylcytosine and
1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine.

Example 4

20 3'-Deoxycytidine (4, R = H).

25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine (3, R = H, 700 mg, 2 mmol) is dissolved in methanolic ammonia (20 mL, saturated at 0 °C) and the solution is kept overnight at room temperature. The solvent is removed by evaporation in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in ethanol (20 mL), and then the pH of the solution is adjusted to 3 with 2N sulfuric acid. The precipitates are collected and crystallized from water-ethanol to give 3'-deoxycytidine (4) as hemisulfate (408 mg, 74%). Mp 202-203 °C (decomp). ¹H NMR (D₂O) δ : 8.23 (d, 1H, H-6, J_{5,6} = 8.0 Hz), 6.27 (d, 1H, H-5, J_{5,6} = 8.0

Hz), 5.84 (d, 1H, H-1', $J_{1,2'} = 1.0$ Hz), 4.6 (m, 1H, H-2'), 3.9 (m, 3H, H-4',5',5''), 1.95-2.15 (m, 2H, H-2',2'').

In a similar manner but using the corresponding acylated 3'-deoxynucleosides, the following nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared: 3'-deoxy-5-methylcytidine, 3'-deoxy-5-ethylcytidine, 3'-deoxy-5-*n*-propylcytidine, 3'-deoxy-5-*i*-propylcytidine, 3'-deoxy-5-phenylcytidine, and 3'-deoxy-5-benzylcytidine.

Example 5

2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3'-deoxyuridine.

2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-N⁴-acetylcytidine (1.06 g, 3 mol) is dissolved in 70% acetic acid, and the solution is gently refluxed overnight. After concentration of the mixture in vacuo, the residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3'-deoxyuridine (660 mg, 96%). ¹H NMR spectrum shows that it contains two acetyl groups, two methylene groups and two olefinic protons.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 3'-deoxycytidines (4), the following 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3'-deoxyuridines and their L-counterparts are prepared: 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-methyluridine, 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-ethyluridine, 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-*n*-propyluridine, 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-*i*-propyluridine, 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-phenyluridine and 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-benzyluridine.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 3'-deoxy cytosine nucleosides (2), the following uracil nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-fluorouridine,
2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-chlorouridine,
2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-bromouridine,
2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-iodouridine,
2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-methyluridine,
2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-ethyluridine,
2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-*n*-propyluridine,

2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-*i*-propyluridine,
 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-vinyluridine,
 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
 5 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-phenyluridine and
 2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-benzyluridine.

Example 6

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)uracil (5, R = H).

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁴-acetylcytosine (2, R = H, R' = CH₃) (4.31 g, 0.01 mol) is dissolved in 70% acetic acid, and the solution is gently refluxed for 4 hours. After concentration of the mixture in vacuo, the residue is
 15 crystallized from ethanol to give 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3'-bromo-3'-deoxyuridine (5, 2.80 g, 91%). ¹H NMR spectrum shows that it contains two acetyl groups, two methylene groups and two olefinic protons.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 2',5'-di-O-acetyl-3'-bromo-3'-deoxy-N⁴-acylcytidines (2), the following 1,5-di-O-acetyl-3'-bromo-3'-deoxyuridines and
 20 their L-counterparts are prepared:

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
 25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,
 5 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil and
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil.

Example 7

10 3'-Deoxyuridine (**6b**, $R = H$).

2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3'-deoxyuridine (1.06 g, 3 mol) is dissolved in methanolic ammonia (10 mL, saturated at 0 °C) overnight. After concentration of the mixture in vacuo, the residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 3'-deoxyuridine (**6b**, 660 mg, 96%).

15 In a similar manner but using the corresponding acylated 3'-deoxy-uracil nucleosides (**6b**) or their L-counterparts, the following nucleosides are prepared: 3-Deoxy-5-methyluridine, 3-deoxy-5-ethyluridine, 3-deoxy-5-*n*-propyluridine, 3-deoxy-5-*i*-propyluridine, 3-deoxy-5-phenyluridine, and 3-deoxy-5-benzyluridine.

Example 8

1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)uracil (**6a**, $R = H$).

20 1-(2',5'-Di-O-acetyl-3'-bromo-3'-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)uracil (**5**, $R = H$) is dissolved in methanolic ammonia (10 mL, saturated at 0 °C). After 1 hour at 0 °C, the mixture is concentrated in vacuo, and the residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 3'-bromo-3'-deoxyuridine (**6a**, 660 mg, 96%). The UV and ¹H NMR are consistent with the structure.

25 In a similar manner but using the corresponding acylated 3'-bromo-xylosyluracils, the following nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
 5 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,
 10 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-aminocarbonylvinyl)uracil,
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
 15 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil and
 1-(3-Bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil.

Example 9

2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (7, R = H).

20 A mixture of uridine (24.4 g, 0.1 mol) and triphenylchloromethane (83.5 g, 0.3 mol) in anhydrous pyridine (250 mL) is stirred overnight at room temperature, and then is refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the mixture is poured into water with vigorous stirring. The water is removed by decantation, and the gummy residue is treated with water, stirred and the water decanted. This process is repeated several times, after which the residue is treated with hot water (500 mL), stirred and the water decanted.
 25 This process is repeated twice. The residue is dissolved in methylene chloride, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated in vacuo. The residue is dissolved in minimum amount of benzene, and the solution diluted with ethyl ether to turbidity, and the mixture left overnight at 15°C. The precipitates are collected and recrystallized from benzene-ethyl ether to give **7** (R = H) (22.8 g, 31%), mp 224-225°C. The combined filtrates are

concentrated, and the residue dissolved in methylene chloride and chromatographed over a silica gel column using methylene chloride-ethanol (99 : 1 v/v), (98 : 2 v/v) and (97:3 v/v). Compound 7 is eluted first (10 g, 14%), followed by 3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (31.0 g, 42.5%).

5 In a similar manner but using the corresponding nucleosides, the following 2',5'-di-O-protected and 3',5'-di-O-protected nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-fluorouridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-chlorouridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-bromouridine,
- 10 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-iodouridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-methyluridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethyluridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*n*-propyluridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*i*-propyluridine,
- 15 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-vinyluridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethynyluridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
- 20 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-phenyluridine,
- 2',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-benzyluridine,
- 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-fluorouridine,
- 25 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-chlorouridine,
- 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-bromouridine,
- 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-iodouridine,
- 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-methyluridine,
- 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethyluridine,
- 30 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*n*-propyluridine,
- 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*i*-propyluridine,

3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-vinyluridine,
3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethynyluridine,
3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
5 3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-phenyluridine and
3',5'-Di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-benzyluridine.

10

Example 10

3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (8, R = H).

15

To a cooled solution of 2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (7, R = H, 7.28 g, 1mmol) in pyridine (100 mL) is added drop wise mesyl chloride (1 mL), and the reaction is kept overnight at 4°C. The reaction is quenched by addition of ethanol (5 mL). After 2 hours of stirring at room temperature, the mixture is concentrated in vacuo. The residue is triturated with ethanol (250 mL), and the solid collected, and recrystallized from ethanol to give 8 (R = H) (7.45 g, 92%), mp 225-226°C.

20

In a similar manner but using the corresponding nucleosides, the following 2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethylated and 3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethylated nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

25

3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-fluorouridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-chlorouridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-bromouridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-iodouridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-methyluridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethyluridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*n*-propyluridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*i*-propyluridine,
3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-vinyluridine,

- 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethynyluridine,
 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
 5 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-phenyluridine,
 3'-O-Mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-benzyluridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-fluorouridine,
 10 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-chlorouridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-bromouridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-iodouridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-methyluridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethyluridine,
 15 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*n*-propyluridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*i*-propyluridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-vinyluridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethynyluridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
 20 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-phenyluridine and
 25 2'-O-Mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-benzyluridine.

Example 11

2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)uracil (9, R = H, X' = OH).

A mixture of 3'-O-mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (806 mg, 1 mmol), sodium benzoate (2 g) in dimethylformamide (40 mL) is heated at 130-140 °C overnight.

The mixture is cooled to room temperature, and poured onto 1L of water with stirring. The precipitates are collected by decantation and triturated with ethanol (100 mL) to give 3'-anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)uracil (**9**, R = H, X' = OH), (500 mg, 75%), mp 237°C.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 3'-O-mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridines (**8**), the following 2,3'-anhydro-di-O-triphenylmethylated nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil.
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-uridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)-uridine,
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenyluridine and
- 2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzyluridine.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 2'-O-mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridines, the following 2,2'-anhydro-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethylated nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-chlorouridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-bromouridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-iodouridine,
 5 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-ethyluridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-vinyluridine,
 10 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
 15 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-uridine,
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)-uridine,
 20 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-phenyluridine and
 2,2'-Anhydro-1-(3,5-di-O-triphenylmethyl- β -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-benzyluridine.

Example 12

3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (11, R = H, X = I, X' = OH).

25 A mixture of 3'-O-mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (**8**, 1.61 g, 2 mmol), sodium iodide (3 g, 20 mmol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (40 mL) is heated at reflux overnight. The solvent is removed by evaporation in vacuo, the residue is dissolved in methylene chloride. The solution is washed successively with 5% sodium thiosulfate and water, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness in vacuo. The residue is chromatographed over a silica gel column using methylene chloride-ethyl ether (3:1 v/v)

as the eluent to give 703 mg (42%) of 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (11, R = H, X = I, X' = OH).

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 3'-O-mesyl-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridines (8), the following 3'-iodo derivatives are and their L-counterparts prepared:

3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-fluorouridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-chlorouridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-bromouridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-iodouridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-methyluridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethyluridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*n*-propyluridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*i*-propyluridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-vinyluridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethynyluridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-phenyluridine and
3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-benzyluridine.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 2'-O-mesyl-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridines, the following 2'-iodo derivatives and their L-counterparts are prepared:

2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-fluorouridine,
2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-chlorouridine,
2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-bromouridine,
2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-iodouridine,

- 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-methyluridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethyluridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-triphenylmethyl-5-*n*-propyluridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-*i*-propyluridine,
 5 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-vinyluridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-ethynyluridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine,
 10 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uridine,
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-phenyluridine and
 2'-Deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyl-5-benzyluridine.

Example 13

- 15 *3'-Iodo-3'-deoxyuridine.*

20 3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridine (840 mg, 1 mmol) (**11**, R=H, X=I, X' = OH) is dissolved in a 10 : 1 mixture of methylene chloride and trifluoroacetic acid (20 mL), and the mixture is kept at room temperature. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is triturated with ethyl ether (15 mL x 2). The ether-insoluble
 20 residue is crystallized from methanol ether to give 3'-iodo-3'-deoxyuridine (312 mg, 88.1%).

25 In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-2',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridines, the following 3'-iodouridine derivatives and their L-counterparts are prepared: 3'-Deoxy-3'-iodo-5-fluorouridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-chlorouridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-bromo-uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-iodouridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-methyl-uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-ethyluridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-*n*-propyluridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-*i*-propyl-uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-vinyluridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-ethynyluridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-(2-chloro-vinyl)-uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-

5-(2-methoxycarbonyl-vinyl)uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-(2-hydroxy-carbonyl-vinyl)-uridine, 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-phenyluridine, and 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-5-benzyl-uridine.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-3',5'-di-O-triphenylmethyluridines, the following 2'-iodouridine derivatives and their L-counterparts are prepared: 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-fluorouridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-chlorouridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-bromo-uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-iodouridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-methyl-uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-ethyluridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-*n*-propyluridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-*i*-propyl-uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-vinyluridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-ethynyluridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-(2-chlorovinyl)-uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-(2-bromovinyl)uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-(2-iodovinyl)uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-(2-hydroxycarbonyl-vinyl)-uridine, 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-phenyluridine, and 2'-deoxy-2'-iodo-5-benzyluridine.

Example 14

9-(2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)adenine (**14**, $R=H$, $X=Br$, $Y=NH_2$, $Z=H$).

Compound **14** ($R=2,5,5$ -trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl, $X=Br$, $Y=NH_2$, $Z=H$, 500 mg, 1 mmol) is dissolved in methanolic hydrogen chloride prepared by addition of 3 drops of acetyl chloride in 10 mL of methanol. After 30 minutes at room temperature, 3 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution is added, and the mixture concentrated in vacuo to dryness. The residue is triturated with ethanol until supernatant does not show significant UV absorption at 260 nm. The ethanol extracts are concentrated, and the residue is crystallized from methanol to give the desired **14** ($R=H$, $X=Br$, $Y=NH_2$, $Z=H$), 325 g (87%). 1H NMR (D_6 -DMSO) δ : 8.16, 8.32 (2s, H-2 and H-8), 6.10 (d, 1H, H-1', $J_{1',2'} = 3.9$ Hz), 5.91 (dd, 1H, H-2', $J_{1',2'} = 3.9$, $J_{2',3'} = 4.1$ Hz), 5.85 (dd, 1H, H-3', $J_{2',3'} = 4.1$, $J_{3',4'} = 5.1$ Hz), 4.38 (dt, 1H, H-4', $J_{3',4'} = 5.1$, $J_{4',5'} = J_{4',5''} = 5.0$ Hz), 3.79 (dd, 2H, H-5',5''), 2.09 (s, 3H, Ac).

In a similar manner but using the corresponding purine nucleosides, the following 2'-O-acetyl-3'-bromo-3'-deoxy-D-xylo nucleosides (**14**) and their L-counterparts are prepared:

9-(2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)guanine,
 9-(2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,
 9-(2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,
 9-(2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-amino-6-chloropurine,
 5 9-(2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methylthiopurine and
 9-(2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy- β -D-xylofuranosyl]-6-methoxypurine.

Example 15

9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylofuranosyl]adenine (14, R=2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxalan-2-one-2-yl, X=Br, Y=NH₂, Z=H).

10 A mixture of adenosine (13, Y = NH₂, Z = H, 10 g, 0.037 mol) and α -acetoxy-*iso*-butyryl bromide (24 g, 0.117 mol) in acetonitrile (120 mL) is stirred at room temperature for 45 minutes. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with sodium bicarbonate solution and water, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue is crystallized from methanol to give 6.5 g (35%)
 15 of 14 (X = Br, Y = NH₂, Z = H), mp 169-170°C. ¹H NMR (D₆-DMSO) δ : 8.17, 8.26 (2s, 1H each, H-2 and H-6), 6.16 (d, 1H, H-1', J_{1',2'} = 3.5 Hz), 5.94 (dd, 1H, H-2', J_{1',2'} = 3.5 Hz, J_{2',3'} = 3.0 Hz), 4.92 (dd, 1H, H-3', J_{2',3'} = 3.0 Hz, J_{3',4'} = 4.8 Hz), 4.54 (m, 1H, H-4'), 3.94 (m, 2H, H-5', 5''), 2.10 (s, 3H, Ac), 1.73, 1.58, 1.47 (3s, 3H each, CH₃ groups on 5'). The mother liquor of crystallization of 14 contains a mixture of 2'-bromo-2'-deoxy-D-arabinosyl isomer 15, as judged by ¹H NMR.
 20

In a similar manner but using the corresponding purine nucleosides, the following 3'-bromo-3'-deoxy derivatives (14) and their L-counterparts are prepared:

9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylofuranosyl]-guanine,
 25 9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylofuranosyl]-6-chloropurine,
 9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylofuranosyl]-2,6-dichloropurine,
 30 9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylofuranosyl]-2-amino-6-chloropurine,

9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylo-furanosyl]-6-methylthiopurine,

9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylo-furanosyl]-6-methoxypurine,

5 9-[3-O-Acetyl-2-bromo-2-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-arabino-furanosyl]guanine,

9-[3-O-Acetyl-2-bromo-2-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-arabino-furanosyl]-6-chloropurine,

10 9-[3-O-Acetyl-2-bromo-2-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-arabino-furanosyl]-2,6-dichloropurine,

9-[3-O-Acetyl-2-bromo-2-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-arabino-furanosyl]-2-amino-6-chloropurine,

9-[3-O-Acetyl-2-bromo-2-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-arabino-furanosyl]-6-methylthiopurine and

15 (i) 9-[3-O-Acetyl-2-bromo-2-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-arabino-furanosyl]-6-methoxypurine.

Example 16

2',3'-Anhydroadenosine (18, $Y = NH_2$, $Z = H$).

20 9-[2-O-Acetyl-3-bromo-3-deoxy-5-O-(2,5,5-trimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-on-2-yl)- β -D-xylo-furanosyl]adenine 14 (5.0 g, 0.01 mol) is treated with 1M sodium methoxide in methanol (20 mL) for 1 hour at room temperature. The mixture is neutralized with glacial acetic acid, and is kept refrigerator overnight. Crystalline 18 deposited is collected by filtration, 2.1 g (84%). 1H NMR spectrum of this sample is identical with the one prepared by an alternative procedure by Mendez, E. *et al.* J. Virol. 1998, 72, 4737.

25 In a similar manner but using the corresponding purine nucleosides, the following 2',3'-anhydro-D-ribo derivatives (18) and their L-counterparts are prepared: 2',3'-anhydroguanosine, 9-(2,3-anhydro- β -D-ribofuranosyl]-6-methylmercaptapurine, and 9-(2,3-anhydro- β -D-ribo-furanosyl]-2-amino-6-methoxypurine.

Example 17

9-(3-Deoxy-3-iodo- β -D-xylofuranosyl)adenine (**19**, $X = I$, $Y = NH_2$, $Z = H$).

A mixture of **18** ($Y = NH_2$, $Z = H$, 1 g, 4 mmol), sodium iodide (1.5 g, 10 mmol), sodium acetate (100 mg) and acetic acid (5 mL) in butanone (30 mL) is gently refluxed for 3 hours. Evaporation of the solvent in vacuo, and trituration of the residue with water afford **19** ($X = I$, $Y = NH_2$, $Z = H$), 1.2 g (80%). 1H NMR (D_6 -DMSO) δ : 8.24, 8.34 (2s, 1H each, H-2 and H-8), 5.90 (d, 1H, H-1', $J_{1',2'} = 4.7$ Hz), 4.96 (dd, 1H, H-2', $J_{1',2'} = 4.7$, $J_{2',3'} = 4.9$ Hz), 4.60 (dd, 1H, H-3', $J_{2',3'} = 4.9$, $J_{3',4'} = 4.7$ Hz), 4.80 (d, 2H, H-5', 5''), 4.40 (m, 1H, H-4').

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 2',3'-anhydro-D-ribo purine nucleosides (14), the following 3'-deoxy-3'-iodo-D-xylo nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

9-(3-Deoxy-3-iodo- β -D-xylofuranosyl)guanine,

9-(3-Deoxy-3-iodo- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptapurine,

9-(3-Deoxy-3-iodo- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine,

9-(3-Deoxy-3-iodo- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-amino-6-methylmercaptapurine and

9-(3-Deoxy-3-iodo- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-amino-6-methoxypurine.

Example 18

3'-Deoxyadenosine (**20**, $Y = NH_2$, $Z = H$).

A solution of **19** ($Y = NH_2$, $Z = H$, 380 mg, 1 mmol) in methanol (75 mL) is shaken in an atmosphere of hydrogen in the presence of 5% Pd/BaSO₄ catalyst (100 mg) and triethylamine (1 mL) at the initial pressure of 3 atm overnight. After removal of the catalyst, the solvent is evaporated in vacuo, and the residue is crystallized from methanol to give 3'-deoxyadenosine **20** ($Y = NH_2$, $Z = H$), 200 mg (80%). The 1H NMR spectrum of this sample is identical with that of cordycepin.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 3'-iodo-D-xylo purine nucleosides (**19**), the following 3'-deoxy-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared: 9-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)guanine, 9-(3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-

purine, 9-(3-deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine, 9-(3-deoxy-β-D-erythropento-furanosyl)-2-amino-purine and 9-(3-deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-amino-6-methoxypurine.

Example 19

5 3-(β-D-Ribofuranosyl)-8-azaxanthine (24, X = OH, Y = N).

10 To a solution of 5-nitrouridine (300 mg) in DMF (60 mL) is added sodium azide (100 mg), and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in minimal amount of hot water and the pH adjusted to 3-4 with diluted hydrochloric acid. The precipitates are recrystallized from water, mp 164-166 °C (dec). anal Calcd for C₉H₁₁N₅O₆H₂O: C, 35.64; H, 4.29; N, 23.1. Found: C, 35.96; H, 4.01; N, 23.43.

Example 20

1,2-O-Isopropylidene-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-3-O-phenoxythiocarbonyl-α-D-xylofuranose (26, R=Ph).

15 To a solution of 1,2-O-isopropylidene-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-α-D-xylofuranose (25, 25.0g, 0.1 mol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (25 g, 0.2 mol) in dry pyridine (250 mL) is added drop wise a solution of phenyl chlorothionoformate (50 g, 0.3 mol) in acetonitrile (100 mL), and the reaction mixture is stirred at 50-60°C for 24 hours. The solution is concentrated in *vacuo*, and the residue is partitioned between methylene chloride and water. The organic layer is washed successively with water, 0.1N sodium hydroxide, water, 0.1N hydrochloric acid and water, and dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to give 26 (R = Ph) as a syrup in quantitative yield (38.2 g). This
20 syrup is used directly in the next step.

Example 21

3-Deoxy-1,2-O-isopropylidene-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- α -D-erythropentofuranose (27).

5 A solution of tri-*n*-butyltin hydride (58 g, 0.2 mol) in toluene (300 mL) is added over a period of 3 hours to a refluxing solution of compound **26** (R = Ph) above (19.2 g, 50 mmol) and 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile (2.5 g, 15 mmol) in toluene (400 mL). The mixture is concentrated in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in acetonitrile (300 mL), and the solution is extracted with petroleum ether (4 x 100 mL) to remove tri-*n*-butyltin derivatives. The acetonitrile layer is concentrated. The thin layer chromatography of the residue shows one major spot and ¹H NMR spectrum indicates the presence of three methyl groups and no aromatic protons but contamination of a small amount of butyltin derivatives. Without further purification, this product is used in the next step.

Example 22

1,2-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-D-erythropentofuranose (28).

15 To a stirred solution of **23** (2.32 g, 0.01 mol) in a mixture of acetic acid (60 mL) and acetic anhydride (6 mL) is added drop wise concentrated sulfuric acid (3 mL) with ice-cooling at such a rate that the temperature is maintained at 15-25°C. After standing overnight at room temperature, ice (250 g) is added to the solution, and then the mixture is extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 50 mL). The combined extracts are washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (3 x 30 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to give **28** (2.8 g, 100%) as an anomeric mixture. This compound is sufficiently pure to be used in the next step without further purification.

Example 23

1-(2-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil (29, X=OH, Z=F).

25 A mixture of 5-fluorouracil (2.6 g, 0.02 mol), ammonium sulfate (ca. 30 mg) in hexamethyldisilazane (15 mL) is refluxed until a clear solution is obtained. The solvent is

removed in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL), and 1,2-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-D-erythropentofuranose (**28**, 5.5 g, 0.02 mol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL) is added. To the solution is added tin tetrachloride (5.2 g, 0.02 mol), and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature, then is heated for 3 hours at 40-50°C for 3 hours. Saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (40 mL) is added and stirred until carbon dioxide evolution ceases. The mixture is filtered through a Celite pad. The organic layer is separated, washed carefully with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (20 mL x 2) and water (20 mL x 2), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness in vacuo. The residue is crystallized from ethanol to give **29** (4.3 g, 62%).

In a similar manner but using the corresponding pyrimidine bases, the following 2',5'-protected 3'-deoxy-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-uracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyl-uracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-allyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)-uracil,

- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)-uracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)-uracil,
- 5 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonyl-vinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonyl-vinyl)uracil,
- 10 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-fluorocytosine,
- 15 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-chlorocytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-bromocytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,
- 20 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-cyanocytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyl-cytosine,
- 25 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyl-cytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-acetylcytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,
- 30 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 35 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,

- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-allylcytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethynylcytosine,
- 5 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)-cytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)-cytosine,
- 10 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)-cytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
- 15 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-phenylcytosine and
- 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine.

20 In a similar manner but using the corresponding pyrimidine and purine bases, the following 2',5'-di-O-acetyl 3'-deoxy-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
- 25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
- 30 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-allyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,
- 5 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
- 10 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-fluorocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-chlorocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-bromocytosine,
- 15 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-cyanocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-acetylcytosine,
- 20 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,
- 25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-allylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethynylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
- 30 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-phenylcytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine,
 5 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁶-benzoyladenine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,
 10 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine and
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptapurine.

Example 24

1-(2-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine
 (30, X=Cl, Y=H).

15 A mixture of 6-chloropurine (3.1 g, 0.02 mol), ammonium sulfate (ca. 30 mg) in hexamethyldisilazane (25 mL) is refluxed until a clear solution is obtained. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (30 mL), and 1,2-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl-D-erythropentofuranose (28, 5.5 g, 0.02 mol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL) is added. To the solution is added tin tetrachloride (5.2 g,
 20 0.02 mol), and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature, then is heated for 3 hours at 40-50 °C for 3 hours. Saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (50 mL) is added and stirred until carbon dioxide evolution ceases. The mixture is filtered through a Celite pad. The organic layer is separated, washed carefully with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (30 mL x 2) and water (30 mL x 2), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated
 25 to dryness in vacuo. The residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 30 (4.3 g, 62%).

In a similar manner but using the corresponding purine bases, the following 2',5'-protected 3'-deoxy-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-N⁶-benzoyladenine,

1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,

1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,

5 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,

1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,

10 1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine and

1-(2-O-Acetyl-3-deoxy-5-O-methoxycarbonyl- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-methylmercapto-purine.

Example 25

1,2-O-Isopropylidene-5-O-t-butyl-diphenylsilyl- α -D-xylofuranose (31).

15 A mixture of 1,2-O-isopropylidene- α -D-xylofuranose (38.0 g, 0.2 mol), *t*-butyl-diphenylchlorosilane (70 g, 0.25 mol) and imidazole (21.5 g, 0.4 mol) in *N,N*-dimethyl-formamide (50 mL) is stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in ethyl acetate (1 L), and extracted with water (300 mL x 2) and brine (300 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness in
20 vacuo to give crude **31** (86 g, 100%), which is used directly in the next step without further purification.

Example 26

1,2-O-Isopropylidene-3-O-mesyl-5-O-t-butyl-diphenylsilyl- α -D-xylofuranose (32, R = Ms).

25 Mesyl chloride (17 g, 0.15 mol) is added drop wise to a solution of crude **31** (43 g, 0.1 mol) in pyridine (100 mL), and the mixture is kept standing overnight at room temperature. Crashed ice (1 L) is added to the mixture, and the product is extracted with methylene chloride (300 mL x 3). The extracts are combined, washed with water (300 mL x 2) and brine (300 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to dryness.

Traces of pyridine are removed by repeated azeotropic distillation with toluene. The residue is dissolved in methylene chloride (500 mL) and washed with 0.1N hydrochloric acid (250 mL x 2) and water, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness to give crude **32** (R = Ms), 50.1 g (99 %). The ¹H NMR spectrum of this material is sufficiently pure to be used directly in the next step.

Example 27

Methyl 3-O-mesyl-5-O-t-butyldiphenylsilyl-D-xylofuranoside (33, R = Ms).

A solution of crude **32** (50 g, 0.1 mol) in 1% anhydrous methanolic hydrogen chloride (1L) is kept overnight at room temperature, and then evaporated in vacuo to a syrup which is partitioned between water (100 mL) and methylene chloride (150 mL). The organic layer is separated, washed with water (100 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo, giving crude **33**, a syrup, weighing 48 g (100 %). This material is not further purified but used directly in the next step.

Example 28

Methyl 2,3-anhydro-5-O-t-butyldiphenylsilyl-D-ribofuranoside (34).

Crude **33** (48 g, 0.1 mol) is dissolved in methylene chloride (100 mL) and treated with 2M methanolic sodium methoxide (60 mL), and refluxed for 2 hours. Insoluble salt is removed by filtration, and the filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to dryness. The residue is dissolved in methylene chloride (150 mL), washed with water (100 mL x 2), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness to give crude **30** (38 g, 100 %), which can be used directly in the next step without purification.

Example 29

Methyl 3-deoxy-3-iodo-5-O-t-butylidiphenylsilyl-D-ribofuranoside (35, X = I).

A mixture of **34** (38 g, 0.1 mol), sodium iodide (60 g, 0.4 mol), sodium acetate (0.6 g) and acetic acid (70 mL) in acetone (500 mL) is heated under reflux for 8 hours. The acetone is removed in vacuo, and the residue is partitioned between methylene chloride (500 mL) and water (250 mL). The organic layer is separated, washed with 250 mL each of water, 0.1 M sodium thiosulfate solution, water and dried over sodium sulfate. After removal of the solvent in vacuo, the residue is crystallized from ethanol to afford 31 g (60.5 %) of **35** (X = I).

Example 30

Methyl 3-deoxy-5-O-t-butylidiphenylsilyl-D-erythropentofuranoside (37, from 35).

Compound **35** (X = I, 25.6 g, 0.05 mol) is hydrogenated in ethyl acetate (250 mL) with 5% palladium on charcoal (2 g). After the consumption of hydrogen ceased, the mixture is filtered, and the filtrate is washed with water (150 mL x 2), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness to give crude **37** (19 g, quantitative yield) which is sufficiently pure to be used directly in the next step.

Example 31

Methyl 3-deoxy-5-O-t-butylidiphenylsilyl-D-erythropentofuranoside (36, from 34).

A suspension of lithium aluminum hydride (8.4 g, 0.2 mol) in dry ethyl ether (220 mL) is stirred under nitrogen atmosphere and cooled in an ice bath. To this suspension is added drop wise a solution of **34** (19 g, 0.05 mol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (250 mL) at such a rate that the temperature remains below 25 °C. After 2 hours, another 1 g of lithium aluminum hydride is charged, and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature. The stirred mixture is cooled in an ice bath, and isopropanol (100 mL) is added drop wise, followed by acetone (50 mL). The mixture is concentrated in vacuo, and the residue is partitioned between ethyl ether (250 mL) and water (150 mL). Insoluble materials are

filtered through Celite pad which is washed with ether. The ether layer is separated, washed successively with 0.2N hydrochloric acid (150 mL x 2) and water (150 mL x 2), dried over sodium sulfate, and then concentrated to dryness to give crude **36** (16.5 g, 87%).

5

Example 32

Methyl 3-deoxy-D-erythropentofuranoside (38).

10

To a solution of crude **36** (13 g, 0.03 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (320 mL) is added drop wise 1M solution of triethylammonium hydrogen fluoride (100 mL), and the mixture is stirred for 24 hours. The mixture is concentrated in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in water (200 mL). Powdered calcium carbonate (20 g) is added, and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature, and then filtered. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to a syrup which is dissolved in chloroform (200 mL), filtered, and evaporated in vacuo to afford crude **38** (4.5 g, 100%).

Example 33

15

1,2,5-Tri-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-D-erythropentofuranose (38).

20

To a vigorously stirred mixture of crude methyl 3-deoxy-D-erythropentofuranoside **37** (4.5 g, 0.03 mol) and acetic acid (80 mL) is added acetic anhydride (40 mL), followed by sulfuric acid (4 mL), and the reaction mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture is partitioned between methylene chloride (150 mL) and ice-water (400 mL). The water layer is extracted with methylene chloride (100 mL x 2). The combined organic layers are washed twice with equal volumes of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate, once with water, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness in vacuo. Traces of acetic acid are removed by several azeotropic distillations with toluene to give crude **38** (5.1 g, 66%). The ¹H NMR spectrum shows that the major constituent of this product contains 3 acetyl groups and is the β-anomer.

25

Example 34

1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil (3'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine, 6b, X = OH, R = F).

A mixture of an acetyl derivative of **39** (X = OH, Z = F, 3.3 g, 0.01 mol) and triethylamine (3 mL) in methanol (100 mL) is stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture is concentrated in vacuo to dryness, and the residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 3'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine (2.0 g, 83%), mp 169-171 °C. ¹H NMR (D₆-DMSO) δ: 11.7 (bs, 1H, N³-H, exchangeable), 8.44 (d, 1H, H-6, J_{6,F} = 7.1 Hz), 5.7 (d, 1H, 2'-OH, exchangeable), 5.5 (narrow m, 1H, H-1'), 5.3 (t, 1H, 5'-OH, exchangeable), 4.1-4.5 (m, 2H, H-2' and H-4'), 3.5-3.9 (m, 2H, H-5', 5''), 1.6-2.2 (m, 2H, H-3', 3'').

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 2',5'-di-O-acetyl pyrimidine and purine nucleoside, the following 3'-deoxy-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-allyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy-β-D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,

- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil,
- 5 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)cytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-fluorocytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-chlorocytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-bromocytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,
- 10 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-cyanocytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-acetylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,
- 15 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-allylcytosine,
- 20 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethynylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
- 25 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-phenylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-chloroadenine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,
- 30 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,
- 1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,

1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,
1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine and
1-(3-Deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptapurine.

Example 35

5 *1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil.*

10 A mixture of 5-fluorouracil (0.02 mol), ammonium sulfate (ca. 30 mg) in hexamethyldisilazane (15 mL) is refluxed until a clear solution is obtained. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL), and 1,2,5-tri-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl-D-xylofuranose (5.5 g, 0.02 mol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL) is added. To the solution is added tin tetrachloride (5.2 g, 0.02 mol), and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature, then is heated for 3 hours at 40-50 °C for 3 hours. Saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (40 mL) is added and stirred until carbon dioxide evolution ceases. The mixture is filtered through a Celite pad. The organic layer is separated, washed carefully with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (20 mL x 2) and water (20 mL x 2), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness in vacuo. The residue is crystallized from ethanol to give the title product (62%). The ¹H NMR spectrum of this sample is compatible with the structure indicated.

20 In a similar manner but using the corresponding pyrimidine and purine bases, the following 2',5'-di-O-acetyl 3'-substituted xylo-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-allyluracil,
- 5 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
- 10 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorocytosine,
- 15 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanocytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonylcytosine,
- 20 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-acetylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
- 25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-allylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynylcytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
- 30 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phénylcytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁶-benzoyladenine,
5 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine,
10 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptopurine,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
15 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
20 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-allyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluracil,
25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
30 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil,
1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorocytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-cyancytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-acetylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,

10 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-allylcytosine,

15 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,

20 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-N⁶-benzoyladenine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,

25 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylopentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl-β-D-xylopentofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine and

1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-tosyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptapurine.

Example 36

1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)thymine.

A mixture of thymine (0.02 mol), ammonium sulfate (ca. 30 mg) in hexamethyldisilazane (15 mL) is refluxed until a clear solution is obtained. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL), and 1,2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl-D-xylofuranose (5.5 g, 0.02 mol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL) is added. To the solution is added tin tetrachloride (5.2 g, 0.02 mol), and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature, then is heated for 3 hours at 40-50 °C for 3 hours. Saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (40 mL) is added and stirred until carbon dioxide evolution ceases. The mixture is filtered through a Celite pad. The organic layer is separated, washed carefully with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (20 mL x 2) and water (20 mL x 2), dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to dryness in vacuo. The residue is crystallized from ethanol to give product (4.3 g, 62%). The ¹H NMR spectrum of this sample is compatible with the structure indicated.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding pyrimidine and purine bases, the following 2',5'-di-O-acetyl 3'-substituted xylo-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyluracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyluracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
- 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,

1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,
 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,
 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylopentofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,
 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylopentofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine and
 5 1-(2,3,5-Tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptapurine.

Example 37

1-(3-Deoxy-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil.

10 A mixture of 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil (4.24 g, 0.01 mol) in methanolic ammonia (100 mL) is stirred for 30 minutes at 0 °C, and is concentrated in vacuo to dryness, and the residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 1-(3-deoxy-3-O-mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil (2.82 g, 83%). ¹H NMR (D₆-DMSO) showed that there is no acetyl group but one mesyl group in the molecule.

15 In a similar manner but using the corresponding 2',5'-di-O-acetyl pyrimidine and purine nucleosides, the following 3'-O-mesyl-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
 20 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyluracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyluracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
 25 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-allyluracil,

- 1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluracil,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,
5 1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)cytosine,
10 1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorocytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorocytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-bromocytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanocytosine,
15 1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-acetylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,
20 1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-allylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynylcytosine,
25 1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,
30 1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-phenylcytosine,
1-(3-O-Mesyl-β-D-xylofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine,

- 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-chloroadenine,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,
 5 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine and
 1-(3-O-Mesyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptapurine.

Example 38

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil.

- 10 A mixture of 1-(2,3,5-tri-O-acetyl- β -D-xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorouracil (3.88 g, 0.01 mol) and triethylamine (3 mL) in methanol (100 mL) is stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture is concentrated in vacuo to dryness, and the residue is crystallized from ethanol to give 1-(β -D-xylo-furanosyl)-5-fluorouracil (2.0 g, 76 %). The UV and ^1H NMR ($\text{Me}_2\text{SO}-d_6$) spectra of this sample are consistent with the product
 15 structure.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 2',5'-di-O-acetyl pyrimidine and purine bases, the following xylo-nucleosides and their L-counterparts are prepared:

- 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorouracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-bromouracil,
 20 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanouracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonyluracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonyluracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-acetyluracil,
 25 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-methyluracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-ethyluracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyluracil,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyluracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-vinyluracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-allyluracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynyluracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)uracil,

5 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)uracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)uracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)uracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-phenyluracil,

10 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-benzyluracil,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)cytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-fluorocytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-chlorocytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-bromocytosine,

15 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-iodocytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-cyanocytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-ethoxycarbonylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-aminocarbonylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-acetylcytosine,

20 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-methylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-ethylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-vinylcytosine,

25 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-allylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-ethynylcytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)cytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)cytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)cytosine,

30 1-(β-D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)cytosine,

1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-phenylcytosine,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-5-benzylcytosine,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-2-chloroadenine,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-6-chloropurine,
 5 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-2,6-dichloropurine,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-chloropurine,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-2-acetamido-6-methoxypurine,
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-6-methoxypurine and
 1-(β -D-Xylofuranosyl)-6-methylmercaptapurine.

Example 39

2',3'-O-Isopropylidene-5'-O-triphenylmethyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine.

To a stirred solution of 2',3'-O-isopropylidene-5'-O-triphenylmethyluridine (1 g) in 50 mL of anhydrous acetonitrile and triethylamine (0.76 g) are added 2,4,6-triisopropylbenzenesulfonyl chloride (1.15 g) and DMAP (232 mg) at 0 °C, and the reaction mixture is stirred for 1 day at room temperature. Hydroxylamine hydrochloride (263 mg) is then added, and the mixture is further stirred for 1 day at room temperature. The reaction is quenched by addition of water, and the product is extracted with chloroform (200 mL). The organic layer is washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography (5% MeOH in CHCl₃) to give 2',3'-O-isopropylidene-5'-O-trityl-N⁴-hydroxy-cytidine (723 mg, 70 %) as a white solid. Mp: 99-101 °C. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.56 (s, 3H), 3.40-3.73 (m, 2H), 4.26 (br s, 1H), 4.79-4.81 (m, 2H), 5.34 (d, J = 8.12 Hz, 1H), 5.88 (br s, 1H), 6.88 m(d, J = 8.12 Hz, 1H), 7.22-7.41 (m, 15H).

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted uracil nucleosides, the following N⁴-hydroxy-2',3'-O-isopropylidene-5'-O-triphenylmethylcytidine derivatives are synthesized:

2',3'-O-Isopropylidene-5'-O-triphenylmethyl-5-fluoro-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 2',3'-O-Isopropylidene-5'-O-triphenylmethyl-5-chloro-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 2',3'-O-Isopropylidene-5'-O-triphenylmethyl-5-bromo-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,

- 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*n*-propyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-*i*-propyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-vinyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 5 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-allyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-ethynyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-chlorovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 10 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-bromovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-iodovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 15 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-phenyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine
 and
 1-(2,5-Di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy- β -D-erythropentofuranosyl)-5-benzyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,

20

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 3',5'-di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxyuridines, the following N⁴-hydroxy-3',5'-di-O-acetyl-N⁴-hydroxy-2'-deoxycytidine derivatives are synthesized:

- 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 25 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-fluoro-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-chloro-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-bromo-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-iodo-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-cyano-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 30 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-ethoxycarbonyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-aminocarbonyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-acetyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-methyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,

- 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-ethyl-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-*n*-propyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-*i*-propyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-vinyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-allyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-ethynyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-(2-chlorovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-(2-bromovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-(2-iodovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 10 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytosine,
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-phenyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine and
 3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-5-benzyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine.

Example 40

15 *N*⁴-Hydroxycytidine.

2',3'-O-Isopropylidene-5'-O-trityl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine (500 mg, 0.92 mmol) is dissolved in 50 mL of a mixture of trifluoroacetic acid and water (2:1, v/v), and the solution is stirred for 3 h at 50 °C. After cooling to room temperature, the solvent is removed by evaporation and coevaporated with ethanol (3 x 20 mL). The residue is
 20 purified by silica gel column chromatography (20% MeOH in CHCl₃) to give N⁴-hydroxycytidine (215 mg) as a white solid which is recrystallized from hot ethanol; mp. 173-176 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 3.66-3.71 (m, 2H), 3.93 (br s, 1H), 4.08-4.15 (m, 2H), 5.17-5.23 (m, 2H, D₂O exchangeable), 5.43 (d, J = 6.00 Hz, 1H, D₂O exchangeable), 5.73 (d, J = 8.16 Hz, 1H), 5.90 (d, J = 8.12 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (d, J = 8.40 Hz, 1H), 9.65 (s, 1H, D₂O exchangeable), 10.15 (s, 1H, D₂O exchangeable). Anal. Calcd for C₉H₁₃N₃O₆: C, 41.70; H, 5.05; N, 16.21. Found: C, 41.85; H, 5.14; N, 16.34.
 25

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted 2',3'-O-isopropylidene-5-O-triphenylmethyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine nucleosides, the following N⁴-hydroxy-5-substituted cytidine are synthesized:

- 5-Fluoro-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Chloro-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Bromo-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Iodo-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5 5-Methyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Ethyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-*n*-Propyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-*i*-Propyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Vinyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 10 5-Ethynyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-chlorovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-bromovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-iodovinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 15 5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-phenyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine and
 5-benzyl-N⁴-hydroxycytidine.

In a similar manner but using methanolic ammonia instead of trifluoroacetic acid,
 20 and the corresponding 5-substituted 1-(2,5-di-O-acetyl-3-deoxy-β-D-erythro-pento-
 furanosyl)-N⁴-hydroxycytosine nucleosides, the following N⁴-hydroxy-5-substituted 3'-
 deoxycytidine are synthesized:

- 5-Fluoro-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Chloro-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 25 5-Bromo-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Iodo-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Methyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Ethyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-*n*-Propyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 30 5-*i*-Propyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Vinyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,

5-Ethynyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-chlorovinyl)-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-bromovinyl)-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-iodovinyl)-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5
 5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-phenyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine and
 5-benzyl-3'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine.

10 In a similar manner but using methanolic ammonia instead of trifluoroacetic acid,
 and the corresponding 5-substituted 3',5'-di-O-acetyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytosine
 nucleosides, the following N⁴-hydroxy-5-substituted 2'-deoxycytidine are synthesized:

5-Fluoro-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Chloro-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 15 5-Bromo-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Iodo-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Methyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Ethyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-*n*-Propyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 20 5-*i*-Propyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Vinyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-Ethynyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-chlorovinyl)-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-bromovinyl)-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 25 5-(2-iodovinyl)-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-methoxycarbonylvinyl)-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-(2-hydroxycarbonylvinyl)-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine,
 5-phenyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine and
 5-benzyl-2'-deoxy-N⁴-hydroxycytidine.

Example 41

2,3'-Anhydro-1-(2-deoxy-2-fluoro-5-O-trityl-β-D-lyxofuranosyl)thymine (194, R = Tr).

A solution of 1-(2-deoxy-2-fluoro-3-O-mesyl-5-O-triphenylmethyl-β-D-arabino-furanosyl)thymine (**193**, R = Tr, 6.0 g) and DBU (3.0 mL) in methylene chloride (50 mL) is heated at reflux for 16 hours. After concentration of the mixture in vacuo, the residue is chromatographed on a silica gel column using chloroform as the eluent to give 4.4 g of 2,3'-anhydro-1-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-5-O-trityl-β-D-lyxofuranosyl)thymine (**194**, R = Tr), mp 252-255 °C after recrystallization from methanol. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆); δ 1.80 (s, 3H, Me), 4.61 (1H, m), 5.40 (dm, 1H), 5.89 (1H, ddd), 5.96 (1H, dd, H-1'), 7.30 (15H, Tr), 7.66 (s, 1H, H-6).

Example 42

1-(2,3-Dideoxy-2'-fluoro-5'-O-trityl-β-D-glycero-pento-2-enofuranosyl)-thymine (195, R = Tr).

A suspension of **194** (646 mg) and t-BuOK (270 mg) in DMSO (10 mL) is stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then filtered. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo and the residue is chromatographed on a silica gel column (CHCl₃/MeOH, 49:1 v/v) to give 600 mg of **195**, mp. 176-180 °C (from EtOH). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.27 (s, 3H, Me), 3.21 (m, 2H, H-5,5''), 4.98 (m, 1H, H-4'), 6.17 (t, 1H, H-1', J_{1',2'} = J_{1',F} = 1.5 Hz), 6.81 (m, 1H, H-3'), 7.32 (m, 16H, H-6, Tr), 11.52 (s, 1H, NH exchangeable).

Example 43

1-(2,3-Dideoxy-2-fluoro-β-D-glycero-2-enofuranosyl)thymine (196).

A solution of **195** (600 mg) in 80% aqueous acetic acid (10 mL) is heated under reflux for 20 minutes and then concentrated to dryness in vacuo. The residue is chromatographed on a column of silica gel (CHCl₃/MeOH, 9:1 v/v) to give 100 mg of **196**, mp 154-159 °C (from EtOH-H₂O). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.76 (s, 3H, Me), 3.61 (m,

2H, H-5',5''), 4.79 (m, 1H, H-4'), 5.15 (t, 1H, 5'-OH, exchangeable), 5.99 (m, 1H, H-1'), 6.76 (m, 1H, H-3'), 7.88 (s, 1H, H-6), 11.43 (s, 1H, NH, exchangeable).

Example 44

(1S,2S,3R,4R)-4-(tert-Butoxymethyl)-2,3-(isopropylidenedioxy)cyclopentan-1-ol (219).

To a solution of 4-(*t*-butoxymethyl)cyclopentane-2,3-diol (**218**, 5 g) and $\text{CeCl}_3 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (7.69 g) in methanol (80 mL) is added NaBH_4 (1.01 g) at 0 °C, and the mixture is stirred for 1 hour at 0 °C. The reaction is quenched by addition of cold water, and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 300 mL). The combined organic extracts are washed with brine (2 x 200 mL), dried over Na_2SO_4 , and then concentrated in vacuo. The residue is chromatographed on a silica gel column (30% ethyl acetate in *n*-hexane) to give **219** (4.8 g, 95%) as a syrup. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ 1.13 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu), 1.34 (s, 3H, Me), 1.48 (s, 3H, Me), 1.83 (m, 2H, 5a,b-H), 2.19 (m, 1H, 4-H), 2.44 (d, OH, exchangeable), 3.20 (dd, $J = 4.5, 8.8$ Hz, 1H, 6a-H), 3.31 (dd, $J = 4.5, 8.8$ Hz, 1H, 6b-H), 4.23 (m, 1H, 1-H), 4.44 (m, 2H, 2-H, 3-H). Anal. Calcd for $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{24}\text{O}_4$: C, 63.91; H, 9.90. Found: C, 64.09; H, 9.87.

Example 45

(1S,2S,3R,4R)-4-(tert-Butoxymethyl)-2,3-(isopropylidenedioxy)-1-mesyloxycyclopentane (220).

To a solution of **219** (6.50 g) and triethylamine (7.3 g) in methylene chloride (170 mL) is added mesyl chloride (4.73 g) dropwise at 0 °C. After 45 minutes, water (270 mL) is added. The aqueous layer is extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 200 mL). The organic layers are combined, washed with brine (2 x 200 mL), dried over Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated in vacuo to give crude **220**, which is sufficiently pure to be used directly in the next step.

Example 46

(1R,2S,3R,4R)-1-Azido-4-(tert-butoxymethyl)-2,3-(isopropylidenedioxy)cyclopentane (221).

A mixture of **220** obtained above and sodium azide (17.3 g) in DMF (300 mL) is heated at 140 °C overnight with stirring. The mixture is filtered and the filtrate is concentrated in vacuo. The residue is partitioned between ethyl acetate (150 mL) and water (50 mL). The organic layer is dried over Na₂SO₄, concentrated in vacuo, and the residue is chromatographed on a silica gel column (1-4% gradient, ethyl acetate in *n*-hexane) to give **221** (5.9 g) as an oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.18 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu), 1.30 (s, 3H, Me), 1.46 (s, 3H, Me), 1.71 (m, 1H, 5a-H), 2.29 (m, 2H, 4-H, 5b-H), 3.29 (dd, *J* = 6.7, 8.8 Hz, 1H, 6a-H), 3.37 (dd, *J* = 7.0, 8.8 Hz, 1H, 6b-H), 3.96 (m, 1H, 1-H), 4.40 (dd, *J* = 2.3, 6.1 Hz, 1H, 3-H), 4.48 (dd, *J* = 2.0, 6.1 Hz, 1H, 2-H). Anal. Calcd for C₁₃H₂₃N₃O₃·0.13EtOAc: C, 57.95; H, 8.65, N, 14.99. Found: C, 58.25; H, 8.71; N, 14.76.

Example 47

(1R,2S,3R,4R)-4-(tert-Butoxymethyl)-2,3-(isopropylidenedioxy)-1-cyclopentylamine (222).

A suspension of **221** (4.0 g) and 10% Pd/C (1.0 g) in anhydrous ethanol (140 mL) is shaken under 20 psi of H₂ for 5 hours. The mixture is filtered, and the filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give crude **222** (3.6 g, quantitative), which is used directly in the next step without further purification. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.18 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu), 1.28 (s, 3H, Me), 1.36 (m, 1H, 5a-H), 1.45 (s, 3H, Me), 1.89 (br s, 2H, NH₂), 2.24-2.36 (m, 2H, 4-H, 5b-H), 3.34-3.43 (m, 3H, 1-H, 6a,b-H), 4.21 (dd, *J* = 2.6, 6.2 Hz, 1H, 3-H), 4.48 (dd, *J* = 2.8, 6.2 Hz, 1H, 2-H). Anal. Calcd for C₁₃H₂₆NO₃·0.16H₂O: C, 63.41; H, 10.37, N, 5.69. Found: C, 63.09; H, 10.16; N, 5.59.

Example 48

N-([1R,2S,3R,4R]-4-(tert-Butoxymethyl)-2,3-(isopropylidenedioxy)cyclopentyl)-aminocarbonyl-3-methoxy-2-propenamide (223).

5 A mixture of silver cyanate (7.60 g, dried in vacuo over phosphorus pentoxide in the dark at 100 °C for 3 hours), β -methoxyacryloyl chloride (2.64 g) in anhydrous benzene (30 mL) is heated under reflux for 30 minutes, and then is allowed to cool to room temperature. After precipitation is settled, 22.5 mL of the supernatant, which contains β -methoxyacryloyl isocyanate) is added during 15 minutes to a solution of **222** (3.0 g) in dry DMF (50 mL) at -15 to -20 °C under nitrogen. The mixture is stirred for 2 hours at -15
10 °C and then 10 more hours at room temperature under nitrogen. After concentration in vacuo and coevaporation with toluene (2 x 20 mL), the product **223** solidifies (4.0 g). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.17 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu), 1.28 (s, 3H, Me), 1.47 (s, 3H, Me), 1.58 (m, 1H, 5'a-H), 2.28 (m, 1H, 4-H), 2.36-2.43 (m, 1H, 5'b-H), 3.33-3.42 (m, 2H, 6'a,b-H), 3.73 (s, 3H, OMe), 4.20 (m, 1H, 3'-H), 4.45 (m, 2H, 1'-H, 2'-H), 5.35 (d, *J* = 12.3 Hz, 1H, 5-H), 7.67
15 (d, *J* = 12.3 Hz, 1H, 6-H), 8.72 (br s, 1H, NH), 9.35 (br s, 1H, NH). Anal. Calcd for C₁₈H₃₀N₂O₆: C, 58.36; H, 8.16, N, 7.56. Found: C, 58.28; H, 8.16; N, 7.60.

Example 49

(1'R,2'S,3'R,4'R)-1-[4-(tert-Butoxymethyl)-2,3-isopropylidenedioxy)cyclopentan-1-yl]uracil (5'-tert-Butyl-2',3'-O-isopropylidene-carba-uridine, 224).

20 A solution of **223** (4.2 g) in ethanol (25 mL) and ammonium hydroxide (30% 11 mL) is heated at 100 °C in a steel bomb for 12 hours. After removal of the solvents, the residue is chromatographed over a silica gel column (ethylacetate-*n*-hexane, 1:1 v/v) to give **224** (3.21 g) as a white foam. UV (MeOH) λ_{max} 266.0 nm. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.19 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu), 1.30 (s, 3H, Me), 1.54 (s, 3H, Me), 1.97 (m, 1H, 5'a-H), 2.32-2.41 (m,
25 2H, 4'-H, 5'b-H), 3.43-3.50 (m, 2H, 6'a,b-H), 4.48 (dd, *J* = 4.1, 6.5 Hz, 1H, 3'-H), 4.65-4.75 (m, 2H, 1'-H, 2'-H), 5.72 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H, 5-H), 7.35 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H, 6-H), 8.63 (br s, 1H, NH). Anal. Calcd for C₁₇H₂₆N₂O₅: C, 60.34; H, 7.74, N, 8.28. Found: C, 60.06; H, 7.70; N, 8.14.

Example 50

(1'R,2'S,3'R,4'R)-1-[4-(tert-Butoxymethyl)-2,3-isopropylidenedioxy]cyclopentan-1-yl]-5-fluorouracil (5'-O-tert-Butyl-2',3'-O-isopropylidene-carba-5-fluorouridine, **225**).

5 A fluorine-nitrogen mixture containing 5% of fluorine is bubbled carefully into a solution of **224** (2.50 g) in acetic acid (600 mL) for 30 minutes at room temperature. The mixture is stirred until no UV absorption is detected on TLC plate. The solvent is removed in vacuo, and the residue is coevaporated with acetic acid (20 mL) to dryness. The residue is treated with triethylamine for 1.5 hours at 50 °C, and then concentrated in vacuo to dryness. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography
10 (ethylacetate-*n*-hexane, 1:1 v/v) to give **225** (1.31 g) as a white foam. UV (MeOH) λ_{max} 271.5 nm. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.22 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu), 1.31 (s, 3H, Me), 1.55 (s, 3H, Me), 1.85 (m, 1H, 5'a-H), 2.38-2.51 (m, 2H, 4'-H, 5'b-H), 3.44-3.52 (m, 2H, 6'a,b-H), 4.47 (dd, *J* = 3.4, 6.2 Hz, 1H, 3'-H), 4.58 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 1H, 1'-H), 4.87 (dd, *J* = 8.9, 14.5 Hz, 1H, 2'-H), 7.61 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H, 6-H), 8.77 (br s, 1H, NH). Anal. Calcd for $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{25}\text{FN}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.25\text{H}_2\text{O}$: C, 56.58; H, 7.12, N, 7.76. Found: C, 56.20; H, 7.02; N, 7.50.
15

Example 51

(1'R,2'S,3'R,4'R)-1-[4-(tert-Butoxymethyl)-2,3-isopropylidenedioxy]cyclopentan-1-yl]-5-fluorocytosine (**226**). (5'-O-tert-Butyl-2',3'-O-isopropylidene-carba-5-fluorocytidine)

20 A mixture of **225** (350 mg), triethylamine (190 mg), 2,4,6-triisopropylbenzenesulfonyl chloride (590 mg) and DMAP (230 mg) in acetonitrile (50 mL) is stirred for 1 day at room temperature. Ammonium hydroxide solution (30%, 15 mL) is added, and the mixture is further stirred 5 hours. The reaction is quenched by addition of chloroform (250 mL) and water (10 mL). The organic layer is washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated in vacuo. The residue is purified by silica gel
25 column chromatography (5% MeOH in CHCl_3 , v/v) to give **226** (205 mg), mp 128-130 °C. UV (MeOH) λ_{max} 286.5 nm. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.19 (s, 9H, *t*-Bu), 1.29 (s, 3H, Me), 1.53 (s, 3H, Me), 2.02 (dt, *J* = 10.2, 12.8 Hz, 1H, 5'a-H), 2.32 (m, 1H, 4'-H), 2.42 (dt, *J* = 8.0, 12.7 Hz, 1H, 5'b-H), 3.42 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 8.7 Hz, 1H, 6'a-H), 3.52 (dd, *J* = 4.1, 8.8 Hz, 1H, 6'b-H), 4.49 (dd, *J* = 5.1, 6.3 Hz, 1H, 3'-H), 4.60 (m, 1H, 1'-H), 4.79 (dd, *J* = 5.0, 6.4

Hz, 1H, 2'-H), 7.49 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 1H, 6-H). HR-FAB MS Obsd; m/z 356.1981. Calcd for C₁₇H₂₆FN₃O₄: m/z 356.1986 (M + 1)⁺.

Example 52

(1'R,2'S,3'R,4'R)-1-[2,3-Dihydroxy-4-(hydroxymethyl)cyclopentan-1-yl]-5-fluorocytosine
(carba-5-fluorocytidine, 227).

A solution of 226 (180 mg) in a 2:1 (v/v) mixture of trifluoroacetic acid and water (40 mL) is stirred for 3 hours at 50 °C. The solvents are removed in vacuo, and the residue is coevaporated with ethanol (2 x 30 mL), and purified on a silica gel column (MeOH-CHCl₃, 1:5 v/v) to give 227 (47.5 mg) as a foam. UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 284 nm (ε 5,876, pH 7), 293.5 nm (ε 7,440, pH 2), 284.5 nm (ε 5,883, pH 11). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.19 (m, 1H, 5'a-H), 1.92 (m, 1H, 4'a-H), 2.00 (ddd, J = 8.3, 8.7, 12.5 Hz, 1H, 5'b-H), 3.42 (m, 2H, 6'ab-H), 3.70 (dd, J = 2.9, 5.3 Hz, 1H, 3'b-H), 3.98 (dd, J = 5.2, 9.0 Hz, 1H, 2'-H), 4.10 (d, J = 4.5, 1H, OH, exchangeable), 4.51 (br s, 1H, OH, exchangeable), 4.60 (dd, J = 9.0, 18.2 Hz, 1H, 1'-H), 4.73 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 1H, OH, exchangeable), 7.33 (bs, 1H, exchangeable), 7.55 (bs, 1H, exchangeable), 7.98 (d, J = 7.3 Hz, 1H, 6-H). HR-FAB MS Obsd; m/z 260.1054. Calcd for C₁₇H₂₆FN₃O₄: m/z 260.1047 (M + 1)⁺.

In a similar manner but using the corresponding 5-substituted derivatives, the following 5-substituted *carba*-nucleosides are prepared:

5-Chloro-*carba*-uridine,

5-Bromo-*carba*-uridine,

5-Iodo-*carba*-uridine,

5-Cyano-*carba*-uridine,

carba-Uridine-5-carboxylic acid,

5-Ethoxycarbonyl-*carba*-uridine,

carba-Uridine-5-carboxamide,

5-Hydroxymethyl-*carba*-uridine,

5-Nitro-*carba*-uridine,

5-Amino-*carba*-uridine

5-Chloro-*carba*-cytidine,

5-Bromo-*carba*-cytidine,
5-Iodo-*carba*-cytidine,
5-Cyano-*carba*-cytidine,
cara-Cytidine-5-carboxylic acid,
5
5-Ethoxycarbonyl-*carba*-cytidine,
carba-Cytidine-5-carboxamide,
5-Hydroxymethyl-*carba*-cytidine,
5-Nitro-*carba*-cytidine and
5-Amino-*carba*-cytidine.

10 XI. Biological Methods

This invention further provides an efficient process to quantify the viral load in a host using quantitative real-time reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction ("Q-RT-PCR"). The process involves using a quenched fluorescent probe molecule that can be hybridized to a target viral DNA or RNA. Therefore, upon exonucleolytic degradation, a
15 detectable fluorescent signal can be monitored. Therefore, the RT-PCR amplified DNA or RNA can be detected in real time by monitoring the presence of fluorescence signals.

In a specific embodiment of the invention, the use of RT-PCR to quantitate the viral load of a *Flaviviridae* virus is provided.

In a more specific embodiment, the use of RT-PCR to quantitate the viral load of
20 BVDV in a MDBK cell line or a host sample is provided.

In a further embodiment of the invention, a probe molecule designed to fluoresce upon exonucleolytic degradation and to be complementary to the BVDV NADL NS5B region is provided.

In a more specific embodiment of the invention, a probe molecule with a sequence
25 of 5' 6-fam-AAATCCTCCTAACAAGCGGGTTCCAGG-tamara 3' (Sequence ID No 1) and primers with a sequence of sense: 5'-AGCCTTCAGTTTCTTGCTGATGT-3' (Sequence ID No 2) and antisense: 5'-TGTTGCGAAAGCACCAACAG-3' (Sequence ID No 3) is provided.

In a specific embodiment of the invention, the use of RT-PCR to quantitate viral load of HCV in a host derived sample or a cell line in real time is provided;

In a more specific embodiment of the invention, the use of RT-PCR, a probe molecule designed to fluoresce upon exonucleolytic degradation and to be complementary to the HCV genome is provided

In a more specific embodiment of the invention, the use of RT-PCR, a probe molecule designed to fluoresce upon exonucleolytic degradation and to be complementary to the HCV 5' untranslated region is provided

In a more specific embodiment of the invention, a probe molecule with a sequence of 5' 6-fam-CCTCCAGGACCCCCCTCCC-tamara 3' (Sequence ID No 4) and primers with a sequence of sense: 5'-AGCCATGGCGTTAGTA(T/C)GAGTGT-3' (Sequence ID No 5) and antisense: 5'-TTCCGCAGACCACTATGG-3' (Sequence ID No -6) is provided.

A. RNA isolation and quantitative RT-PCR analysis

An effective process to quantify the viral load in a host, termed real-time polymerase chain reaction ("RT-PCR") is provided. The process involves using a quenched fluorescent probe molecule that can be hybridized to viral DNA or RNA. Therefore, upon exonucleolytic degradation, a detectable fluorescent signal can be monitored. Therefore, the RT-PCR amplified DNA or RNA is detected in real time by monitoring the presence of fluorescence signals.

As one illustration of this method, in the case of BVDV in MDBK cells, in a first step, viral RNA is isolated from 140 μ L of the cell culture supernatant by means of a commercially available column (Viral RNA extraction kit, QiaGen, CA). The viral RNA is then eluted from the column to yield a total volume of 60 μ L, and subsequently amplified with a quantitative RT-PCR protocol using a suitable primer for the BVDV NADL strain. A quenched fluorescent probe molecule is hybridized to the BVDV DNA, which then undergoes exonucleolytic degradation resulting in a detectable fluorescent signal. Therefore, the RT-PCR amplified DNA was detected in real time by monitoring the presence of fluorescence signals. The TaqMan probe molecule (5'-6-fam-AAATCCTCCTAACAAGCGGGTTCAGG-tamara 3' [Sequence ID No 1] and primers

(sense: 5'-AGCCTTCAGTTTCTTGCTGATGT-3' [Sequence ID No 2]; and antisense: 5'-TGTTGCGAAAGCACCAACAG-3' [Sequence ID No 3]) were designed with the aid of the Primer Express software (PE-Applied Biosystems) to be complementary to the BVDV NADL NS5B region. A total of 10 µL of RNA was analyzed in a 50 µL RT-PCR mixture. Reagents and conditions used in quantitative PCR were purchased from PE-Applied Biosystems. The standard curve that was created using the undiluted inoculum virus ranged from 6000 plaque forming units (PFU) to 0.6 PFU per RT-PCR mixture. A linear range of over 4-logs was routinely obtained.

A comparable approach can be taken to measure the amount of other Flaviviridae (more importantly HCV, YFV, Dengue, West Nile Virus and others) in a clinical sample or in a tissue culture sample. For example, the combination of HCV RNA purification with real-time RT-PCR using the following primers (5'-TTCCGCAGACCACTATGG-3' [Sequence ID No. 4] and 5'-AGCCATGGCGTTAGTATGAGTGT-3' [Sequence ID No. 5]) and probe (5'-6-fam-CCTCCAGGACCCCCCTCCC-tamara-3' [Sequence ID No. 6]) resulted in a 7-log linear range of viral load detection.

B. Cell / viral materials

One of the best characterized members of the Pestivirus genus is BVDV. BVDV and HCV share at least three common features, which are the following: (1) they both undergo IRES-mediated translation; (2) NS4A cofactor is required by their NS3 serine protease; and (3) they undergo similar polyprotein processing within the non-structural region, especially at the NS5A and NS5B junction site.

The BVDV replication system was used for the discovery of anti-*Flaviviridae* compounds. The compounds described herein are active against Pestiviruses, Hepaciviruses and/or Flaviviruses.

Maldin-Darby bovine kidney (MDBK) cells were grown and maintained in a modified eagle medium (DMEM/F12; GibcoBRL), supplemented with 10% heat inactivated horse serum at 37°C in a humidified, 5% CO₂, incubator.

Bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV), strain NADL, causes a cytopathogenic effect (CPE) after infection of these cells.

C. Antiviral assay

MDBK-cells, grown in DMEM/F12 – 10% horse serum (HS), were isolated in standard techniques using trypsin-EDTA. Cells were seeded in a 96-well plate at 5×10^4 cells/well, with test compound (20 micromolar (μM) concentration) to give a total volume of 100 microliters (μL). After one hour, the media was removed and the cells were infected at a multiplicity of infection (MOI) of 0.02 or 0.002 in a total volume of 50 μL for 45 minutes. Thereafter, the virus was removed and the cells were washed twice with 100 μL of assay media. Finally, the infected cells were incubated in a total volume of 100 μL containing the test compound at 10, 40 or 100 μM concentration. After 22 hours, the cell supernatant was collected by removing the cellular debris by low-speed centrifugation, and subsequently tested for the presence of virus in a quantitative manner.

D. Cytotoxicity testing of anti-*Flaviviridae* compounds

The cytotoxicity testing as performed here is a standard technique. Briefly, cells are seeded in 96-well plates at various concentrations (dependent on cell type, duration of assay), typically at 5×10^3 cells per well, in the presence of increasing concentrations of the test compound (0, 1, 3, 10, 33, and 100 μM). After a three day-incubation, cell viability and mitochondrial activity are measured by adding the MTS-dye (Promega), followed by a 3 hours incubation. Afterwards the plates containing the dye are read at 490 nm. Such methodologies are well described and available from the manufacturer (Promega).

Example 53

The BVDV RT-PCR quantification standard curve

The standard BVDV virus stock contained 2×10^6 PFU/mL, as determined by routine plaque assay (Mendez, E. *et al.* J. Virol. **1998**, 72, 4737). Viral RNA was extracted from 140 μL of this inoculum material and eluted from a column using 60 μL of an elution buffer. This purified RNA material then was diluted stepwise from 10^{-1} to 10^{-5} . Using the real-time RT-PCR amplification technique, 10 μL of each dilution was tested. The results of this dilution series are plotted in **Figure 1**, relating PFU to concentration of

standard. From this experiment, it is clear that this technology allows for reliable quantification over 4-logs of virus (from 6000 to 0.6 PFU/ input in amplification mix). The lower limit of detection in this experiment is 0.6 PFU or -0.22 log PFU. Therefore, the real-time RT-PCR quantification values of test samples below this detection limit were considered non-reliable.

Example 54

The BVDV replication cycle in MDBK cells

In order to measure the BVDV production in MDBK cells and to determine the optimal harvesting time over a certain period of time, cells were seeded at 5×10^4 cells/well and infected either with MOI = 0.02 or MOI = 0.002. After infection, the inoculum was removed and the cells were washed twice with culture medium. At different time points, the cell supernatant was harvested; and, the amount of virus was measured and compared to the original inoculum and the cell wash. At least 2 wash-steps were needed to remove the inoculum virus, as shown in **Figure 2**. The amount of virus produced 22 hours after infection approximately equals the amount of virus used to inoculate the cells. Based on these results, the time required for one replication cycle of BVDV in MDBK cells was 22 hours. Note that the detection level set in these experiments was based on the lower limit of detection as determined by the standard curve.

Example 55

Evaluation of antiviral compounds using RT-PCR

MDBK cells were seeded at 5×10^4 cells/ well, infected with BVDV with a multiplicity of infection (MOI) equal to 0.02 and grown for 22 hours in the presence of a test compound. Cells that were not treated with a test compound were considered a negative control, while ribavirin served as a positive control. Viral RNA was extracted and analyzed by real time RT-PCR. A typical experiment, shown in **Figure 3**, demonstrates that the negative control and the majority of the treated cells produced comparable amounts of virus (between 1.5 and 2 log PFU/input), effectively showing the

test compounds as non-active. However, the cells treated with the positive control, ribavirin (RIB) or with 5-hydroxyuridine (β -D-CL) show an almost complete absence of viral RNA. RIB and β -D-CL reduce viral production by approximately 2 log PFU, or 99%, in the 22 hour reproduction period. The exact potency of these compounds cannot be deduced from this kind of experiment, since the detection limit in this experiment is set at -0.22 log PFU and only one cycle of viral replication occurs under the stated experimental conditions.

Potencies, or the effect concentration of compounds that inhibits virus production by 50% or 90% (EC₅₀ or EC₉₀ values, respectively), of anti-BVDV compounds were determined in a similar set of experiments, but over a broad range of test compound concentrations (0, 1, 3, 10, 33, 100 μ M). The EC₉₀ value refers to the concentration necessary to obtain a 1-log reduction in viral production within a 22 hour period. Compounds that showed potent antiviral activity are listed in **Table 21**. This table gives the maximal viral load reduction observed at a given concentration 22 hours post infection.

Table 21: BVDV viral load 22 hours post infection

ID	n	conc. (μ M)	Ave. Log Reduction
β -D-AA	4	100	2.43
β -D-AI	3	100	1.52
β -D-AJ	3	100	1.34
β -D-AK	4	100	1.90
β -D-AL	3	100	1.55
β -D-AN	2	100	1.21
β -D-AO	2	100	2.24
β -D-AP	3	100	1.36
β -D-AQ	3	100	0.87
β -D-AT	4	100	1.42

efficacy of these antiviral compounds include modifications of the standard techniques as described by Holbrook, MR *et al.* Virus Res. **2000**, 69 (1), 31; Markland, W *et al.* Antimicrob. Agents. Chemother. **2000**, 44 (4), 859; Diamond, MS *et al.*, J. Virol. **2000**, 74 (17), 7814; Jordan, I. *et al.* J. Infect. Dis. **2000**, 182, 1214; Sreenivasan, V. *et al.* J. Virol. Methods **1993**, 45 (1), 1; or Baginski, SG *et al.* Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. **2000**, 97 (14), 7981 or the real-time RT-PCR technology. Specifically, an HCV replicon system in HuH7 cells (Lohmann, V *et al.* Science, **1999**, 285 (5424), 110) or modifications thereof (Rice *et al.* **2000**, abstract Xth International Symposium for Viral Hepatitis and Liver Disease, Atlanta, GA) can be used.

Example 57

Cytotoxicity testing of candidate compounds

The cytotoxicity testing as performed herein is a standard technique. Briefly, cells are seeded in 96-well plates at various concentrations (dependent on cell type, duration of assay), typically at 5×10^3 cells per well, in the presence of increasing concentrations of the test compound (0, 1, 3, 10, 33, and 100 μM). After three (Vero cells), or four (CEM cells), or five (PBM cells) day-incubation, cell viability and mitochondrial activity are measured by adding the MTT-dye (Promega), followed by a 8 hours incubation. Afterwards the plates containing the dye are fixed by adding a stop-solution followed by another eight hour incubation. Finally, absorbance is read at 570 nm. Such methodologies are well described and available from the manufacturer (Promega).

A relevant list of compounds tested in this methodology is listed in **Table 22**. While the tested compounds are generally not cytotoxic, compound $\beta\text{-D-GA}$ showed a *selective* cytotoxic effect on CEM cells.

Table 22: Cytotoxicity* of V-a and VIIIa

ID	PBM cells*	CEM Cells*	Vero Cells*
$\beta\text{-D-GA}$	> 100 (11.3)	1.9	> 57.4

ID	PBM cells*	CEM Cells*	Vero Cells*
β -D-GF	> 100 (-46.2)	> 100 (11.2)	> 100 (4.3)
β -L-GA	> 100 (-113.2)	> 100 (1.1)	> 100 (27.9)
β -L-GB	> 100 (33)	> 100 (8.3)	~ 171
β -L-GC	> 100 (-53.2)	> 100 (-1.2)	> 100 (-13.4)
β -L-GD	> 100 (-12.9)	> 100 (-79.7)	> 100 (0.8)
β -L-GE	> 100 (-59.7)	> 100 (0.0)	> 100 (10.6)
β -L-GF	> 100 (-70.4)	> 100 (35.1)	> 100 (33.8)
β -L-GG	> 100 (-34.6)	> 100 (17.3)	> 100 (33.6)
β -L-GH	> 100 (-52.1)	> 100 (19.7)	> 100 (27.0)
β -L-GI	> 100 (-47.8)	> 100 (18.0)	> 100 (31.9)

*IC₅₀ in μ M (% inhibition at 100 μ M)

Example 58

Antiviral testing of candidate compounds for respiratory viruses

During the course of these experiments, compounds from general formula (I) have been tested for their antiviral activities against a set of viruses infecting the upper respiratory tract. The methodologies used for these purposes are well described. The following protocols are standard operating procedures taken from the Virology Branch, Division of Microbiology and Infectious Diseases, NIAID, NIH.

A. Viruses and cell-lines used in Primary screen

(i) Influenza A and B

Virus strains: A/Beijing/262/95 (H1N1) (Source CDC); A/Sydney/05/97 (H3N2) (source CDC); B/Beijing/184/93 (source: CDC).

Cell line: Maldin Darby Canine Kidney (MDCK)

(ii) Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV)

Virus strain A2 (source: ATCC).

Cell Line: African Green Monkey kidney (MA-104) cells

(iii) Parainfluenza type 3 virus

5 Virus Strain: 14702 (source: isolate 5/95 Boivin, Montreal Canada)

Cell line: African Green Monkey kidney (MA-104) cells

B. Methods for antiviral activity

(i) Inhibition of viral cytopathic effect (CPE)

10 This test is run in 96-well micro-titer plates. In this CPE inhibition test, four log₁₀ dilutions of each test compound will be added to 3 cups containing the cell mono-layer; within 5 min, the virus is then added and the plate sealed, incubated at 37°C and CPE read microscopically when untreated infected controls develop a 3 to 4+ CPE (approximately 72 to 120 hours). A known positive control drug is evaluated in parallel with test drug in each test. This drug is Ribavirin for influenza, measles, RSV and para-influenza.

15 (ii) Increase in Neutral Red (NR) Dye uptake.

This test is run to validate the CPE inhibition seen in the initial test, and utilizes the same 96-well micro-plate after CPE has been read. Neutral red is added to the medium; cells not damaged by virus take up greater amount of dye, which is read on a computerized micro-plate reader. The method as described by McManus (Appl. Environment. Microbiol. 31:35-38, 1976) is used. An EC₅₀ is determined from this dye uptake.

20

(iii) Confirmatory test: CPE-Visual and Virus yield assay

Compounds considered active by CPE inhibition and by NR dye uptake will be retested using both CPE inhibition and effect on reduction of virus yield. Collected eluates from the initial testing are assayed for virus titer by serial dilution onto mono-layers of susceptible cells. Development of CPE in these cells is indicative for the

25

presence of infectious virus The EC₉₀, which is the drug that inhibits the virus production by 1-log is determined from these data.

5 **Table 23** summarizes the results of part of the antiviral testing. **β-D-BS** has potent anti-flaviviridae activity and potent *in vitro* antiviral capacities against influenza A and B, as well as some activities against RSV. There is no activity against Parainfluenza type 3 virus, illustrating that this compound is exerting a specific antiviral effect against certain classes of RNA viruses, but not all.

 In addition, compound **β-D-CL** is a potent in-vitro anti-RSV compound with a selectivity index of 150.

10 **Table 23:** Antiviral effect on respiratory viruses

Initial Test, Antiviral Screening with Respiratory Viruses by CPE Inhibition (Visual)

		β-D-AJ	β-D-BS	β-D-CL	β-D-DJ
Influenza A (H1N1)	EC ₅₀ (μM)	150	1.5	>5	>500
	SI**	2	50	0	0
Influenza A (H3N2)	EC ₅₀ (μM)	> 500	1.5	>5	> 500
	SI**	0	50	0	0
Influenza B	EC ₅₀ (μM)	150	0.5	>5	50
	SI**	2	150	0	> 10
RSV*	EC ₅₀ (μM)	> 500	0.5	0.5	500
	SI**	0	80	150	0
Parainfluenza Type 3 Virus	EC ₅₀ (μM)	> 500	>500	90	> 500
	SI**	0	0	0	0

Initial Test, Antiviral Screening with Respiratory Viruses by Neutral Red

		β-D-AJ	β-D-BS	β-D-CL	β-D-DJ
Influenza A (H1N1)	EC ₅₀ (μM)	150	1.2	8	> 500

Initial Test, Antiviral Screening with Respiratory Viruses by Neutral Red

		β -D-AJ	β -D-BS	β -D-CL	β -D-DJ
	SI**	> 3.3	116	1.1	0
<u>Influenza A</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	> 500	4	> 5	> 500
<u>(H3N2)</u>	SI**	0	20	0	0
<u>Influenza B</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	150	1.2	> 5	110
	SI**	> 3.3	133	0	> 4.5
<u>RSV*</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	> 500	< 0.5	< 0.5	> 500
	SI**	0	> 30	> 170	0
<u>Parainfluenza</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	> 500	40	40	500
<u>Type 3 Virus</u>	SI**	0	1	1	> 1

Confirmatory Test, Antiviral Screening with Respiratory Viruses by Visual (EC₅₀)

		β -D-BS
<u>Influenza A</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	1.3
<u>(H1N1)</u>	SI**	> 246
<u>Influenza A</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	0.5
<u>(H3N2)</u>	SI**	> 640
<u>Influenza B</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	0.6
	SI**	> 533

Confirmatory Test, Antiviral Screening with Respiratory Viruses by Yield (EC₉₀)

		β -D-BS
<u>Influenza A</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	0.4
<u>(H1N1)</u>	SI**	> 800
<u>Influenza A</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	0.32
<u>(H3N2)</u>		

		β-D-BS
	SI**	> 1000
<u>Influenza B</u>	EC ₅₀ (μ M)	0.6
	SI**	> 533

*RSV: Respiratory Syncytial Virus A

**SI: Selectivity Index (IC₅₀/EC₉₀)

Example 59

Antiviral testing of candidate compounds for Flaviviridae

5 A. The HCV replicon system in Huh7 cells.

Huh7 cells harboring the HCV replicon can be cultivated in DMEM media (high glucose, no pyruvate) containing 10% fetal bovine serum, 1X non-essential Amino Acids, Pen-Strep-Glu (100 units/liter, 100 microgram/liter, and 2.92 mg/liter, respectively) and 500 to 1000 microgram/milliliter G418. Antiviral screening assays can be done in the same media without G418 as follows: in order to keep cells in logarithmic growth phase, seed cells in a 96-well plate at low density, for example 1000 cells per well. Add the test compound immediate after seeding the cells and incubate for a period of 3 to 7 days at 37°C in an incubator. Media is then removed, and the cells are prepared for total nucleic acid extraction (including replicon RNA and host RNA). Replicon RNA can then be amplified in a Q-RT-PCR protocol, and quantified accordingly. The observed differences in quantification of replicon RNA is one way to express the antiviral potency of the test compound. A typical experiment demonstrates that in the negative control and in the non-active compounds-settings a comparable amount of replicon is produced. This can be concluded because the measured threshold-cycle for HCV RT-PCR in both setting is close to each other. In such experiments, one way to express the antiviral effectiveness of a compound is to subtract the threshold RT-PCR cycle of the test compound with the average threshold RT-PCR cycle of the negative control. This value is called DeltaCt (Δ Ct or DCt). A Δ Ct of 3.3 equals a 1-log reduction (equals EC₉₀) in replicon production. Compounds that result in a reduction of HCV replicon RNA levels of greater than 2 Δ Ct

values (75% reduction of replicon RNA) are candidate compounds for antiviral therapy. Such candidate compounds are belonging to structures with general formula (I) – (XXIII). **Table 24** gives the average ΔC_t values (N = times tested) that can be obtained if the target compounds are incubated in the described way for 96 hours. As a positive control, recombinant interferon alfa-2a (Roferon-A, Hoffmann-Roche, New Jersey, USA) is taken alongside as positive control.

However, this HCV ΔC_t value does not include any specificity parameter for the replicon encoded viral RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. In a typical setting, a compound might reduce both the host RNA polymerase activity and the replicon-encoded polymerase activity. Therefore, quantification of rRNA (or any other host RNA polymerase I product) or beta-actin mRNA (or any other host RNA polymerase II) and comparison with RNA levels of the no-drug control is a relative measurement of the effect of the test compound on host RNA polymerases. **Table 24** also illustrates the ΔC_t values for rRNA of the test compounds.

With the availability of both the HCV ΔC_t data and the rRNA ΔC_t , a specificity parameter can be introduced. This parameter is obtained by subtracting both ΔC_t values from each other. This results in Delta-DeltaCT values ($\Delta\Delta C_t$ or DDCt); a value above 0 means that there is more inhibitory effect on the replicon encoded polymerase, a $\Delta\Delta C_t$ value below 0 means that the host rRNA levels are more affected than the replicon levels. The antiviral activity of tested compounds, expressed as $\Delta\Delta C_t$ values, is given in **Table 24**. As a general rule, $\Delta\Delta C_t$ values above 2 are considered as significantly different from the no-drug treatment control, and hence, exhibits appreciable antiviral activity. However, compounds with a $\Delta\Delta C_t$ value of less than 2, but showing limited molecular cytotoxicity data (rRNA ΔC_t between 0 and 2) are also possible active compounds.

In another typical setting, a compound might reduce the host RNA polymerase activity, but not the host DNA polymerase activity. Therefore, quantification of rDNA or beta-actin DNA (or any other host DNA fragment) and comparison with DNA levels of the no-drug control is a relative measurement of the inhibitory effect of the test compound on cellular DNA polymerases. **Table 25** illustrates the ΔC_t values for rDNA of the test compounds.

With the availability of both the HCV ΔCt data and the rDNA ΔCt , a specificity parameter can be introduced. This parameter is obtained by subtracting both ΔCt values from each other. This results in $\Delta\Delta\text{Ct}$ values; a value above 0 means that there is more inhibitory effect on the replicon encoded polymerase, a $\Delta\Delta\text{Ct}$ value below 0 means that the host rDNA levels are more affected than the replicon levels. The antiviral activity of tested compounds, expressed as $\Delta\Delta\text{Ct}$ values, is given in **Table 25**. As a general rule, $\Delta\Delta\text{Ct}$ values above 2 are considered as significantly different from the no-drug treatment control, and hence, is an interested compound for further evaluation. However, compounds with a $\Delta\Delta\text{Ct}$ value of less than 2, but with limited molecular cytotoxicity (rDNA ΔCt between 0 and 2) may be desired.

Compounds that result in the specific reduction of HCV replicon RNA levels, but with limited reductions in cellular RNA and/or DNA levels are candidate compounds for antiviral therapy. Candidate compounds belonging to general formula group (I) – (XXIII) were evaluated for their specific capacity of reducing Flaviviridae RNA (including BVDV and HCV), and potent compounds were detected (**Tables 21, 24 and 25**).

Table 24

ID	n	Ave. HCV RNA ΔCt	Ave. rRNA ΔCt	Ave. $\Delta\Delta\text{Ct}$
β -D-AA	3	3.83	2.41	1.42
β -D-AI	3	2.93	2.43	0.48
β -D-AJ	22	2.92	1.74	1.18
β -D-AK	4	3.73	2.48	1.25
β -D-AL	2	3.08	2.72	0.36
β -D-AN	6	3.33	2.11	1.22
β -D-AO	1	4.10	2.13	1.97
β -D-AP	2	3.27	3.23	0.05
β -D-AQ	7	4.45	3.22	1.22

ID	n	Ave. HCV RNA	Ave. rRNA	Ave.
		ΔCt	ΔCt	$\Delta\Delta Ct$
β -D-AT	2	3.71	3.07	0.64
β -D-BE	2	4.44	2.80	1.64
β -D-BF	2	4.37	2.69	1.68
β -D-BH	1	3.06	0.91	2.15
β -D-BJ	2	5.06	3.62	1.44
β -D-BL	1	2.28	1.93	0.35
β -D-BO	1	4.52	2.95	1.57
β -D-BS	40	4.89	1.05	3.83
β -D-BT	5	4.83	3.59	1.24
β -D-BU	4	3.46	2.18	1.06
β -D-BV	3	1.88	0.65	1.22
β -D-CC	6	5.04	4.82	0.21
β -D-DD	1	6.60	4.99	1.61
β -D-DH	3	4.13	2.91	1.21
β -D-DJ	5	3.51	3.62	-0.11
β -D-EB	1	3.33	1.42	1.90
β -D-FA	2	3.80	3.58	1.44
β -D-GA	4	6.04	2.10	3.93
β -D-HA	2	5.52	3.85	1.68
β -D-HB	5	2.94	1.65	1.30
β -D-KB	2	3.61	2.52	1.10
β -D-LA	3	3.85	4.10	0.89

ID	n	Ave. HCV RNA	Ave. rRNA	Ave.
		ΔCt	ΔCt	$\Delta\Delta Ct$
β -D-MD	3	3.57	1.95	1.62
β -D-ME	1	2.89	1.25	1.64
β -D-MF	2	3.79	2.69	1.10
β -D-OE	1	4.51	4.20	0.31
β -D-QA	3	2.91	3.81	-0.89
β -D-RB	2	4.30	3.18	1.12
β -D-TA	1	4.00	3.31	0.69
β -D-UA	1	2.91	1.61	1.3
β -D-VA	1	5.56	4.17	1.39
β -L-FC	3	5.55	5.13	0.42
β -L-JB	1	3.65	4.55	-0.90
β -L-KA	1	4.10	4.84	-0.74
β -L-KC	2	1.19	1.35	-0.16
IFN	4	5.21	0.69	4.52
ribavirin	2	3.13	2.35	0.78

Table 25

ID	N	Ave. HCV RNA	Ave. rDNA	average
		ΔCt	ΔCt	$\Delta\Delta Ct$
β -D-AA	3	3.83	2.53	1.88
β -D-AI	1	3.76	-0.96	4.55
β -D-AJ	16	2.75	0.43	2.33

ID	N	Ave. HCV RNA	Ave. rDNA	average
		ΔCt	ΔCt	$\Delta\Delta Ct$
β -D-AK	1	3.51	2.69	0.79
β -D-AL	1	3.18	2.56	0.61
β -D-AN	2	3.86	2.53	1.88
β -D-AO	1	4.10	1.84	2.26
β -D-AP	2	3.27	2.26	1.02
β -D-AQ	3	4.75	1.78	2.73
β -D-AT	1	3.81	2.43	1.43
β -D-BE	1	4.99	2.06	2.98
β -D-BF	1	5.27	2.04	3.28
β -D-BH	1	3.06	1.42	1.64
β -D-BJ	1	4.34	0.81	3.53
β -D-BL	1	2.28	1.62	0.65
β -D-BS	14	4.81	0.38	4.45
β -D-BT	2	4.44	1.17	3.39
β -D-BU	4	3.46	1.10	1.16
β -D-BV	3	1.88	0.31	1.65
β -D-CC	3	5.84	2.17	3.66
β -D-DD	1	6.60	3.30	3.30
β -D-DH	1	4.14	0.89	3.25
β -D-DJ	1	4.84	2.70	2.14
β -D-EB	1	3.33	0.96	2.37
β -D-FA	2	3.80	1.92	0.78

ID	N	Ave. HCV RNA	Ave. rDNA	average
		ΔCt	ΔCt	$\Delta\Delta Ct$
β -L-FC	1	4.41	1.00	3.41
β -D-HA	1	5.12	2.04	3.16
β -D-HB	1	1.90	1.19	0.40
β -D-KB	1	3.81	0.00	3.81
β -L-JB	1	3.65	1.20	2.45
β -L-KA	1	4.10	0.42	3.69
β -L-KC	1	2.73	-0.81	3.54
β -D-LA	1	3.54	1.56	1.98
β -D-MD	2	3.50	1.58	1.46
β -D-ME	1	2.89	1.53	1.36
β -D-MF	2	3.79	2.17	1.65
β -D-OE	1	4.51	-0.04	4.60
β -D-QA	1	4.85	2.30	2.55
β -D-RB	1	4.00	1.27	2.74
β -D-TA	1	4.00	3.07	0.93
β -D-UA	1	2.91	0.50	2.41

Example 60

Toxicity profile of β -D-GA

5 Cytotoxicity testing as performed here are standard techniques. Briefly, cells are seeded in 96-well plates at various concentrations (dependent on cell type, duration of assay), typically at 5×10^3 cells per well, in the presence of increasing concentrations of the

test compound (0, 1, 3, 10, 33, and 100 μM). Depending on the cell-type incubation with test compound can vary in time, but is usually within the range of 3 to 5 days. Cell viability and mitochondrial activity are measured by adding the MTT-dye (Promega), followed by eight hours of incubation. Afterwards the plates containing the dye are fixed by adding a stop-solution followed by another eight hour incubation. Finally, absorbance is read at 570 nm. Such methodologies are well described and available from the manufacturer (Promega).

While the tested compounds are generally not cytotoxic, surprisingly enough $\beta\text{-D-GA}$ showed a *selective* cytotoxic effect on CEM cells (Table 21). In order to explore the complete potential of this compound, a set of human malignant T and B cells and various tumor cell lines were incubated with $\beta\text{-D-GA}$ at varying concentrations, and after the absorbance was read, an IC_{50} value was calculated. As a control, Ara-C, 5FU, and cycloheximide was taken alongside (Table 26).

$\beta\text{-D-GA}$ has potent toxicity in human malignant T and B cells, but not in human PBM cells and non-T or B neoplastic cells. Compared to Ara-C and 5-FU, the anticancer activity of $\beta\text{-D-GA}$ is highly selective for T and B cells.

Table 26: Toxicity profile of $\beta\text{-D-GA}$ against various tumor cell lines (IC_{50} , μM)*

	$\beta\text{-D-GA}$	Ara-C	5-FU	Cyclo-heximide
PBM	>100	7	13.7	2.6
Vero	>100	0.8	65	2.1
CEM	2.9	0.6	90.5	0.1
SUDHL-1	0.7	3.7	°	0.3
SupT1	0.3	°	53.6	0.6
H9	1.4	°	14.2	1
JY	3	°	7.5	0.8
BL41	<1.0	°	24.1	0.3

	β -D-GA	Ara-C	5-FU	Cyclo- heximide
LNCaP	45.7	°	22.1	2.4
SK-MES-1	>100	°	13.1	3.4
SK-MEL-28	>100	°	11.2	1
HEPG2	>100	°	40.6	3.6
MCF-7	>100	°	43.7	1.5

* *MTT assay (incubation time of 3-5 days)*

PBM: Human peripheral blood mononuclear cells

Vero: African green monkey kidney cell line

CEM: Human T-cell lymphoma cell line

5 SUDHL-1: Human anaplastic large T-cell lymphoma cell line

SupT1: Human T-cell lymphoblast cell line

H9: Human T-cell lymphoblast cell line

JY: Human B-cell lymphoma cell line (transformed with EBV)

BL41: Human B-cell lymphoma cell line

10 LNCap: Human prostate adenocarcinoma cell line

SK-MES-1: Human lung squamous carcinoma cell line

SK-MEL-28: Human melanoma cell line

HEPG2: Human liver carcinoma cell line

MCF-7: Human breast carcinoma cell line

15 The prevention of β -D-GA-related cytotoxicity in CEM cells (human T-cell lymphoma) and in the SUDHL-1 cells (human anaplastic large T-cell lymphoma cell line) was studied by adding natural nucleosides. This experiment was initiated by adding 50 μ M of natural nucleosides into the media, together with increasing concentration of β -D-GA. CEM cells were seeded at 2500 cells per well and incubated for 4 days (= fast growing cell line with a doubling time of \sim 1.3 days). SUDHL-1 cells were seeded at 10,000 cells/well, and incubated for 3 days (= slow growing cell line, doubling time \sim 3days). The result of this experiment is plotted in **Figure 4**. This figure illustrates that cytidine and uridine markedly prevent β -D-GA toxicity in SUDHL-1 cells and also in CEM cells (similar plot, not shown). 2'-Deoxycytidine has modest preventive activity

20

effect. These data allow to conclude that β -D-GA is equally effective against slower growing SUDHL-1 cells and fast growing CEM cells and that Cytidine and uridine prevent the compound related toxicity in both cell lines. The action of β -D-GA may be related to synthesis and functions of host RNA molecules, but not DNA.

- 5 The invention has been described with reference to various specific and preferred embodiments and techniques. However, it should be understood that many variations and modifications will be obvious to those skilled in the art from the foregoing detailed description of the invention and may be made while remaining within the spirit and scope of the invention.